



KONICA MINOLTA

bizhub 5020i/4020i **USER'S GUIDE**



Table of Contents

Before You Use Your Machine	1
Applicable Models	2
Definitions of Notes	3
Trademarks	4
Important Note	5
Introduction to Your Machine	6
Before Using Your Machine	7
Control Panel Overview	8
Touchscreen LCD Overview.....	9
How to Navigate the Touchscreen LCD	12
Settings Screen Overview.....	14
Setting the Home Screen.....	15
Access KONICA MINOLTA Utilities (Windows).....	16
Uninstall the Software (Windows)	18
Paper Handling	19
Load Paper.....	20
Load and Print Using the Paper Tray	21
Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray (MP Tray)	28
Paper Settings.....	36
Change the Paper Size and Paper Type.....	37
Select the Tray to Be Used For Printing	38
Change the Check Paper Size Setting	39
Load Documents	40
Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)	41
Load Documents on the Scanner Glass.....	43
Unscannable and Unprintable Areas	44
Using Special Paper.....	45
Print	46
Print from Your Computer (Windows).....	47
Print a Document (Windows).....	48
Secure Print (Windows).....	49
Change the Default Print Settings (Windows)	50
Print from Your Computer (Mac)	52
Print a Document (Mac)	53
Secure Print (Mac)	54
Configure the Optional Tray Settings (Mac)	55
Cancel a Print Job	56
Test Print	57
Scan	58
Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine	59
Scan Photos and Graphics.....	60
Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File	62
Save Scanned Data to a USB Flash Drive.....	64
Scan to an Editable Text File (OCR)	66

Scan to Email Attachment	68
Send Scanned Data to an Email Server.....	70
Scan to FTP	72
Scan to SSH FTP (SFTP)	77
Scan to Network (Windows).....	85
Scan to SharePoint	91
Web Services for Scanning on Your Network (Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)	96
Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter4 (Windows).....	100
Configure Certificate for Signed PDF	103
Disable Scanning from Your Computer	104
Scan from Your Computer (Windows).....	105
Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)	106
Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows).....	122
Scan Using Windows Photo Gallery or Windows Fax and Scan.....	139
Scan from Your Computer (Mac).....	142
Scan Using iPrint&Scan (Mac)	143
Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management.....	144
Set the Scan Job Email Report Using Web Based Management	145
Copy	146
Copy a Document	147
Enlarge or Reduce Copied Images	149
Make N in 1 Copies Using the Page Layout Feature	150
Sort Copies	152
Copy an ID Card	153
Copy on Both Sides of the Paper (2-sided Copy)	154
Copy Options	156
Fax	158
Send a Fax.....	159
Send a Fax	160
Send a 2-sided Fax from the ADF.....	162
Send a Fax Manually.....	163
Send a Fax at the End of a Conversation	164
Send the Same Fax to More than One Recipient (Broadcasting)	165
Send a Fax in Real Time	167
Send a Fax at a Specified Time (Delayed Fax).....	168
Add a Cover Page to Your Fax.....	169
Cancel a Fax in Progress	172
Check and Cancel a Pending Fax.....	173
Fax Options	174
Receive a Fax	175
Receive Mode Settings	176
Memory Receive (Remote Fax) Options	186
Remote Fax Retrieval.....	193
Voice Operations and Fax Numbers	199
Voice Operations	200
Store Fax Numbers	202
Set up Groups for Broadcasting	206

Combine Address Book Numbers	210
Telephone Services and External Devices.....	211
Use BT Call Sign	212
Set the Telephone Line Type.....	214
External TAD (Telephone Answering Device).....	216
External and Extension Telephones	219
Multi-line Connections (PBX)	225
Fax Reports.....	226
Print a Transmission Verification Report	227
Print a Fax Journal	228
PC-FAX	229
PC-FAX for Windows.....	230
Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive	254
Compatible USB Flash Drives.....	255
Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive or Digital Camera Supporting Mass Storage.....	256
Create a PRN File for Direct Printing (Windows)	258
Network	259
Get Started.....	260
Supported Basic Network Features.....	261
Network Management Software and Utilities	262
Learn about Network Management Software and Utilities	263
Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network	264
Before Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network	265
Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network.....	266
Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS).....	267
Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS).....	268
Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode (For IEEE 802.11b/g/n)	271
Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard.....	275
Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast	277
Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network	279
Use Wi-Fi Direct®	281
Advanced Network Features.....	290
Print the Network Configuration Report.....	291
Configure Your Mail Server Settings Using Web Based Management.....	292
Configure the Machine for Email or Internet Fax (I-Fax)	294
I-Fax Options.....	307
Use the Send Fax to Server Feature.....	312
Print the WLAN Report.....	316
Configure and Operate LDAP Search	319
Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management	322
Technical Information for Advanced Users.....	326
Gigabit Ethernet (Wired Network Only)	327
Reset the Network Settings to the Factory Settings.....	329
Security	330
Lock the Machine Settings	331

About Using Setting Lock	332
Network Security Features	336
Before Using Network Security Features	337
Secure Function Lock 3.0	338
Use Active Directory Authentication	345
Use LDAP Authentication	350
Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS	354
Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec	386
Send or Receive an Email Securely	404
Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network	409
Store Print Log to Network	414
Mobile/Web Connect	420
Print with Google Cloud Print™	421
Print with Mopria™	422
Print from a Mobile Device	423
ControlCenter	424
ControlCenter4 (Windows)	425
Change the Operation Mode in ControlCenter4 (Windows)	426
Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)	428
Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)	429
Set Up This Machine Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)	430
Create a Custom Tab Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)	432
Troubleshooting	434
Error and Maintenance Messages	435
Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report	441
Document Jams	445
Document is Jammed in the Top of the ADF Unit	446
Document is Jammed under the Document Cover	447
Remove Small Scraps of Paper Jammed in the ADF	448
Paper Jams	449
Paper is Jammed in the MP tray	450
Paper is Jammed in the Paper Tray	451
Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine	453
Paper is Jammed inside the Machine	455
Paper is Jammed in the 2-sided Tray	457
Printing Problems	460
Improve the Print Quality	462
Telephone and Fax Problems	467
Set Dial Tone Detection	470
Set Telephone Line Compatibility for Interference and VoIP Systems	471
Network Problems	472
Error Messages	473
Where Can I Find My Machine's Network Settings?	475
I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration	476
My Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network	478
I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly	480
Other Problems	481

Check the Machine Information	483
Reset Your Machine	484
Reset Functions Overview	485
Routine Maintenance	486
Replace Supplies	487
Replace the Toner Cartridge	489
Replace the Imaging Unit	492
Reset the Drum Counter	495
Clean the Machine	496
Clean the Scanner	498
Clean the Touchscreen LCD	499
Clean the Corona Wire	500
Clean the Imaging Unit	502
Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers	506
Check the Remaining Life of Parts	508
Replace Periodic Maintenance Parts	509
Machine Settings	510
Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel	511
In the Event of Power Failure (Memory Storage)	512
General Settings	513
Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut	529
Print Reports	532
Settings and Features Tables	535
Change Machine Settings from Your Computer	552
Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management	553
Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup	558
Appendix	565
Specifications	566
How to Enter Text on Your Machine	572
Glossary	574

Before You Use Your Machine

- [Applicable Models](#)
- [Definitions of Notes](#)
- [Trademarks](#)
- [Important Note](#)

Applicable Models

This User's Guide applies to the following models:

bizhub 4020i/bizhub 5020i










Related Information

- [Before You Use Your Machine](#)
-

Definitions of Notes

We use the following symbols and conventions throughout this User's Guide:

 WARNING	Improper handling can cause serious injury or death.
 CAUTION	Improper handling can cause minor injury or damage to houses and property.
IMPORTANT	IMPORTANT indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to property or loss of product functionality.
NOTE	NOTE specifies the operating environment, conditions for installation, or special conditions of use.
	Tips icons indicate helpful hints and supplementary information.
	Electrical Hazard icons alert you to possible electrical shock.
	Fire Hazard icons alert you to the possibility of a fire.
	Hot Surface icons warn you not to touch hot machine parts.
	Prohibition icons indicate actions you must not perform.
Bold	Bold style identifies buttons on the machine's control panel or computer screen.
<i>Italics</i>	Italicised style emphasises an important point or refers you to a related topic.
Courier New	Courier New font identifies messages shown on the machine's LCD.



Related Information

- [Before You Use Your Machine](#)

Trademarks

KONICA MINOLTA, the KONICA MINOLTA logo, Giving Shape to Ideas, PageScope, and bizhub are registered trademarks or trademarks of KONICA MINOLTA, INC.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows Server, SharePoint, Internet Explorer, Outlook, PowerPoint, Active Directory, OneNote, Windows phone and OneDrive are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Apple, Mac, Safari, iPad, iPhone, iPod touch and OS X are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the United States and other countries.

PostScript and PostScript 3 are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Wi-Fi CERTIFIED, Wi-Fi, Wi-Fi Alliance, Wi-Fi Direct and Wi-Fi Protected Access are registered trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

WPA, WPA2, Wi-Fi Protected Setup and Wi-Fi Protected Setup logo are trademarks of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Flickr is a registered trademark of Yahoo! Inc.

Android, Google Cloud Print, Google Drive, Google Play, Picasa Web Albums and Google Chrome are trademarks of Google Inc. Use of these trademarks is subject to Google Permissions.

Mopria is a trademark of Mopria Alliance, Inc.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Linux is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.

Intel is a trademark of Intel Corporation in the U.S. and/or other countries.

Evernote is a trademark of Evernote Corporation and used under a license.

Each company whose software title is mentioned in this manual has a Software License Agreement specific to its proprietary programs.

All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.



Related Information

- [Before You Use Your Machine](#)

Important Note

- Do not use this product outside the country of purchase as it may violate the wireless telecommunication and power regulations of that country.
- Windows 10 in this document represents Windows 10 Home, Windows 10 Pro, Windows 10 Education and Windows 10 Enterprise.
- Windows Server 2008 in this document represents Windows Server 2008 and Windows Server 2008 R2.
- Unless otherwise specified, the screens in this manual are from Windows 7 and macOS v10.12.x Screens on your computer may vary depending on your operating system.
- The contents of this guide and the specifications of this product are subject to change without notice.



Related Information

- [Before You Use Your Machine](#)
-

Introduction to Your Machine

- [Before Using Your Machine](#)
- [Control Panel Overview](#)
- [Touchscreen LCD Overview](#)
- [How to Navigate the Touchscreen LCD](#)
- [Settings Screen Overview](#)
- [Setting the Home Screen](#)
- [Access KONICA MINOLTA Utilities \(Windows\)](#)

Before Using Your Machine

Before attempting any printing operation, confirm the following:

- Make sure you have installed the software and drivers.
- For USB or network cable users: Make sure the interface cable is physically secure.

Simultaneous printing, scanning and faxing

Your machine can print from your computer while sending or receiving a fax into memory or while scanning a document into the computer. Fax sending will not be stopped during printing from your computer. However, when the machine is copying or receiving a fax on paper, it pauses the printing operation, and then continues printing when copying or fax receiving has finished.

Firewall (Windows)

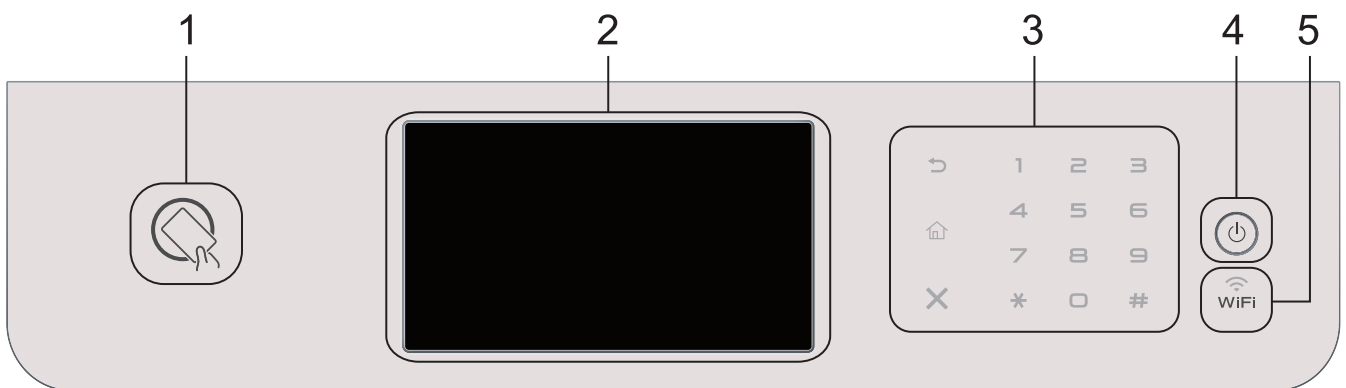
If your computer is protected by a firewall and you are unable to network print, network scan, or PC-FAX, you may need to configure the firewall settings. If you are using any other personal firewall software, see the User's Guide for your software or contact the software manufacturer.



Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)
-

Control Panel Overview



1. ID Card Reader (available only for bizhub 5020i)

You can use card authentication by touching the ID card to the Reader on the control panel.

2. Touchscreen Liquid Crystal Display (LCD)

Access menus and options by pressing them on the touchscreen.

3. Touchpanel



Press to go back to the previous menu.



Press to return to the Home screen.



Press to cancel an operation (available when lit).

Dial Pad (Numerical buttons)

Press the numbers on the touchpanel to dial telephone or fax numbers and to enter the number of copies.

4. Power On/Off

- Turn the machine on by pressing .
- Turn the machine off by pressing and holding down . The LCD displays [Shutting Down] for a few seconds before going off. If you have an external telephone or TAD connected, it is always available.

5. (WiFi)

(For infrastructure mode)

When the **WiFi** light is on, your machine is connected to a wireless access point. When the **WiFi** light blinks, the wireless connection is down, or your machine is in the process of connecting to a wireless access point.

(For Ad-Hoc mode)

The **WiFi** LED is always off.

Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

Touchscreen LCD Overview

You can select from two types of screens to set the Home screen: Function screens and Shortcuts screen. When a Function screen is displayed, swipe left or right or press ◀ or ▶ to display the other Function screens.

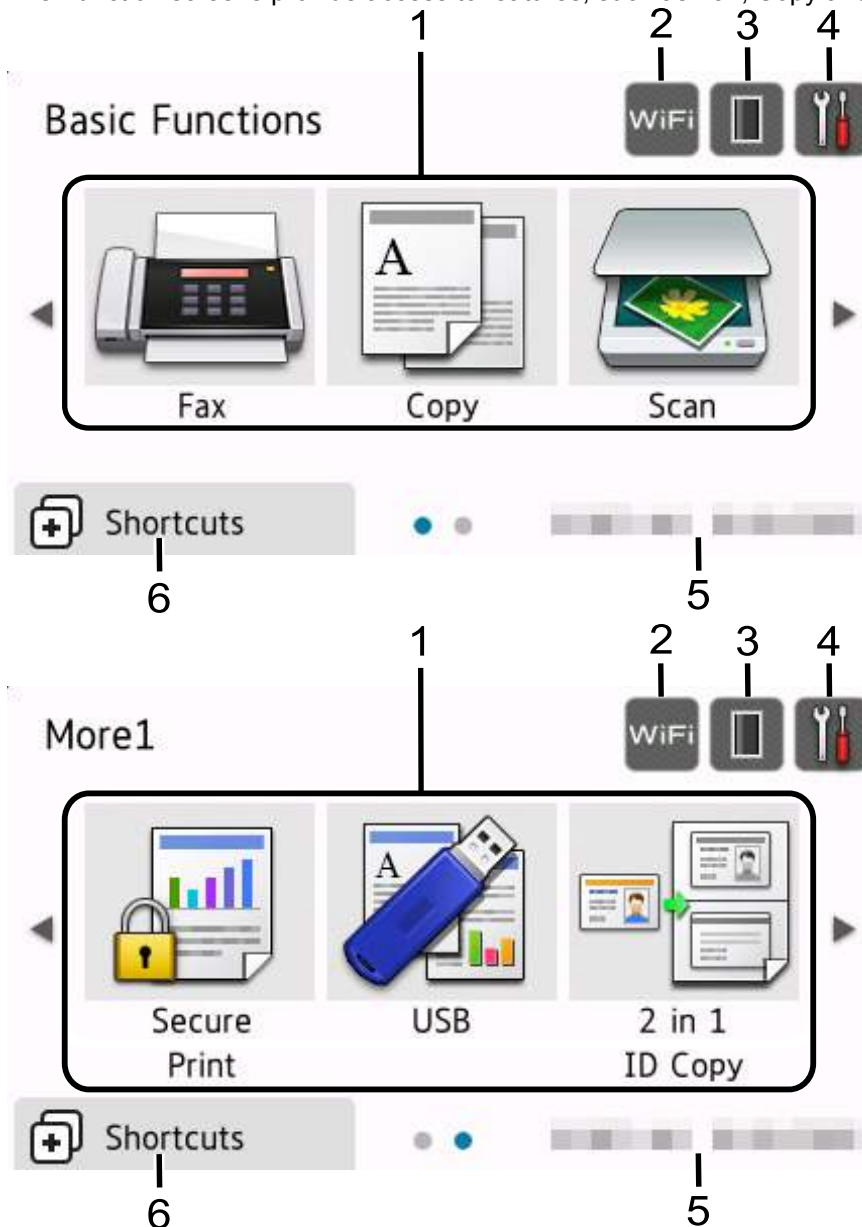
The Home screen displays the machine's status when the machine is idle. This screen is also called the Ready Mode screen. When displayed, this screen indicates that your machine is ready for the next command.

If Active Directory Authentication or LDAP Authentication is enabled, the machine's control panel will be locked.

The available features vary depending on your model.

Function screens

The Function screens provide access to features, such as Fax, Copy and Scan.

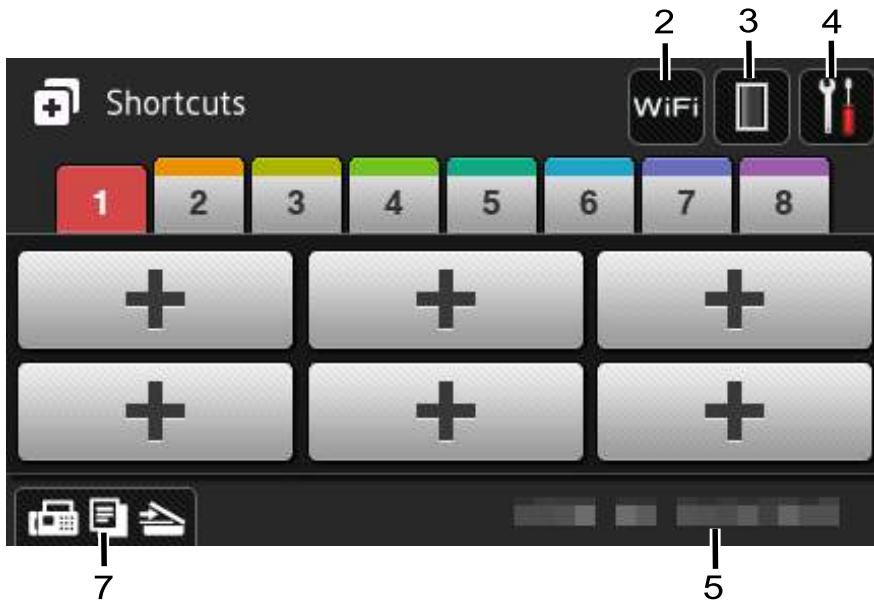


Shortcuts screen







Create Shortcuts for frequently-used operations, such as sending a fax, copying and scanning.



Eight Shortcuts tabs are available with six Shortcuts on each Shortcuts tab. A total of 48 Shortcuts are available.



1. Modes

-  [Fax]
Press to access Fax mode.
-  [Copy]
Press to access Copy mode.
-  [Scan]
Press to access Scan mode.
-  [Secure Print]
Press to access the [Secure Print] option.
-  [USB]
Press to access the Direct Print and Scan to USB menus.
-  [2 in 1 ID Copy]
Press to access the 2 in 1 ID Copy option.

2. or (Wireless Status)

Press to configure wireless settings.

If you are using a wireless connection, a four-level indicator displays the current wireless signal strength.




3. (Toner)

Displays the remaining toner life. Press to access the [Toner] menu.


4. (Settings)

Press to access the [Settings] menu.


If Setting Lock has been turned on, a lock  icon appears on the LCD. You must unlock the machine to change settings.

5. Date & Time

Displays the date and time set on the machine.

6.  [Shortcuts]

Press to access the [Shortcuts] screen.

7.  (Function screens)

Press to access the Function screens.




New Fax



When [Fax Preview] is set to [On], the number of new faxes you received into the memory appears at the top of the screen.

Warning icon



The warning icon  appears when there is an error or maintenance message; press  to view it, and then press  to return to Ready Mode.

NOTE

This product adopts the font of ARPHIC TECHNOLOGY CO., LTD.

 **Related Information**

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

How to Navigate the Touchscreen LCD

Press your finger on the LCD to operate it. To display and access all the options, swipe left, right, up, down or press ◀▶ or ▲▼ on the LCD to scroll through them.


The following steps explain how to change a machine setting. In this example, the LCD Backlight setting is changed from [Light] to [Med].

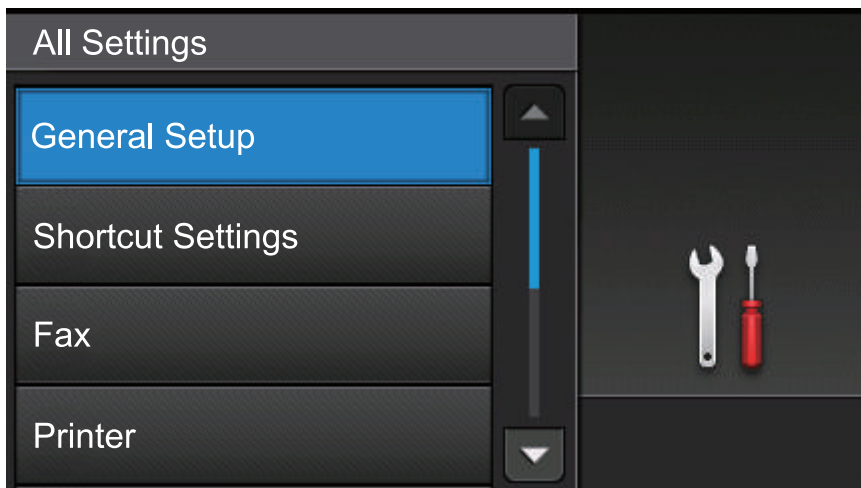
IMPORTANT

DO NOT press the LCD with a sharp object, such as a pen or stylus. It may damage the machine.

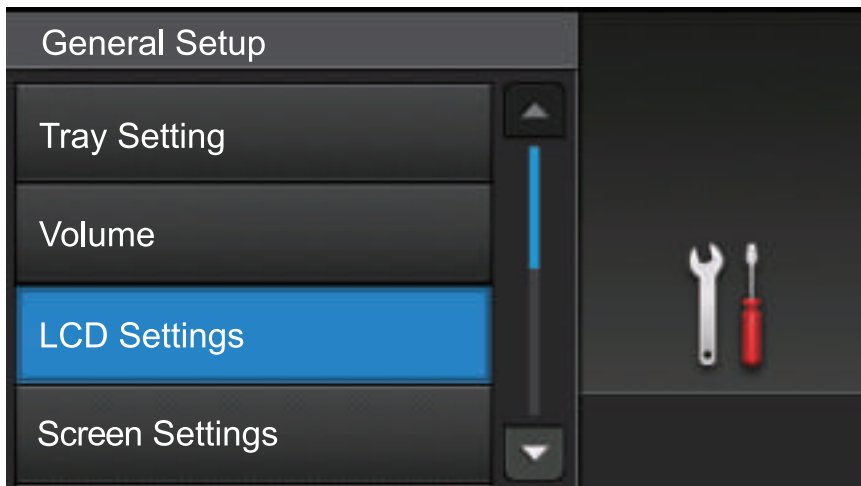
NOTE

DO NOT touch the LCD immediately after plugging in the power cord or turning on the machine. Doing this may cause an error.

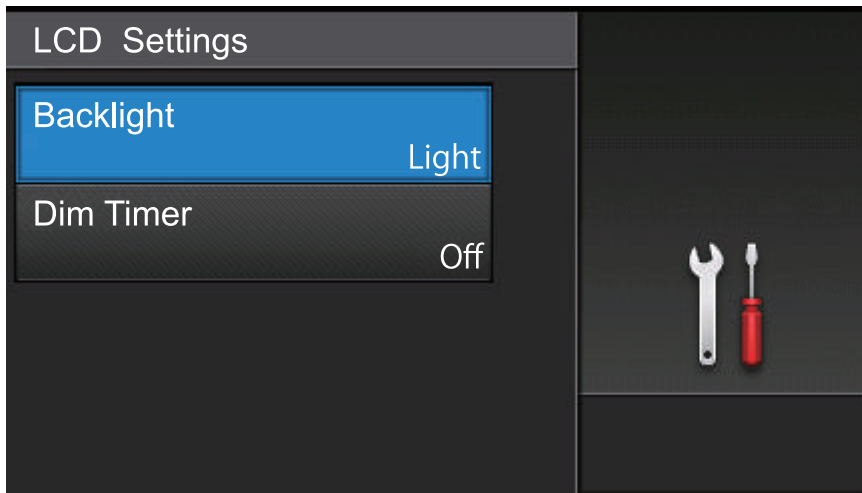
1. Press  [Settings].
2. Press [All Settings].
3. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [General Setup] option, and then press [General Setup].



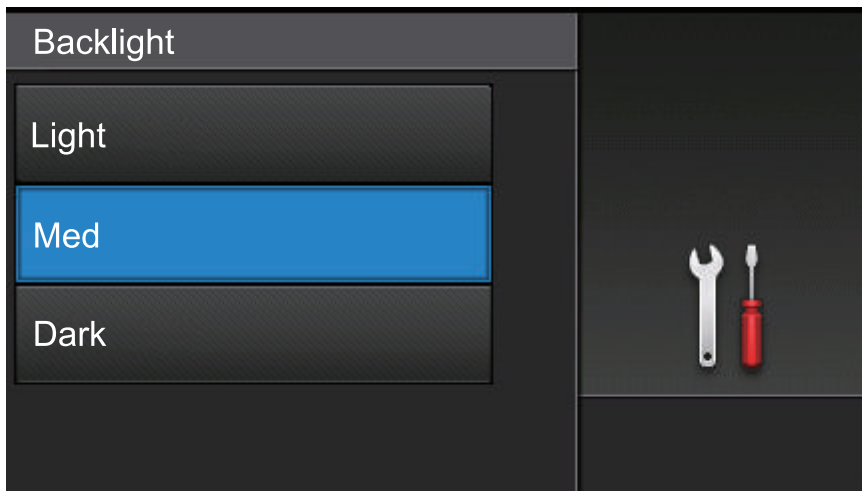
4. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [LCD Settings] option, and then press [LCD Settings].




5. Press [Backlight].



6. Press [Med].




7. Press .

Related Information

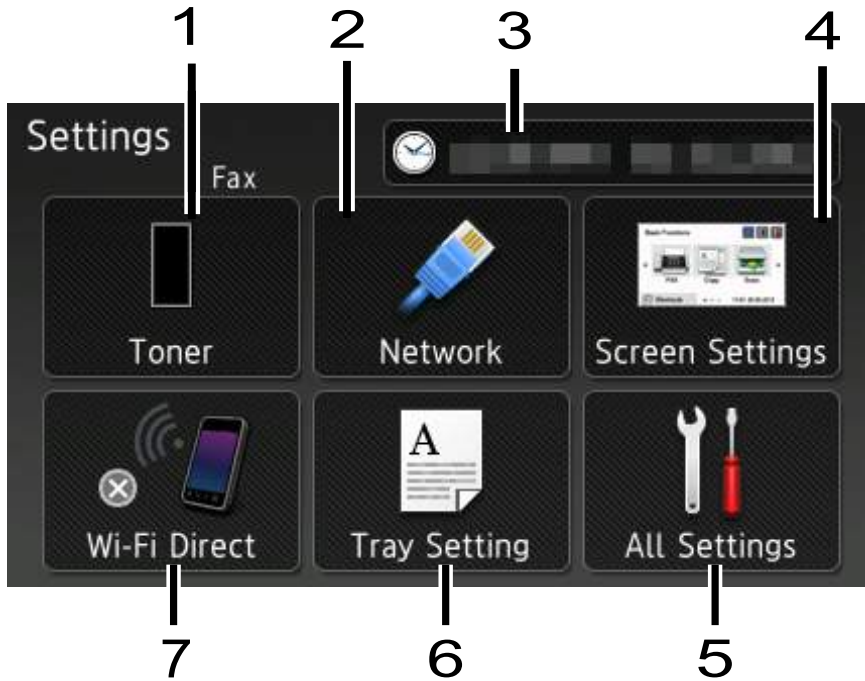
- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

Settings Screen Overview

Press  to view the current machine status on the LCD.

Use the Settings menu to access all of your machine's settings.

The available features vary depending on your model.



1. Toner

- Displays the remaining toner life.
- Press to access the [Toner] menu.

2. Network

- Press to set up a network connection.
- A four level indicator on the screen displays the current wireless signal strength if you are using a wireless connection.

3. Date & Time

Displays the date and time set on the machine.

Press to access the [Date & Time] menu.

4. Screen Settings

Press to access the [Screen Settings] menu.

5. All Settings

Press to access a menu of all machine settings.

6. Tray Setting

Press to change the paper size and paper type settings.

7. Wi-Fi Direct

Press to set up a Wi-Fi Direct network connection.






Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

Setting the Home Screen

Set the Home screen to either [Basic Functions], [More1], [Shortcuts 1], [Shortcuts 2], [Shortcuts 3], [Shortcuts 4], [Shortcuts 5], [Shortcuts 6], [Shortcuts 7] or [Shortcuts 8].

When the machine is idle or you press , the touchscreen will return to the screen you set.

1. Press  [Settings] > [Screen Settings] > [Home Screen].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the screen settings, and then press the setting you want.
3. Press .

The machine will go to your chosen Home screen.



Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

Access KONICA MINOLTA Utilities (Windows)


KONICA MINOLTA Utilities is an application launcher that offers convenient access to all applications installed on your device.


1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

Click  (**Start**) > **All Programs** > **KONICA MINOLTA** > **KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.

- (Windows 8.1)

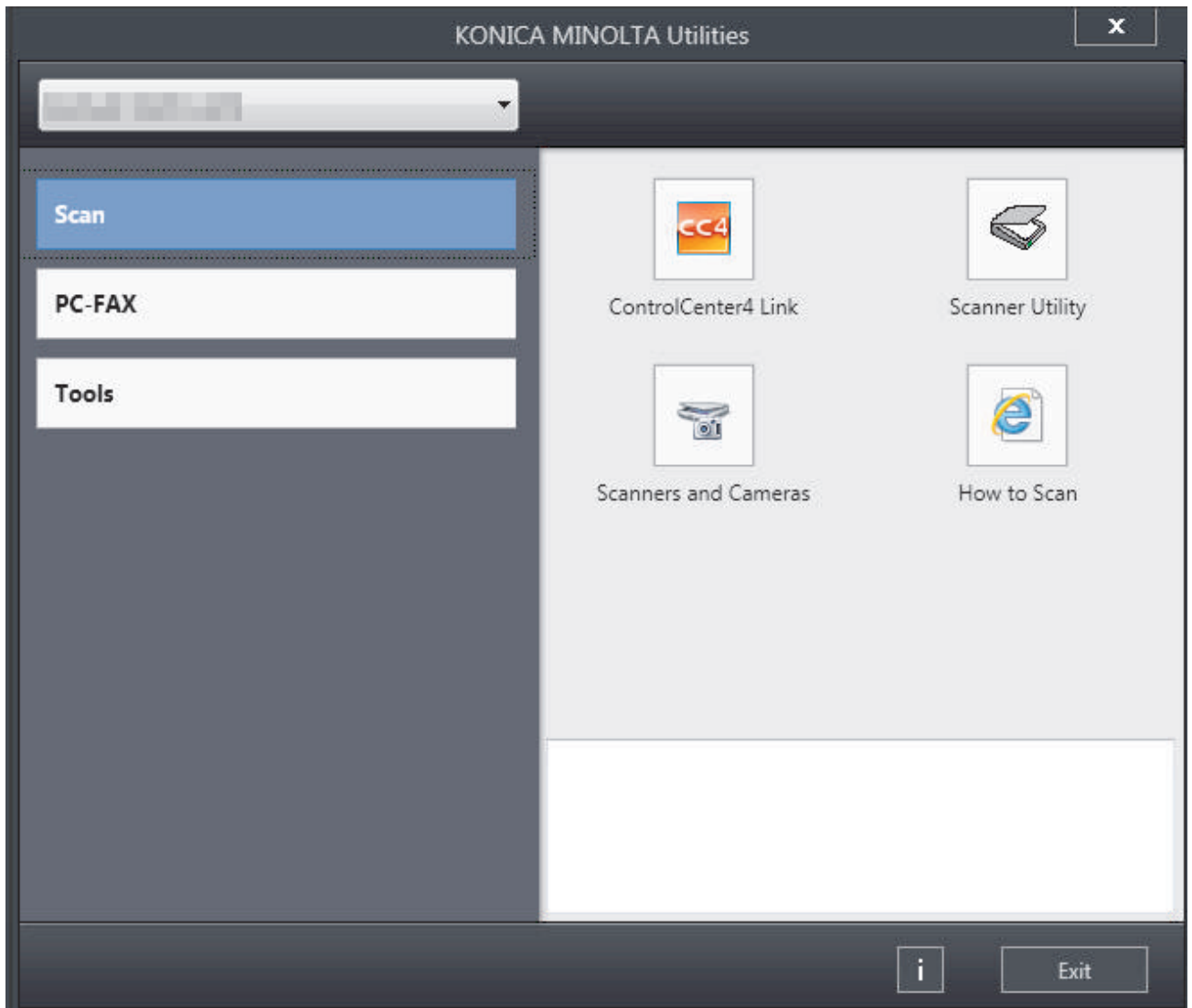
Move your mouse to the lower left corner of the **Start** screen and click  (if you are using a touch-based device, swipe up from bottom of the **Start** screen to bring up the **Apps** screen).

When the **Apps** screen appears, tap or click  (**KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**).

- (Windows 10)

Click  > **KONICA MINOLTA** > **KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.

2. Select your machine.



3. Choose the operation you want to use.

Related Information

- [Introduction to Your Machine](#)

-
- Uninstall the Software (Windows)
-


Uninstall the Software (Windows)


1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

Click  (**Start**) > **All Programs** > **KONICA MINOLTA** > **KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.

- (Windows 8.1)

Move your mouse to the lower left corner of the **Start** screen and click  (if you are using a touch-based device, swipe up from bottom of the **Start** screen to bring up the **Apps** screen).

When the **Apps** screen appears, tap or click  (**KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**).

- (Windows 10)

Click  > **KONICA MINOLTA** > **KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.

2. Click the drop-down list, and then select your model name (if not already selected). Click **Tools** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Uninstall**.

Follow the instructions in the dialog box to uninstall the software and drivers.



Related Information

- [Access KONICA MINOLTA Utilities \(Windows\)](#)

Paper Handling

- [Load Paper](#)
- [Paper Settings](#)
- [Load Documents](#)
- [Unscannable and Unprintable Areas](#)
- [Using Special Paper](#)

Load Paper

- [Load and Print Using the Paper Tray](#)
- [Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray \(MP Tray\)](#)

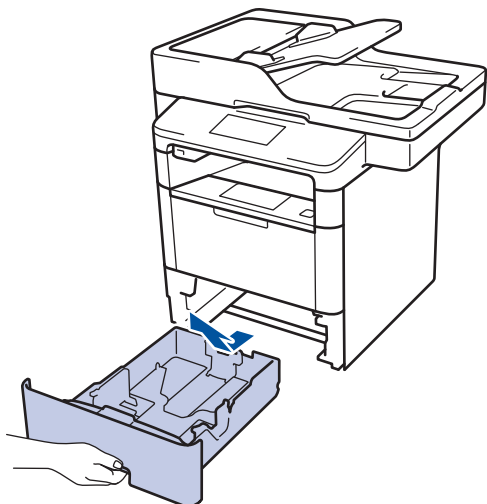
Load and Print Using the Paper Tray

- [Load Plain Paper, Letterhead, Coloured Paper, Thin Paper and Recycled Paper in the Paper Tray](#)
- [Load Thick Paper in the Paper Tray](#)
- [Printing Problems](#)
- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)

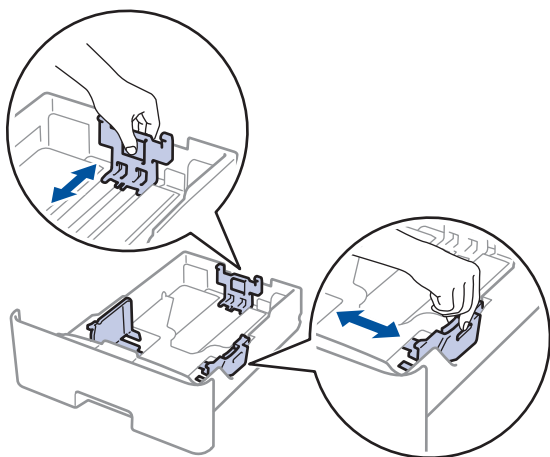
Load Plain Paper, Letterhead, Coloured Paper, Thin Paper and Recycled Paper in the Paper Tray

- If the Check Size setting is set to On and you pull the paper tray out of the machine, a message appears on the LCD asking if you want to change the paper size and paper type. Change the paper size and paper type settings if needed, following the LCD instructions.
- When you load a different size and type of paper in the tray, you must change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings in the machine or on your computer, also.

1. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.



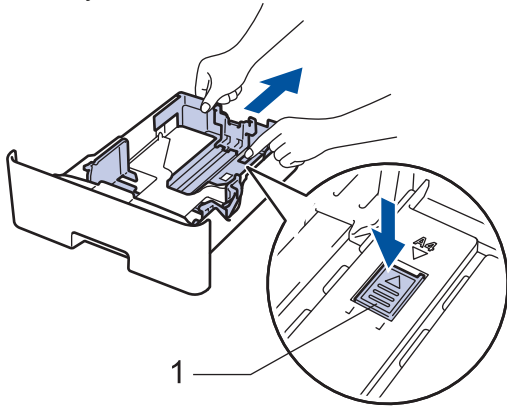
2. Press and slide the paper guides to fit the paper.
Press the release levers to slide the paper guides.



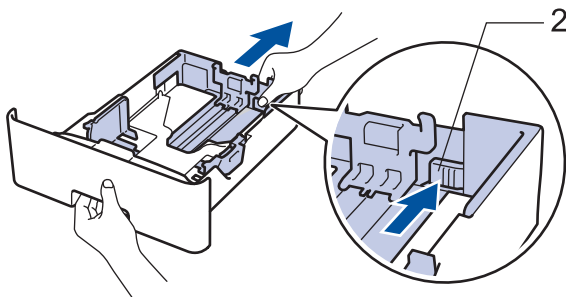


For Legal or Folio size paper, press the release button (1) in the bottom of the paper tray or the release lever (2) in the back of the tray, and then pull out the back of the paper tray. (Legal and Folio size paper are not available in some regions.)

For trays with a release button:



For trays with a release lever:

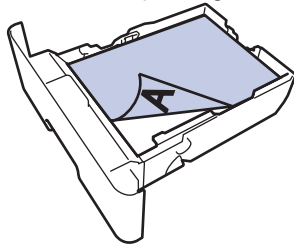


3. Fan the stack of paper well.
4. Load paper in the paper tray with the printing surface *face down*.

When you use Letterhead or Preprinted paper, load the paper in the correct orientation as shown in the illustrations.

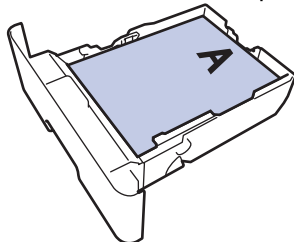
Paper Orientation for Letterhead and Preprinted Paper

For 1-sided printing




- face down
- top edge toward the front of the paper tray

For automatic 2-sided printing (long edge binding)



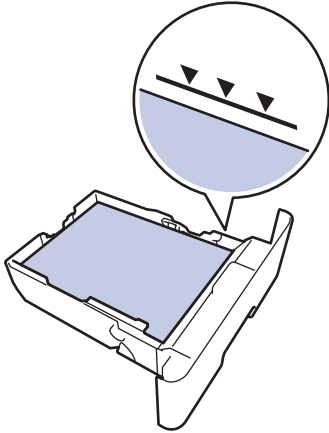
- face up
- bottom edge toward the front of the paper tray



- DO NOT load different sizes and types of paper in the paper tray at the same time. Doing this may cause the paper to jam or misfeed.
- When you use Letterhead or Preprinted paper for 2-sided printing, change the machine's setting by completing the following step:
 - Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Printer] > [2-sided] > [Single Image] > [2-sided Feed].

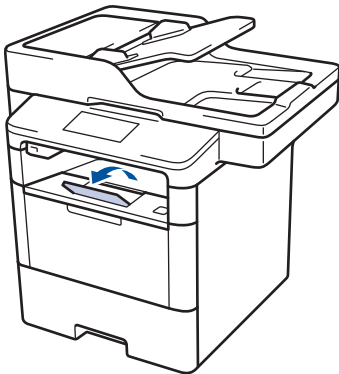
5. Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper mark (▼▼▼).

Overfilling the paper tray will cause paper jams.



6. Slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.

7. Lift the support flap to prevent paper from sliding off the output tray.



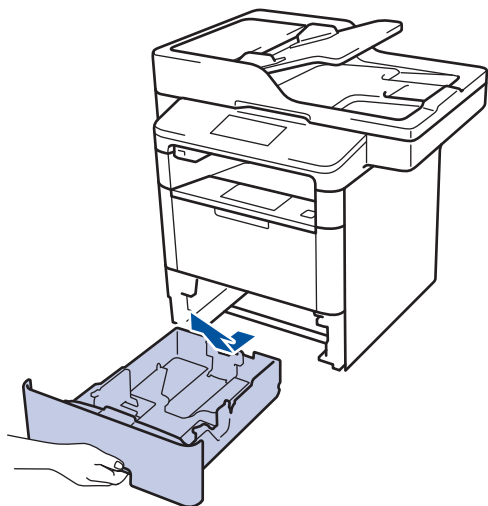
Related Information

- [Load and Print Using the Paper Tray](#)

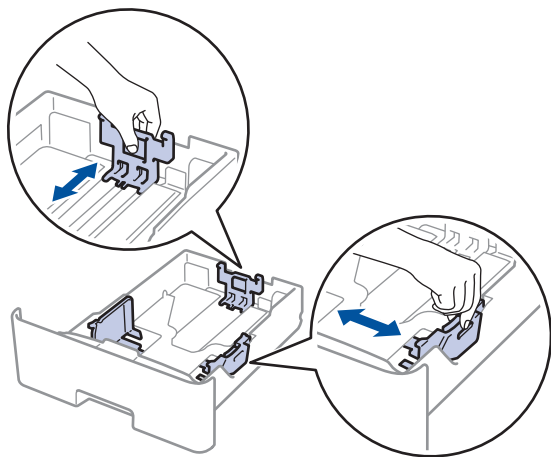
Load Thick Paper in the Paper Tray

- If the Check Size setting is set to On and you pull the paper tray out of the machine, a message appears on the LCD asking if you want to change the paper size and paper type. Change the paper size and paper type settings if needed, following the LCD instructions.
- When you load a different size and type of paper in the tray, you must change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings in the machine or on your computer, also.

1. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.



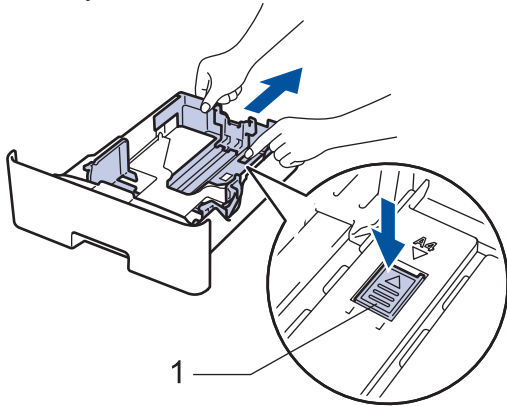
2. Press and slide the paper guides to fit the paper.
Press the release levers to slide the paper guides.



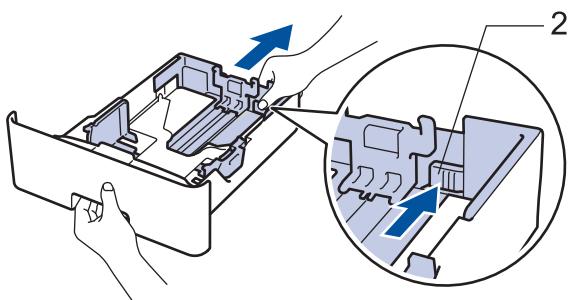


For Legal or Folio size paper, press the release button (1) in the bottom of the paper tray or the release lever (2) in the back of the tray, and then pull out the back of the paper tray. (Legal and Folio size paper are not available in some regions.)

For trays with a release button:



For trays with a release lever:

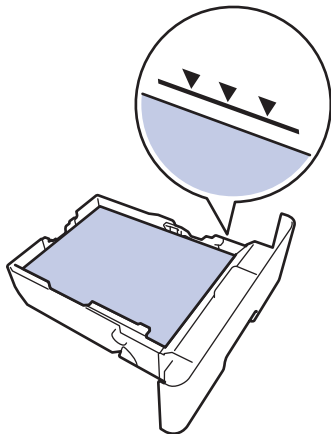


3. Fan the stack of paper well.
4. Load paper in the paper tray with the printing surface *face down*.

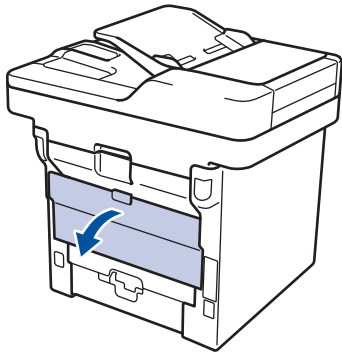


DO NOT load different sizes and types of paper in the paper tray at the same time. Doing this may cause the paper to jam or misfeed.

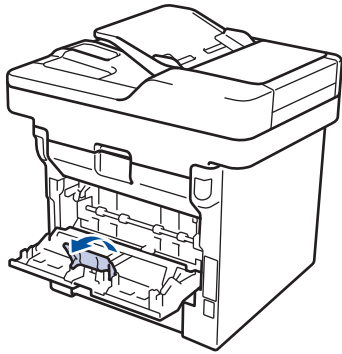
5. Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper mark (▼▼▼).
Overfilling the paper tray will cause paper jams.



6. Slowly push the paper tray completely into the machine.
7. Open the machine's back cover (the face up output tray).



8. Open the paper stopper.



9. Send your print job to the machine.



Change your print preferences in the Print dialog box before sending the print job from your computer.

10. Close the paper stopper.

11. Close the back cover (the face up output tray) until it locks in the closed position.



Related Information

- [Load and Print Using the Paper Tray](#)
-

Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray (MP Tray)

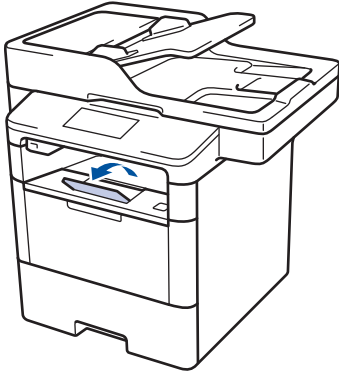
You can load up to ten envelopes, letterhead, coloured paper, thin paper, thick paper, thicker paper, recycled paper, Bond paper, labels, or up to 50 sheets of plain paper in the MP tray.

- [Load Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray \(MP Tray\)](#)
- [Load and Print Thick Paper and Labels Using the MP Tray](#)
- [Load and Print on Envelopes Using the MP Tray](#)
- [Printing Problems](#)
- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)

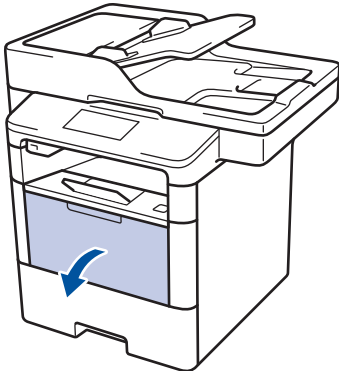
Load Paper in the Multi-purpose Tray (MP Tray)

When you load a different size and type of paper in the tray, you must change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings in the machine or on your computer, also.

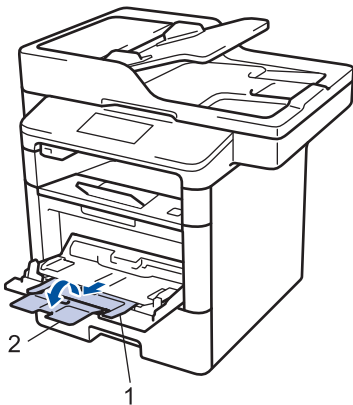
1. Lift the support flap to prevent paper from sliding off the face down output tray.



2. Open the MP tray and lower it gently.



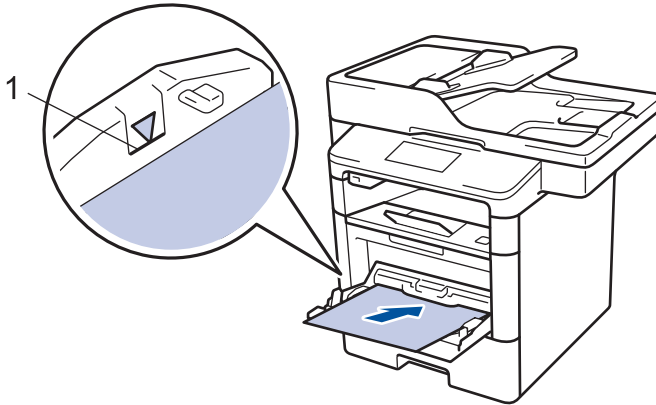
3. Pull out the MP tray support (1) and unfold the flap (2).




4. Slide the MP tray paper guides to fit the width of the paper you are using. If the paper guide on the right side has a lever, press it and slide the paper guide.



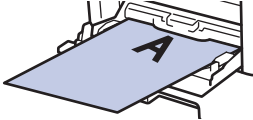
5. Load paper with the printing surface *face up* in the MP tray. When you use Letterhead or Preprinted paper, load the paper in the correct orientation as shown in the illustrations.



 Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper mark (1).

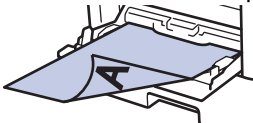
Paper Orientation for Letterhead and Preprinted Paper

For 1-sided printing





- face up
- top edge first

For automatic 2-sided printing (long edge binding)



- face down
- bottom edge first

 When you use Letterhead or Preprinted paper for 2-sided printing, change the machine's setting by completing the following step:

- Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Printer] > [2-sided] > [Single Image] > [2-sided Feed].

Related Information

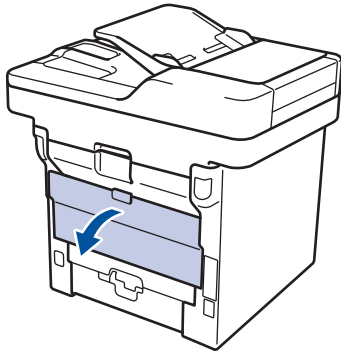
- [Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray \(MP Tray\)](#)

Load and Print Thick Paper and Labels Using the MP Tray

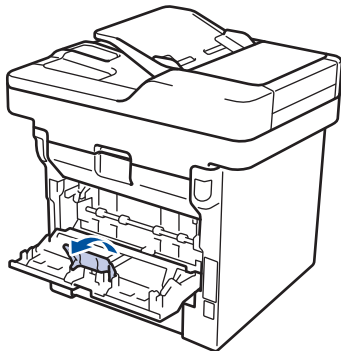
When the back cover (face up output tray) is pulled down, the machine has a straight paper path from the MP tray through to the back of the machine. Use this paper feed and output method when you print on thick paper or labels.

When you load a different size and type of paper in the tray, you must change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings in the machine or on your computer, also.

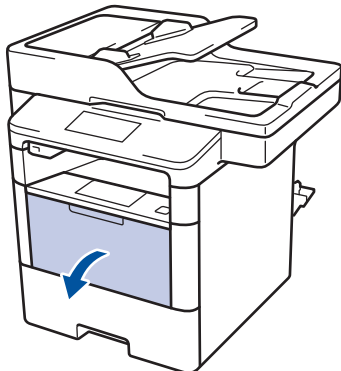
1. Open the machine's back cover (the face up output tray).



2. Open the paper stopper.



3. On the front of the machine, open the MP tray and lower it gently.



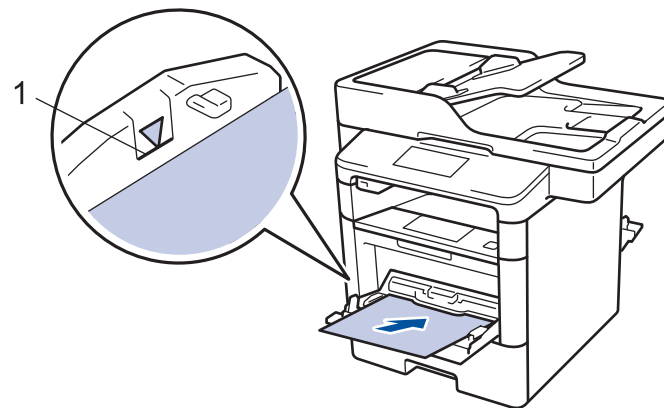
4. Pull out the MP tray support (1) and unfold the flap (2).



- Slide the MP tray paper guides to fit the width of the paper that you are using. If the paper guide on the right side has a lever, press it and slide the paper guide.



- Load paper or labels in the MP tray.



- Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper mark (1).
- Load paper into the MP tray with the printing surface face up.

- Send your print job to the machine.



Change your print preferences in the Print screen before sending the print job from your computer.

- Close the paper stopper.
- Close the back cover (the face up output tray) until it locks in the closed position.



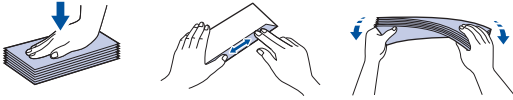
Related Information

- [Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray \(MP Tray\)](#)

Load and Print on Envelopes Using the MP Tray

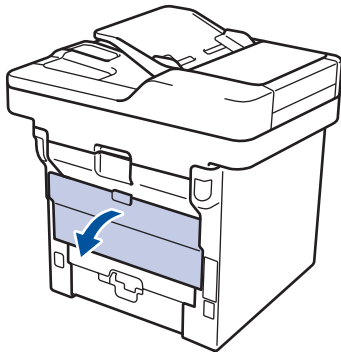
You can load up to ten envelopes in the MP tray.

Before loading, press the corners and sides of the envelopes to make them as flat as possible.

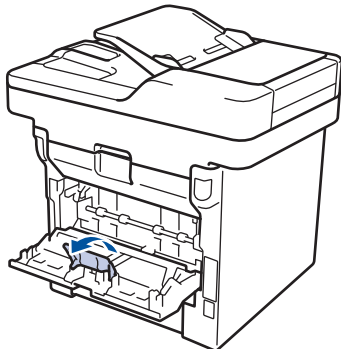


When you load a different size and type of paper in the tray, you must change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings in the machine or on your computer, also.

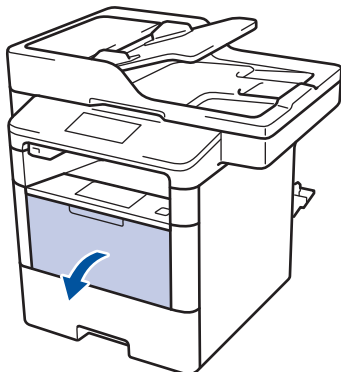
1. Open the machine's back cover (the face up output tray).



2. Open the paper stopper.



3. On the front of the machine, open the MP tray and lower it gently.



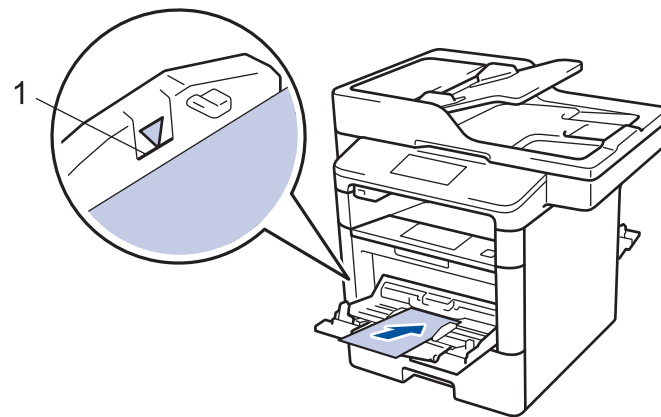
4. Pull out the MP tray support (1) and unfold the flap (2).



- Slide the MP tray paper guides to fit the width of the envelopes that you are using. If the paper guide on the right side has a lever, press it and slide the paper guide.



- Load envelopes in the MP tray.



Load up to 10 envelopes in the MP tray with the printing surface face up. Make sure the envelopes are below the maximum paper mark (1). Loading more than 10 envelopes may cause paper jams.

- Send your print job to the machine.



Change your print preferences in the Print dialog box before sending the print job from your computer.

Settings	Options for Envelopes
Paper Size	Com-10 DL C5 Monarch
Paper Type	Envelopes Env. Thick Env. Thin

-
8. Close the paper stopper.
 9. Close the back cover (the face up output tray) until it locks in the closed position.



Related Information




- [Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray \(MP Tray\)](#)
-

Paper Settings

- [Change the Paper Size and Paper Type](#)
- [Select the Tray to Be Used For Printing](#)
- [Change the Check Paper Size Setting](#)

Change the Paper Size and Paper Type

When you change the size and type of the paper you load in the tray, you must change the Paper Size and Paper Type settings on the LCD at the same time.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Tray Setting] > [Paper Type].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the paper tray options, and then press the option you want.
3. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the paper type options, and then press the option you want.
4. Press .
5. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Paper Size] option, and then press [Paper Size].
6. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the paper tray options, and then press the option you want.
7. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the paper size options, and then press the option you want.
8. Press .





Related Information

- [Paper Settings](#)

Select the Tray to Be Used For Printing

Change the default tray the machine will use for printing copies, received faxes, and print jobs from your computer.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Tray Setting].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Tray Use: Copy], [Tray Use: Fax], or [Tray Use: Print] option, and then press the option you want.
3. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the option you want, and then press it. For example, when you select the [MP>T1] option, the machine pulls paper from the MP tray until it is empty, and then from Tray 1.
4. Press .



- When you make a copy using the ADF and give priority to multiple trays, the machine looks for the tray with the most suitable paper and pulls paper from that tray.
- When you make a copy using the scanner glass, your document is copied from the higher priority tray even if more suitable paper is in another paper tray.
- Use the following sizes of paper for printing faxes: Letter, A4, Legal, Folio, Mexico Legal or India Legal. When an appropriate size is not in any of the trays, the machine stores received faxes and [Size Mismatch] appears on the touchscreen.
- If the tray is out of paper and received faxes are in the machine's memory, [No Paper] appears on the touchscreen. Load paper in the empty tray.





Related Information

- [Paper Settings](#)

Change the Check Paper Size Setting

When you turn on your machine's Check Size setting, the machine displays a message when you remove a paper tray or load paper using the MP tray, asking if you changed the paper size and paper type.

The default setting is On.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Tray Setting] > [Check Size].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .



Related Information

- [Paper Settings](#)
-

Load Documents

You can send a fax, make copies and scan from the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) and from the scanner glass.

- [Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder \(ADF\)](#)
- [Load Documents on the Scanner Glass](#)

Load Documents in the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)

Use the ADF when copying or scanning multiple-page, standard-sized documents.

- The ADF can hold the following pages and feed each sheet individually:
 - (bizhub 4020i)
up to 50 pages
 - (bizhub 5020i)
up to 80 pages
- Use standard 80 g/m² paper.
- Make sure documents with correction fluid or written in ink are completely dry.

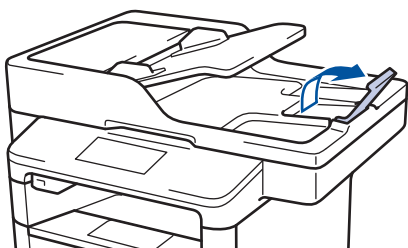
IMPORTANT

- DO NOT leave thick documents on the scanner glass. If you do this, the ADF may jam.
- DO NOT use paper that is curled, wrinkled, folded, ripped, stapled, paper-clipped, pasted, or taped.
- DO NOT use cardboard, newspaper, or fabric.
- To avoid damaging your machine while using the ADF, DO NOT pull on the document while it is feeding.

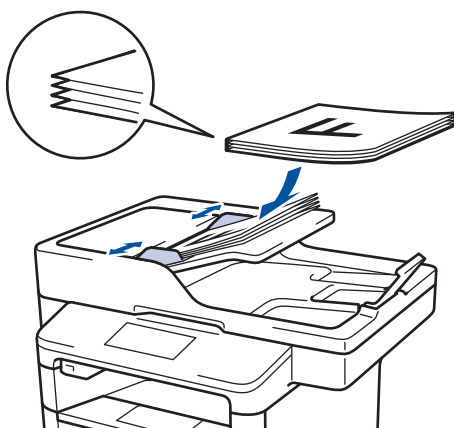
Document Sizes Supported

Length:	150 to 357.6 mm
Width:	146 to 218 mm
Weight:	64 to 90 g/m ²

1. Unfold the ADF document output support flap.



2. Fan the pages well.
3. Stagger the pages of your document and load it *face up* and *top edge first*, into the ADF as shown in the illustration.



4. Adjust the paper guides to fit the width of your document.



Related Information

- [Load Documents](#)

Load Documents on the Scanner Glass

Use the scanner glass to fax, copy, or scan one page at a time.

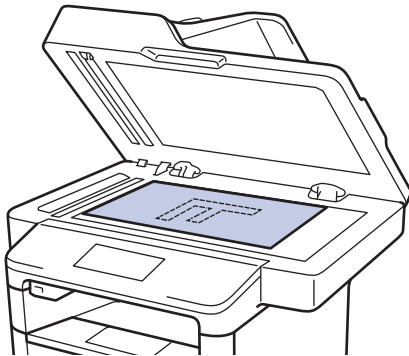
Document Sizes Supported

Length:	<ul style="list-style-type: none">(bizhub 4020i) Up to 300 mm(bizhub 5020i) Up to 355.6 mm
Width:	Up to 215.9 mm
Weight:	Up to 2 kg

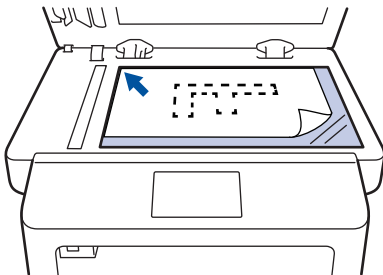


To use the scanner glass, the ADF must be empty.

1. Lift the document cover.
2. Place the document on the scanner glass *face down*.



3. Place the corner of the page in the upper left corner of the scanner glass.



4. Close the document cover.
If the document is a book or is thick, gently press on the document cover.

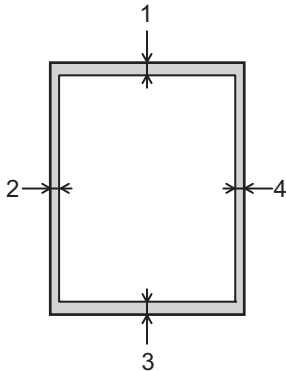


Related Information

- [Load Documents](#)

Unscannable and Unprintable Areas

The figures in the table show maximum unscannable and unprintable areas from the edges of the most commonly-used paper sizes. These measurements may vary depending on the paper size or settings in the application you are using.



Do not attempt to scan, copy, or print into these areas; your output will not reflect anything in these areas.

Usage	Document Size	Top (1) Bottom (3)	Left (2) Right (4)
Fax (Sending)	Letter, Legal	3 mm	4 mm
	A4	3 mm	(ADF) 1 mm (Scanner Glass) 3 mm
Copy ¹	Letter, Legal	4 mm	4 mm
	A4	4 mm	3 mm
Scan	Letter, Legal	3 mm	3 mm
	A4	3 mm	3 mm
Print	Letter	4.2 mm	4.2 mm
	A4	4.2 mm	4.2 mm



Related Information

- [Paper Handling](#)

Related Topics:

- [Printing Problems](#)

¹ a single copy or a 1 in 1 copy

Using Special Paper

Always test paper samples before purchasing them to ensure desirable performance.

- DO NOT use inkjet paper; it may cause a paper jam or damage your machine.
- If you use bond paper, paper with a rough surface, or paper that is wrinkled or creased, the paper may exhibit degraded performance.

Store paper in its original packaging and keep it sealed. Keep the paper flat and away from moisture, direct sunlight and heat.

IMPORTANT

Some types of paper may not perform well or may cause damage to your machine.

DO NOT use paper:

- that is highly textured
- that is extremely smooth or shiny
- that is curled or warped
- that is coated or has a chemical finish
- that is damaged, creased or folded
- that exceeds the recommended weight specification in this guide
- with tabs and staples
- with letterheads using low temperature dyes or thermography
- that is multipart or carbonless
- that is designed for inkjet printing

If you use any of the types of paper listed above, they may damage your machine. This damage is not covered under any warranty or service agreement.



Related Information

- [Paper Handling](#)

Print

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
- [Print from Your Computer \(Mac\)](#)
- [Cancel a Print Job](#)
- [Test Print](#)

Print from Your Computer (Windows)

- [Print a Document \(Windows\)](#)
- [Secure Print \(Windows\)](#)
- [Change the Default Print Settings \(Windows\)](#)

Print a Document (Windows)

For labels, thick paper, and envelopes, set the paper size and paper type in the printer before printing the document.

1. From the document that you are trying to print, open the Print dialog.
2. If necessary, adjust the settings.
3. Print the document.

For details of the function of the printer driver, refer to the Help of the printer driver.



Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
-

Secure Print (Windows)

Use Secure Print to ensure that confidential or sensitive documents do not print until you enter a password on the machine's control panel.

- The secure data is deleted from the machine when you turn off the machine.

1. Select the print command in your application.
2. Select **KONICA MINOLTA XXXX** (where XXXX is the name of your model), and then click the printing properties or preferences button.
The printer driver window appears.
3. Click the **Basic** tab.
4. Select **Confidential print** from the **Job Retention** drop-down list.
5. Type your four-digit password in the **Password** field, and then click **OK**.



You must set a separate password for each document.

6. Click **OK**.
7. Complete your print operation.
8. On the machine's control panel, swipe left or right or press ◀ or ▶ to display the [Secure Print] option, and then press [Secure Print].
9. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display user names, and then press your user name.
The LCD displays the list of secured jobs for your name.
10. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the print job, and then press it.
11. Enter your four-digit password, and then press [OK].
12. Enter the number of copies you want.
13. Press [Start].
The machine prints the data.

After you print the secured data, it will be cleared from the machine's memory.



Related Information


- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)

Change the Default Print Settings (Windows)

When you change print settings from within a program, the changes apply only to the items you are printing in that program, at that time. To select print settings to use for all of your Windows programs, all the time, use these steps to change the default print settings.

1. Do one of the following:

- (For Windows Server 2008)

Click  (**Start**) > **Control Panel** > **Hardware and Sound** > **Printers**.


- (For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2)

Click  (**Start**) > **Devices and Printers**.

- (For Windows 8.1)

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.

- (For Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016)

Click  > **Windows System** > **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.

- (For Windows Server 2012)

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware** group, click **View devices and printers**.

- (For Windows Server 2012 R2 and Windows Server 2019)

Click **Control Panel** on the **Start** screen. In the **Hardware** group, click **View devices and printers**.

2. Right-click the **KONICA MINOLTA XXXX** icon (where XXXX is your model name), and then select **Printer properties**. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver.

3. Click the **General** tab, and then click the **Printing Preferences...** or **Preferences...** button.

The printer driver dialog box appears.



- To configure the tray settings, click the **Configure** tab.
- To change the printer port, click the **Ports** tab.

4. Select the print settings you want to use as defaults for all of your Windows programs.

5. Click **OK**.

6. Close the printer properties dialog box.






Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
 - [Configure the Optional Tray Settings \(Windows\)](#)

Configure the Optional Tray Settings (Windows)

Access your machine's Properties to auto-detect your machine's Optional Tray and serial number.

The printer driver automatically detects the Optional Tray during the driver installation. If you added the Optional Tray after the driver installation, follow these steps.

1. Do one of the following:
 - (For Windows Server 2008)
Click  (**Start**) > **Control Panel** > **Hardware and Sound** > **Printers**.
 - (For Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008 R2)
Click  (**Start**) > **Devices and Printers**.
 - (For Windows 8.1)
Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.
 - (For Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016)
Click  > **Windows System** > **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.
 - (For Windows Server 2012)
Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware** group, click **View devices and printers**.
 - (For Windows Server 2012 R2 and Windows Server 2019)
Click **Control Panel** on the **Start** screen. In the **Hardware** group, click **View devices and printers**.
2. Right-click the **KONICA MINOLTA XXXX** icon (where XXXX is your model name), and then select **Printer properties**. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver.
3. Select the **Configure** tab.
4. Click the **Acquire Device Information** button.
The Optional Tray and the machine's serial number are automatically detected.
5. Click the **Apply** button.

The **Acquire Device Information** function is not available under the following machine conditions:

- The machine power switch is off.
- The machine is in an error state.
- The machine is in a network shared environment.
- The cable is not connected to the machine correctly.



Related Information

- [Change the Default Print Settings \(Windows\)](#)

Print from Your Computer (Mac)

- [Print a Document \(Mac\)](#)
- [Secure Print \(Mac\)](#)
- [Configure the Optional Tray Settings \(Mac\)](#)

Print a Document (Mac)

1. Make sure you have loaded the correct size paper in the paper tray.
2. From an application, such as Apple TextEdit, click the **File** menu, and then select **Print**.
3. Select **KONICA MINOLTA XXXX** (where XXXX is your model name).
4. Type the number of copies you want in the **Copies** field.
5. Click the **Paper Size** pop-up menu, and then select your paper size.
6. Select the **Orientation** option that matches the way you want the document to print.
7. Click the application pop-up menu, and then select **Print Settings**.
The **Print Settings** options appear.
8. Click the **Media Type** pop-up menu, and then select the type of paper you are using.
9. Change other printer settings, if needed.
10. Click **Print**.



Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Mac\)](#)
-

Secure Print (Mac)

Use Secure Print to ensure that confidential or sensitive documents do not print until you enter a password on the machine's control panel.

- The secure data is deleted from the machine when you turn off the machine.

1. From an application, such as Apple TextEdit, click the **File** menu, and then select **Print**.
2. Select **KONICA MINOLTA XXXX** (where XXXX is your model name).
3. Click the **Show Details** button.
4. Select **Printer Features** in the print dialog box.
5. Select **Secure Print** from the **Feature Sets** drop-down list.
6. Select the **Secure Print** check box.
7. Set a four-digit password. Set each digit in the fields for the first, second, third, and fourth digits starting from the top.
8. Click **Print**.
9. On the machine's control panel, swipe left or right or press ◀ or ▶ to display the [Secure Print] option, and then press [Secure Print].
10. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display user names, and then press your user name.
The LCD displays the list of secured jobs for your name.
11. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the print job, and then press it.
12. Enter your four-digit password, and then press [OK].
13. Enter the number of copies you want.
14. Press [Start].
The machine prints the data.

After you print the secured data, it will be cleared from the machine's memory.



Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Mac\)](#)

Configure the Optional Tray Settings (Mac)

1. From System Preferences in the Apple menu, navigate to your printer, and then select **Options & Supplies**.
2. Navigate to the list of hardware options, and then add any installed options.
3. Apply the changes.




Related Information

- [Print from Your Computer \(Mac\)](#)
-

Cancel a Print Job

1. Press .



To cancel multiple print jobs, press and hold  for about four seconds.



Related Information



- [Print](#)

Related Topics:

- [Printing Problems](#)
-

Test Print

If there are problems with print quality, follow these instructions to do a test print.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Printer] > [Print Options] > [Test Print] > [Yes].
2. Press .



Related Information

- [Print](#)

Related Topics:

- [Improve the Print Quality](#)
-

Scan

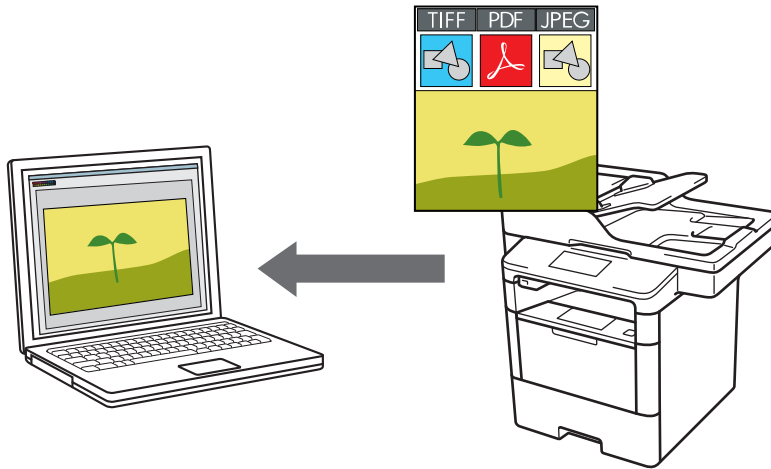
- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)
- [Scan from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan from Your Computer \(Mac\)](#)
- [Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine




- [Scan Photos and Graphics](#)
- [Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File](#)
- [Save Scanned Data to a USB Flash Drive](#)
- [Scan to an Editable Text File \(OCR\)](#)
- [Scan to Email Attachment](#)
- [Send Scanned Data to an Email Server](#)
- [Scan to FTP](#)
- [Scan to SSH FTP \(SFTP\)](#)
- [Scan to Network \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan to SharePoint](#)
- [Web Services for Scanning on Your Network \(Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10\)](#)
- [Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)
- [Configure Certificate for Signed PDF](#)
- [Disable Scanning from Your Computer](#)

Scan Photos and Graphics


Send scanned photos or graphics directly to your computer.



Use the Scan button on the machine to make temporary changes to the scan settings. To make permanent changes, use ControlCenter software.

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Scan].
3. Swipe left or right to display  [to Image].
4. Press  [to Image].

The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.

5. Press  [to Image].
6. If the machine is connected over the network, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.



If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN for the computer, enter the four-digit PIN on the LCD, and then press [OK].

7. Do one of the following:
 - To change the scan settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
 - To use the default scan settings, press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.



To change scan settings, a computer with Control Center software installed must be connected to the machine.

8. To scan both sides of the document (bizhub 5020i):
 - Press [2-sided Scan], and then select the document type.

Option	Description
2-sided Scan: Long Edge	
2-sided Scan: Short Edge	

9. Select the scan settings you want to change:

- [Scan Settings]
- [Scan Type]
- [Resolution]
- [File Type]
- [Document Size]
- [Brightness]
- [Contrast]
- [ADF Auto Deskew]
- [Skip Blank Page]
- [Remove Background Colour]
(available only for the [Colour] and [Grey] options)



To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut].

10. Press [OK].

11. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

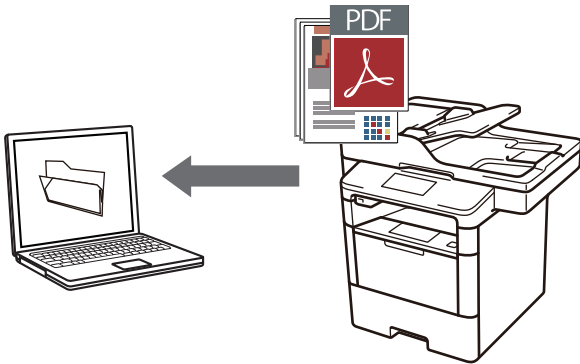
- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)

Related Topics:





- [Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)


Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File

Scan documents and save them to a folder on your computer as PDF files.




Use the Scan button on the machine to make temporary changes to the scan settings. To make permanent changes, use ControlCenter software.

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Scan].
3. Swipe left or right to display  [to File].
4. Press  [to File].
The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.
5. Press  [to File].
6. If the machine is connected over the network, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.

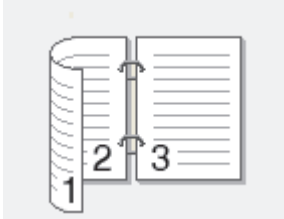
 If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN for the computer, enter the four-digit PIN on the LCD, and then press [OK].

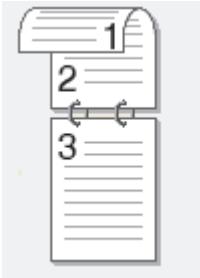
7. Do one of the following:
 - To change the scan settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
 - To use the default scan settings, press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.

 To change scan settings, a computer with Control Center software installed must be connected to the machine.

8. To scan both sides of the document (bizhub 5020i):
 - Press [2-sided Scan], and then select the document type.

Option	Description
2-sided Scan: Long Edge	

Option	Description
2-sided Scan: Short Edge	

9. Select the scan settings you want to change:

- [Scan Settings]
- [Scan Type]
- [Resolution]
- [File Type]
- [Document Size]
- [Brightness]
- [Contrast]
- [ADF Auto Deskew]
- [Skip Blank Page]
- [Remove Background Colour]
(available only for the [Colour] and [Grey] options)



To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut].

10. Press [OK].

11. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)

Related Topics:

- [Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)
-

Save Scanned Data to a USB Flash Drive

Scan documents directly to a USB flash drive.

1. Load your document.
2. Insert a USB flash drive into your machine.
The LCD automatically changes.
3. Press [Scan to USB].
4. Do one of the following:
 - To change the settings, press [Options], and then select the button you want to change. Follow the machine's instructions.
 - To set your own default settings: after making changes to settings, press the [Set New Default] option, and then press [Yes].
 - To restore the factory settings: press [Factory Reset], and then press [Yes].
5. To scan both sides of the document (bizhub 5020i):
 - Press [2-sided Scan], and then select the document type.

Option	Description
2-sided Scan: Long Edge	
2-sided Scan: Short Edge	

6. Select the scan settings you want to change:

- [Scan Type]
- [Resolution]
- [File Type]
- [Document Size]
- [File Name]
- [File Name Style]
- [File Size]
- [Brightness]
- [Contrast]
- [ADF Auto Deskew]
- [Skip Blank Page]
- [Remove Background Colour]

(available only for the [Colour] and [Grey] options)



To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut].

7. Press [OK].
8. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.

IMPORTANT

The LCD displays a message while reading the data. DO NOT unplug the power cord or remove the USB flash drive from the machine while it is reading the data. You could lose your data or damage the USB flash drive.

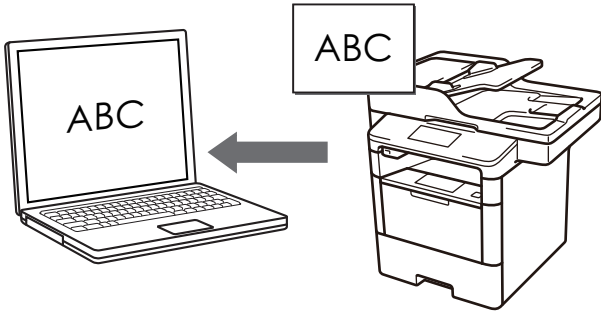


Related Information

- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)

Scan to an Editable Text File (OCR)

Your machine can convert characters in a scanned document to text using optical character recognition (OCR) technology. You can edit this text using your preferred text-editing application.



- In order to use this function, an application that supports OCR must be installed on your computer.


NOTE

The Scan to OCR feature is available for certain languages.

- Use the Scan button on the machine to make temporary changes to the scan settings. To make permanent changes, use ControlCenter software.

1. Load your document.

2. Press  [Scan].

3. Swipe left or right to display  [to OCR].

4. Press  [to OCR].

The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.

5. Press  [to OCR].

6. If the machine is connected over the network, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.



If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN for the computer, enter the four-digit PIN on the LCD, and then press [OK].

7. Do one of the following:

- To change the scan settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
- To use the default scan settings, press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.



To change scan settings, a computer with Control Center software installed must be connected to the machine.

8. To scan both sides of the document (bizhub 5020i):

- Press [2-sided Scan], and then select the document type.

Option	Description
2-sided Scan: Long Edge	
2-sided Scan: Short Edge	

9. Select the scan settings you want to change:

- [Scan Settings]
 - [Scan Type]
 - [Resolution]
 - [File Type]
 - [Document Size]
 - [Brightness]
 - [Contrast]
 - [ADF Auto Deskew]
 - [Skip Blank Page]
 - [Remove Background Colour]
- (available only for the [Colour] and [Grey] options)



To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut].

10. Press [OK].

11. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

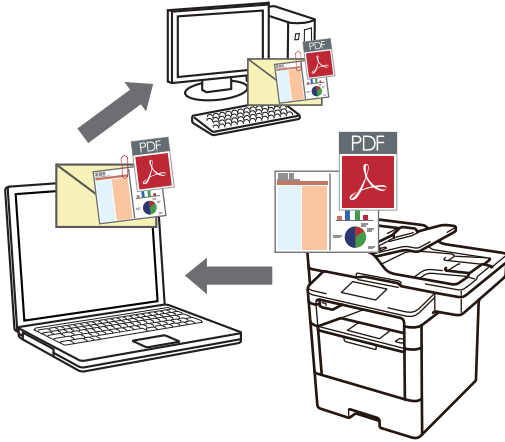
- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)

Related Topics:

- [Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)

Scan to Email Attachment





Send a scanned document as an email attachment.



- Use the Scan button on the machine to make temporary changes to the scan settings. To make permanent changes, use ControlCenter software.
- The Scan to Email feature does not support Webmail services. Use the Scan to Image or Scan to File feature to scan a document or a picture, and then attach the scanned file to an email message.



The machine scans to your default email client.

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Scan].
3. Swipe left or right to display  [to E-mail].
4. Press  [to E-mail].
The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.
5. Press  [to E-mail].
6. If the machine is connected over the network, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.



If the LCD prompts you to enter a PIN for the computer, enter the four-digit PIN on the LCD, and then press [OK].

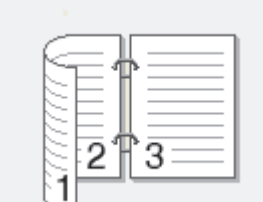
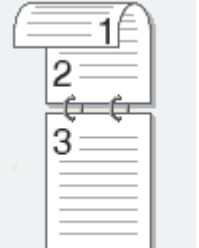
7. Do one of the following:
 - To change the scan settings, press [Options], and then go to the next step.
 - To use the default scan settings, press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.



To change scan settings, a computer with Control Center software installed must be connected to the machine.

8. To scan both sides of the document (bizhub 5020i):
 - Press [2-sided Scan], and then select the document type.

Option	Description
2-sided Scan: Long Edge	
2-sided Scan: Short Edge	

9. Select the scan settings you want to change:

- [Scan Settings]
- [Scan Type]
- [Resolution]
- [File Type]
- [Document Size]
- [Brightness]
- [Contrast]
- [ADF Auto Deskew]
- [Skip Blank Page]
- [Remove Background Colour]
(available only for the [Colour] and [Grey] options)



To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut].

10. Press [OK].

11. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)






Related Topics:

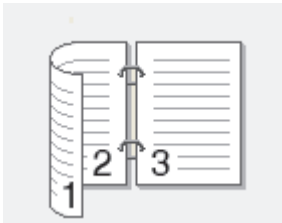
- [Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)

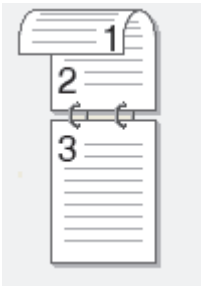
Send Scanned Data to an Email Server

Send scanned data from your machine directly to your email server, for delivery to an email recipient without using a computer.

- To send scanned data to an email server, you must configure your machine to communicate with your network and mail server. You can configure these items from the machine's control panel, Web Based Management or Remote Setup.

- Load your document.
 - Press  [Scan].
 - Swipe left or right to display  [to E-mail Server].
 - Press  [to E-mail Server].
The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.
 - Press  [to E-mail Server].
 - Do one of the following to enter the destination email address:
 - To enter the email address manually, press [Manual], and then enter the email address using the keyboard on the LCD. When finished, press [OK].
 - If the email address is stored in the machine's address book, press [Address Book], and then select the email address.
Press [OK].
 - Confirm the email address, and then press [Next].
 - Do one of the following:
 - To change the settings, press [Options], and then select the button you want to change. Follow the machine's instructions.
-
-  - To set your own default settings: after making changes to settings, press the [Set New Default] option, and then press [Yes].
- To restore the factory settings: press [Factory Reset], and then press [Yes].
-
- Press [Start] to start scanning without changing additional settings.
- To scan both sides of the document (bizhub 5020i):
 - Press [2-sided Scan], and then select the document type.

Option	Description
2-sided Scan: Long Edge	

Option	Description
2-sided Scan: Short Edge	

10. Select the scan settings you want to change:

- [Scan Type]
- [Resolution]
- [File Type]
- [Document Size]
- [File Name]
- [File Name Style]
- [File Size]
- [Brightness]
- [Contrast]
- [ADF Auto Deskew]
- [Skip Blank Page]
- [Remove Background Colour]
(available only for the [Colour] and [Grey] options)



To save the settings as a shortcut, press [Save as Shortcut].

(This function may not be available depending on your machine conditions.)

11. Press [OK].

12. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

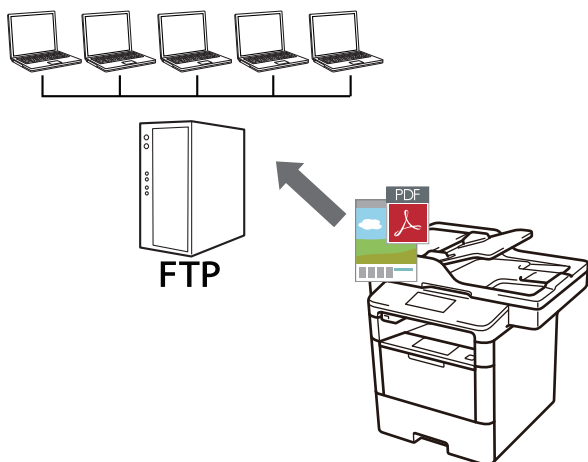
- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)

Related Topics:

- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
-

Scan to FTP

Scan documents directly to an FTP server when you need to share the scanned information. For added convenience, configure different profiles to save your favourite Scan to FTP destinations.



- [Set up a Scan to FTP Profile](#)
- [Upload Scanned Data to an FTP Server](#)


Set up a Scan to FTP Profile

Set up a Scan to FTP Profile to scan and upload the scanned data directly to an FTP location.

We recommend Microsoft Internet Explorer 11/Microsoft Edge for Windows, and Safari 10/11 for Mac. Make sure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled in whichever browser you use. If a different web browser is used, make sure it is compatible with HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1.

1. Start your web browser.

Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the IP address of the machine or the print server name). For example: http://192.168.1.2

Type a password if you have set one, and then press . The default password is initpass.

2. Click the **Scan** tab.
3. Click the **Scan to FTP/SFTP/Network/SharePoint** menu in the left navigation bar.
4. Select the **FTP** option, and then click **Submit**.

Scan to FTP/SFTP/Network/SharePoint

Profile 1	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 2	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 3	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 4	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 5	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 7	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 8	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 9	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 10	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 11	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 12	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 13	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 14	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 15	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 16	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 17	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 18	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 19	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 20	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 21	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 22	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 23	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 24	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 25	<input checked="" type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint

- Click the **Scan to FTP/SFTP/Network/SharePoint Profile** menu in the left navigation bar.
- Select the profile you want to set up or change.
- In the **Profile Name** field, type a name for this server profile (up to 15 alphanumeric characters). The machine will display this name on the LCD.
- In the **Host Address** field, type the Host Address (for example: ftp.example.com; up to 64 characters) or the IP address (for example: 192.23.56.189).
- In the **Username** field, type a user name (up to 32 characters) that has permission to write data to the FTP server.
- In the **Password** field, type the password (up to 32 characters) associated with the user name you entered in the **Username** field. Type the password again in the **Retype password** field.
- In the **Store Directory** field, type the path to the folder on the FTP server where you want to send your scanned data. Do not type a slash mark at the beginning of the path (see example).

Store Directory

- Click the **File Name** drop-down list, and then select a file name prefix from the preset names provided, or from user-defined names. The file name used for the scanned document will be the file name prefix you

select, followed by the last six digits of the flatbed/ADF scanner counter and the file extension (for example: "Estimate_098765.pdf").

13. Click the **Quality** drop-down list, and then select a quality setting. If you choose the **User Select** option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
14. Click the **File Type** drop-down list, and then select the file type you want to use for the scanned document. If you choose the **User Select** option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
15. Click the **Document Size** drop-down list, and then select your document size from the list. This is necessary to make sure the scanned file is the correct size.
16. Click the **File Size** drop-down list, and then select your file size from the list.
17. Click the **Remove Background Color** drop-down list, and then select the level from the list. You can use this feature to remove the background colour of documents to make the scanned data more legible.
18. Set the **Passive Mode** option to off or on depending on your FTP server and network firewall configuration. The default setting is on. In most cases this setting does not need to be changed.
19. Change the **Port Number** setting used to access the FTP server. The default for this setting is port 21. In most cases this setting does not need to be changed.
20. Click **Submit**.



Using the following characters: ?, /, \, ", :, <, >, | or * may cause a sending error.






Related Information

- [Scan to FTP](#)
-

Upload Scanned Data to an FTP Server

Share scanned information by saving it to your FTP server.

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Scan].
3. Swipe left or right to display  [to FTP/SFTP].
4. Press  [to FTP/SFTP].
The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.
5. Press  [to FTP/SFTP].
6. The FTP and SFTP server profiles you have set up using Web Based Management are listed. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to select one of the FTP server profiles listed, and then press the profile you want. If the profile is not complete (for example, if the logon account name and password are missing, or if the quality or file type is not specified), you will be prompted to enter any missing information.
7. Press [Start].

The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

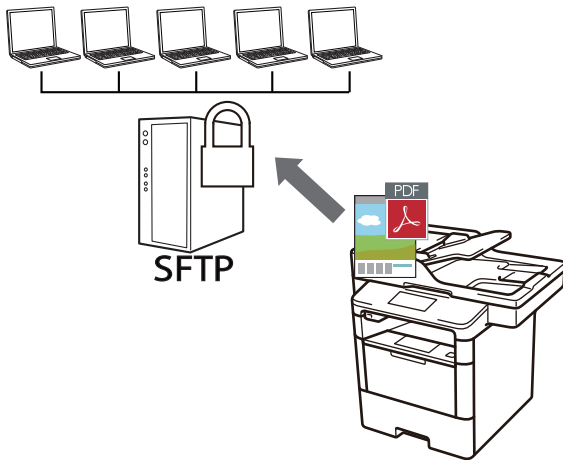
- [Scan to FTP](#)

Related Topics:

- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)

Scan to SSH FTP (SFTP)

Scan documents directly to an SFTP server, a secure version of an FTP server. For added convenience, configure different profiles to save your favourite Scan to SFTP destinations.



- [Set up a Scan to SFTP Profile](#)
- [Create a Client Key Pair Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Export a Client Key Pair Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Import a Server Public Key Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Upload Scanned Data to an SFTP Server](#)


Set up a Scan to SFTP Profile

Set up a Scan to SFTP Profile to scan and upload scanned data directly to an SFTP location.

We recommend Microsoft Internet Explorer 11/Microsoft Edge for Windows, and Safari 10/11 for Mac. Make sure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled in whichever browser you use. If a different web browser is used, make sure it is compatible with HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1.

1. Start your web browser.

Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the IP address of the machine or the print server name). For example: http://192.168.1.2

Type a password if you have set one, and then press . The default password is initpass.

2. Click the **Scan** tab.
3. Click the **Scan to FTP/SFTP/Network/SharePoint** menu in the left navigation bar.
4. Select the **SFTP** option, and then click **Submit**.

Scan to FTP/SFTP/Network/SharePoint

Profile 1	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 2	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 3	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 4	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 5	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 6	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 7	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 8	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 9	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 10	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 11	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 12	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 13	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 14	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 15	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 16	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 17	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 18	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 19	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 20	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 21	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 22	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 23	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 24	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 25	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input checked="" type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input type="radio"/> SharePoint

- Click the **Scan to FTP/SFTP/Network/SharePoint Profile** menu in the left navigation bar.
- Select the profile you want to set up or change.
- In the **Profile Name** field, type a name for this server profile (up to 15 alphanumeric characters). The machine will display this name on the LCD.
- In the **Host Address** field, type the Host Address (for example: sftp.example.com; up to 64 characters) or the IP address (for example: 192.23.56.189).
- In the **Username** field, type the user name (up to 32 characters) that has permission to write data to the SFTP server.
- In the **Auth. Method** field, select **Password** or **Public Key**.
- Do one of the following:
 - When you select **Password**, type the password (up to 32 characters) associated with the user name you typed in the **Username** field. Type the password again in the **Retype password** field.
 - When you select **Public Key**, select the authentication type from the **Client Key Pair** drop-down list.
- Select the authentication type from the **Server Public Key** drop-down list.

13. In the **Store Directory** field, type the path to the folder on the SFTP server where you want to send your scanned data. Do not type a slash mark at the beginning of the path (see example).

Store Directory

14. Click the **File Name** drop-down list, and then select a file name prefix from the preset names provided, or from user-defined names. The file name used for the scanned document will be the file name prefix you select, followed by the last six digits of the flatbed/ADF scanner counter and the file extension (for example: "Estimate_098765.pdf").
15. Click the **Quality** drop-down list, and then select a quality setting. If you choose the **User Select** option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
16. Click the **File Type** drop-down list, and then select the file type you want to use for the scanned document. If you choose the **User Select** option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
17. Click the **Document Size** drop-down list, and then select your document size from the list. This is necessary to make sure the scanned file is the correct size.
18. Click the **File Size** drop-down list, and then select your file size from the list.
19. Click the **Remove Background Color** drop-down list, and then select the level from the list. You can use this feature to remove the background colour of documents to make the scanned data more legible.
20. You can change the **Port Number** setting used to access the SFTP server. The default for this setting is port 22. In most cases this setting does not need to be changed.
21. Click **Submit**.



Using the following characters: ?, /, \, ", :, <, >, | or * may cause a sending error.



Related Information

- [Scan to SSH FTP \(SFTP\)](#)
-

Create a Client Key Pair Using Web Based Management

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click **Client Key Pair** in the left navigation bar.
7. Click **Create New Client Key Pair**.
8. In the **Client Key Pair Name** field, type the name (up to 20 characters) you want.
9. Click the **Public Key Algorithm** drop-down list, and then select the algorithm you want.
10. Click **Submit**.

The client key pair is created and saved in your machine's memory. The client key pair name and public key algorithm will be displayed in the **Client Key Pair List**.



Related Information

- [Scan to SSH FTP \(SFTP\)](#)

Export a Client Key Pair Using Web Based Management

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click **Client Key Pair** in the left navigation bar.
7. Click **Export Public Key** shown with **Client Key Pair List**.
8. Click **Submit**.
9. Specify the location where you want to save the file.

The client key pair is exported to your computer.



Related Information

- [Scan to SSH FTP \(SFTP\)](#)

Import a Server Public Key Using Web Based Management

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click **Server Public Key** in the left navigation bar.
7. Click **Import Server Public Key**.
8. Specify the file that you want to import.
9. Click **Submit**.





The server public key is imported to your machine.



Related Information

- [Scan to SSH FTP \(SFTP\)](#)

Upload Scanned Data to an SFTP Server

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Scan].
3. Swipe left or right to display  [to FTP/SFTP].
4. Press  [to FTP/SFTP].
The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.
5. Press  [to FTP/SFTP].
6. The FTP and SFTP server profiles you have set up using Web Based Management are listed. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to select one of the SFTP server profiles listed, and then press the profile you want. If the profile is not complete (for example, if the logon account name and password are missing, or if the quality or file type is not specified), you will be prompted to enter any missing information.
7. Press [Start].
The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

- [Scan to SSH FTP \(SFTP\)](#)

Scan to Network (Windows)

Scan documents directly to a CIFS server on your local network. For added convenience, you can configure different profiles to save your favourite Scan to Network destinations.

- [Set up a Scan to Network Profile](#)
- [Upload Scanned Data to a CIFS Server](#)


Set up a Scan to Network Profile

Set up a Scan to Network Profile to scan and upload scanned data directly to a folder on a CIFS server.

We recommend Microsoft Internet Explorer 11/Microsoft Edge for Windows. Make sure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled in whichever browser you use. If a different web browser is used, make sure it is compatible with HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1.

1. Start your web browser.

Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the IP address of the machine or the print server name). For example: http://192.168.1.2

Type a password if you have set one, and then press . The default password is initpass.

2. Click the **Scan** tab.
3. Click the **Scan to FTP/SFTP/Network/SharePoint** menu in the left navigation bar.
4. Select the **Network** option, and then click **Submit**.

Scan to FTP/SFTP/Network/SharePoint

Profile 1	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 2	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 3	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 4	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 5	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 6	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 7	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 8	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 9	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 10	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 11	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 12	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 13	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 14	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 15	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 16	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 17	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 18	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 19	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 20	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 21	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 22	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 23	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 24	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 25	<input type="radio"/> FTP	<input type="radio"/> SFTP	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Network	<input type="radio"/> SharePoint

5. Click the **Scan to FTP/SFTP/Network/SharePoint Profile** menu in the left navigation bar.
6. Select the profile you want to set up or change.
7. In the **Profile Name** field, type a name for this server profile (up to 15 alphanumeric characters). The machine will display this name on the LCD.
8. In the **Network Folder Path** field, type the path to the folder on the CIFS server where you want to send your scanned data.
9. Click the **File Name** drop-down list, and then select a file name prefix from the preset names provided, or from user-defined names. The file name used for the scanned document will be the file name prefix you select, followed by the last six digits of the flatbed/ADF scanner counter and the file extension (for example: "Estimate_098765.pdf").
10. Click the **Quality** drop-down list, and then select a quality setting. If you choose the **User Select** option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
11. Click the **File Type** drop-down list, and then select the file type you want to use for the scanned document. If you choose the **User Select** option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
12. Click the **Document Size** drop-down list, and then select your document size from the list. This is necessary to make sure the scanned file is the correct size.

-
13. Click the **File Size** drop-down list, and then select your file size from the list.
 14. Click the **Remove Background Color** drop-down list, and then select the level from the list. You can use this feature to remove the background colour of documents to make the scanned data more legible.
 15. To PIN-protect this profile, in the **Use PIN for Authentication** field, select **On**.
 16. If you selected **On** for the **Use PIN for Authentication** field, type a four-digit PIN in the **PIN Code** field.
 17. To set your authentication method, select **Auto**, **Kerberos**, or **NTLMv2** from the **Auth. Method** menu.
 18. In the **Username** field, type a user name (up to 96 characters) that has permission to write data to the folder specified in the **Network Folder Path** field. If the user name is part of a domain, enter the user name in one of the following styles:
user@domain
domain\user
 19. In the **Password** field, type the password (up to 32 characters) associated with the user name you entered in the **Username** field. Type the password again in the **Retype password** field.
 20. To set the Kerberos Server Address manually, in the **Kerberos Server Address** field, type the Kerberos Server Address (for example: kerberos.example.com; up to 64 characters).
 21. Click **Submit**.



Using the following characters: ?, /, \, ", :, <, >, | or * may cause a sending error.

22. You must configure the SNTP protocol (network time server) or you must set the date, time and time zone correctly on the control panel for all authentication methods. The time must match the time used by the Kerberos Server and CIFS Server.



Related Information

- [Scan to Network \(Windows\)](#)
 - [Set the Date and Time Using Web Based Management](#)
-


Set the Date and Time Using Web Based Management

Make sure the date and time and the time zone settings are set correctly using Web Based Management or the control panel, so the machine's time matches the time being used by the server providing authentication.

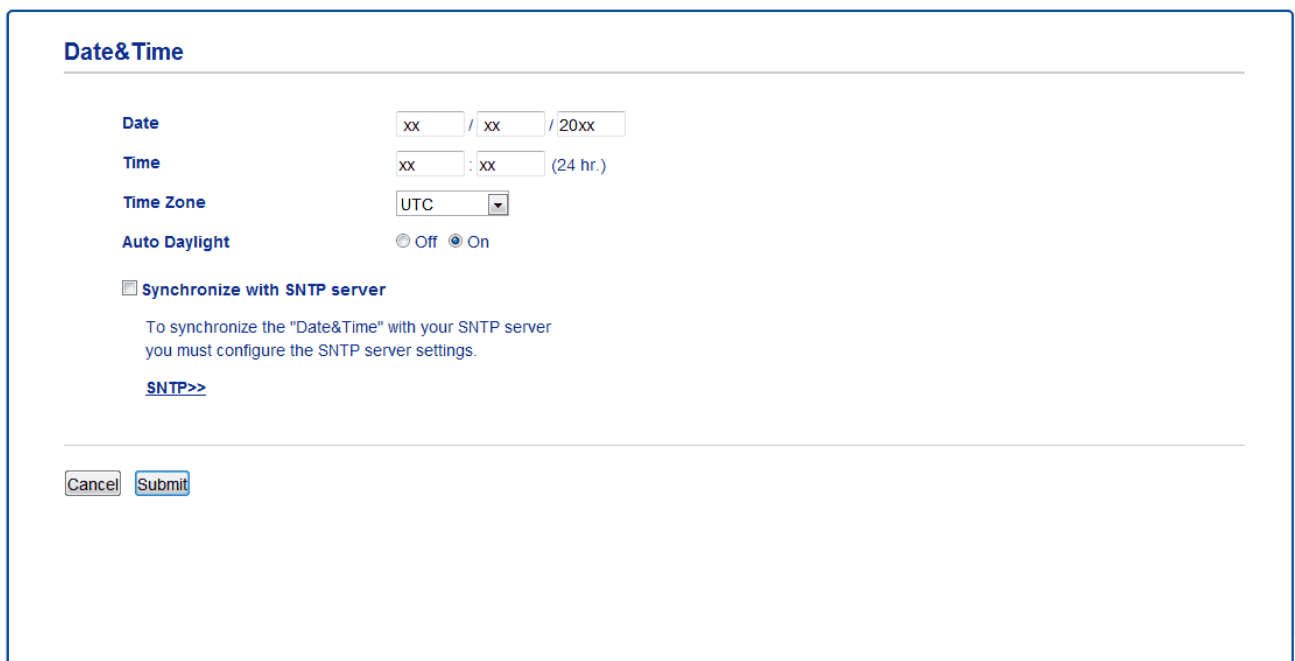
Ignore step 1, if you already have a Web Based Management window open.

1. Start your web browser.

Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the IP address of the machine or the print server name). For example: http://192.168.1.2

Type a password if you have set one, and then press . The default password is initpass.

2. Click the **Administrator** tab.
3. Click the **Date&Time** menu in the left navigation bar.







4. In the **Date** fields, enter the date.
5. Select the clock type from the **Clock Type** field (available only for some countries).
6. In the **Time** fields, enter the time.
7. Select the time difference between your location and UTC from the **Time Zone** drop-down list, for example, the time zone for Eastern time in the USA and Canada is UTC-05:00.
8. In the **Auto Daylight** field, click **On** to set the machine to change automatically for Daylight Saving Time. It will reset itself forward one hour in the spring, and back one hour in the autumn (available only for some countries).
9. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Set up a Scan to Network Profile](#)

Upload Scanned Data to a CIFS Server

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Scan].
3. Swipe left or right to display  [to Network].
4. Press  [to Network].
The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.
5. Press  [to Network].
6. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to select one of the network server profiles listed, and then press the profile you want. If the profile is not complete (for example, if the logon account name and password are missing, or if the quality or file type is not specified), you will be prompted to enter any missing information.
7. Press [Start].
The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

- [Scan to Network \(Windows\)](#)

Scan to SharePoint

Scan documents directly to a SharePoint server when you need to share the scanned information. For added convenience, configure different profiles to save your favourite Scan to SharePoint destinations.

- [Set up a Scan to SharePoint Profile](#)
- [Upload Scanned Data to a SharePoint Server](#)


Set up a Scan to SharePoint Profile

Set up a Scan to SharePoint Profile to scan and upload the scanned data directly to a SharePoint location.

We recommend Microsoft Internet Explorer 11/Microsoft Edge for Windows, and Safari 10/11 for Mac. Make sure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled in whichever browser you use. If a different web browser is used, make sure it is compatible with HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1.

1. Start your web browser.

Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the IP address of the machine or the print server name). For example: http://192.168.1.2

Type a password if you have set one, and then press . The default password is initpass.

2. Click the **Scan** tab.
3. Click the **Scan to FTP/SFTP/Network/SharePoint** menu in the left navigation bar.
4. Select the **SharePoint** option, and then click **Submit**.

Scan to FTP/SFTP/Network/SharePoint

Profile 1	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 2	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 3	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 4	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 5	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 6	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 7	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 8	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 9	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 10	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 11	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 12	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 13	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 14	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 15	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 16	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 17	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 18	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 19	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 20	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 21	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 22	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 23	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 24	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint
Profile 25	<input type="radio"/> FTP <input type="radio"/> SFTP <input type="radio"/> Network <input checked="" type="radio"/> SharePoint

- Click the **Scan to FTP/SFTP/Network/SharePoint Profile** menu in the left navigation bar.
- Select the profile you want to set up or change.
- In the **Profile Name** field, type a name for this server profile (up to 15 alphanumeric characters). The machine will display this name on the LCD.
- In the **SharePoint Site Address** field, Copy and Paste the full destination address shown in the address bar of your browser (for example: <http://SharePointSiteAddress/Shared%20Documents/Forms/AllItems.aspx>) or the IP address (for example: <http://192.168.0.1/Shared%20Documents/Forms/AllItems.aspx>).
- Click the **File Name** drop-down list, and then select a file name prefix from the preset names provided, or from user-defined names. The file name used for the scanned document will be the file name prefix you select, followed by the last six digits of the flatbed/ADF scanner counter and the file extension (for example: "Estimate_098765.pdf").
- Click the **Quality** drop-down list, and then select a quality setting. If you choose the **User Select** option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.
- Click the **File Type** drop-down list, and then select the file type you want to use for the scanned document. If you choose the **User Select** option, the machine will prompt users to select a setting each time they use the scan profile.

-
12. Click the **Document Size** drop-down list, and then select your document size from the list. This is necessary to make sure the scanned file is the correct size.
 13. Click the **File Size** drop-down list, and then select your file size from the list.
 14. Click the **Remove Background Color** drop-down list, and then select the level from the list. You can use this feature to remove the background colour of documents to make the scanned data more legible.
 15. To PIN-protect this profile, in the **Use PIN for Authentication** field, select **On**.
 16. If you selected **On** for the **Use PIN for Authentication** field, type a four-digit PIN in the **PIN Code** field.
 17. To set your authentication method, select **Auto**, **NTLMv2**, **Kerberos**, or **Basic** from the **Auth. Method** menu. If you choose **Auto**, the authentication method will be detected automatically.
 18. In the **Username** field, type the user name (up to 96 characters) that has permission to write data to the folder specified in the **SharePoint Site Address** field. If the user name is part of a domain, enter the user name in one of the following styles:
user@domain
domain\user
 19. In the **Password** field, type the password (up to 32 characters) associated with the user name you entered in the **Username** field. Type the password again in the **Retype password** field.
 20. To set the Kerberos Server Address manually, in the **Kerberos Server Address** field, type the Kerberos Server Address (for example: kerberos.example.com; up to 64 characters).
 21. Click **Submit**.







Using the following characters: ?, /, \, ", :, <, >, | or * may cause a sending error.



Related Information

- [Scan to SharePoint](#)
-

Upload Scanned Data to a SharePoint Server

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Scan].
3. Swipe left or right to display  [to SharePoint].
4. Press  [to SharePoint].
The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.
5. Press  [to SharePoint].
6. The SharePoint server profiles you have set up using Web Based Management are listed. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to select one of the SharePoint server profiles listed, and then press the profile you want. If the profile is not complete (for example, if the logon account name and password are missing, or if the quality or file type is not specified), you will be prompted to enter any missing information.
7. Press [Start].
The machine starts scanning. If you are using the machine's scanner glass, follow the touchscreen instructions to complete the scanning job.



Related Information

- [Scan to SharePoint](#)

Web Services for Scanning on Your Network (Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

The Web Services protocol enables Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10 users to scan using a machine on the network. You must install the driver via Web Services.

- [Use Web Services to Install Drivers Used for Scanning \(Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10\)](#)
- [Scan Using Web Services from This Machine \(Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10\)](#)
- [Configure Scan Settings for Web Services](#)

Use Web Services to Install Drivers Used for Scanning (Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

Use Web Services to monitor printers on the network.

- Make sure you have installed the software and drivers.
- Verify that the host computer and this machine are on the same subnet, or that the router is correctly configured to pass data between the two devices.
- You must configure the IP address on your machine before you configure this setting.
- For Windows Server 2008, Windows Server 2012, Windows Server 2012 R2, Windows Server 2016 and Windows Server 2019, you must install Print Services.

1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

Click  **(Start) > Control Panel > Network and Internet > View network computers and devices.**

The machine's Web Services Name appears with the printer icon.

Right-click the machine you want to install.

- (Windows 8.1)

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings > Change PC settings > PC and devices > Devices > Add a device.**

The machine's Web Services Name appears.

- (Windows 10)

Click  > **Settings > Devices > Printers & scanners > Add a printer or scanner.**

The machine's Web Services Name appears.



- The Web Services Name for this machine is your model name and the MAC Address (Ethernet Address) of your machine.

2. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

Click **Install** in the machine's drop-down menu.

- (Windows 8.1/Windows 10)

Select the machine you want to install, and then follow the on-screen instructions.



To uninstall drivers, click **Uninstall** or **Remove device**.




Related Information

- [Web Services for Scanning on Your Network \(Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10\)](#)

Scan Using Web Services from This Machine (Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

If you have installed the driver for scanning via Web Services, you can access the Web Services scanning menu on your machine's LCD.

Certain characters in the messages displayed on the LCD may be replaced with spaces if the language settings of your OS and your machine are different.

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Scan].
3. Swipe left or right to display  [WS Scan].
4. Press  [WS Scan].
The icon moves to the middle of the touchscreen and is highlighted in blue.
5. Press  [WS Scan].
6. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the scan options, and then press the type of scan.
7. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the computer name where you want to send data, and then press the computer name.
8. Press [Start].
The machine starts scanning.

If you are requested to select a scanning application, select Windows Fax and Scan or Windows Photo Gallery from the list.



Related Information

- [Web Services for Scanning on Your Network \(Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10\)](#)

Configure Scan Settings for Web Services

1. Do one of the following:


- (Windows 7)

Click  (**Start**) > **Devices and Printers**.

- (Windows 8.1)

Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings**, and then click **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.

- (Windows 10)

Click  > **Windows System** > **Control Panel**. In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **View devices and printers**.

2. Right-click the machine icon, and then select **Scan profiles....** The **Scan Profiles** dialog box appears.

3. Select the scan profile you want to use.

4. Make sure the scanner selected in the **Scanner** list is a machine that supports Web Services for scanning, and then click the **Set as Default** button.

5. Click **Edit...**

The **Edit Default Profile** dialog box appears.

6. Select the **Source**, **Paper size**, **Color format**, **File type**, **Resolution (DPI)**, **Brightness** and **Contrast** settings.

7. Click the **Save Profile** button.

These settings will be applied when you scan using the Web Services protocol.


If you are requested to select a scanning application, select Windows Fax and Scan or Windows Photo Gallery from the list.



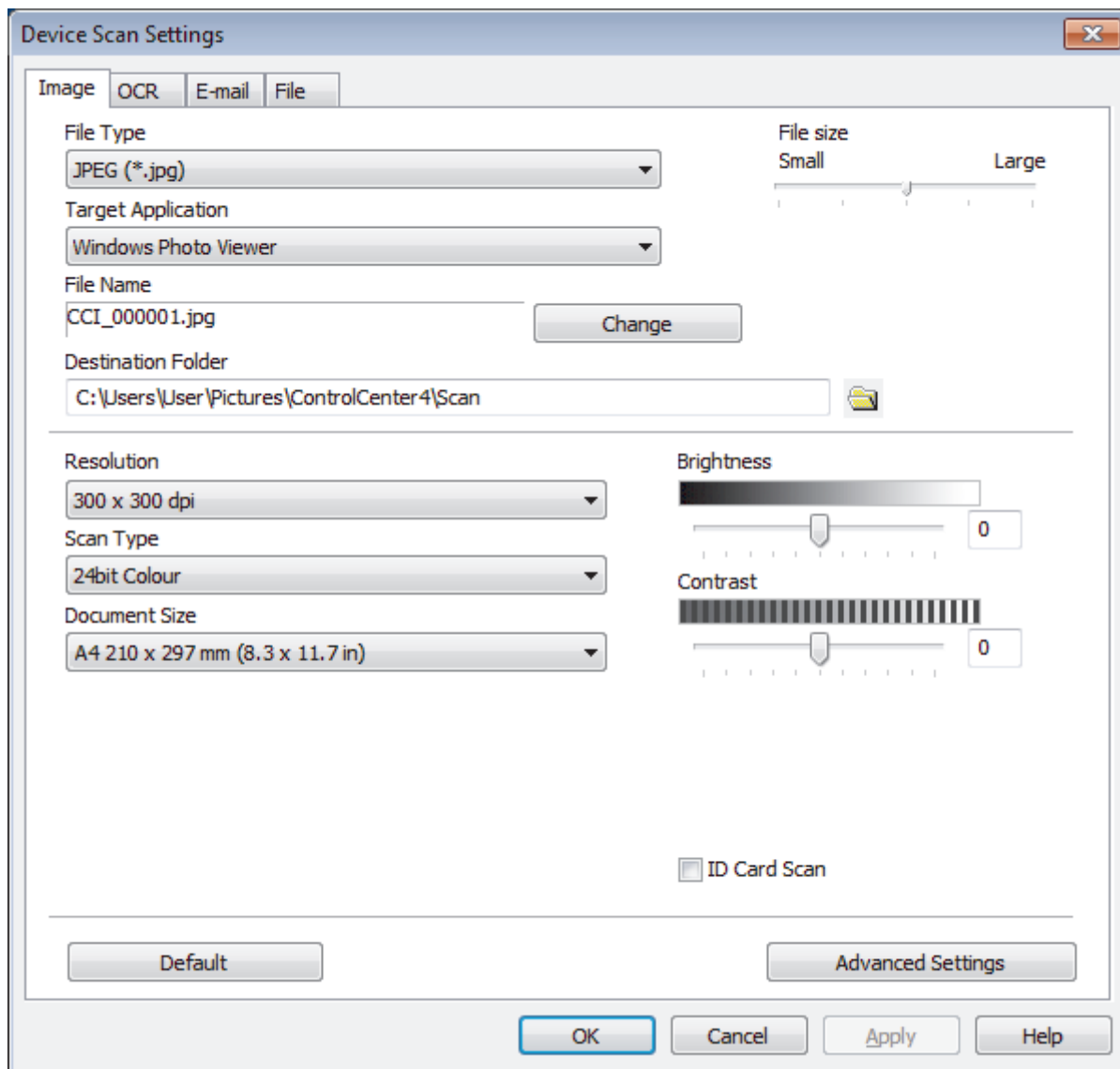
Related Information

- [Web Services for Scanning on Your Network \(Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10\)](#)

Change Scan Button Settings from ControlCenter4 (Windows)

1. Click the  (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
2. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
3. Click the **Device Scan Settings** button.

The **Device Scan Settings** dialog box appears.



4. Click the tab for the Scan to action you want to change (**Image**, **OCR**, **E-mail**, or **File**).
5. Change the settings as needed.
6. Click **OK**.



Each tab represents one of the scanning destinations, as outlined in the table below. Change your Scan to settings by clicking on the corresponding tab and customising the setting you want.

Tab Name	Corresponding Feature
Image	Scan to Image
OCR	Scan to OCR
E-mail	Scan to Email
File	Scan to File

Settings	Applicable Features			
	Image	OCR	E-mail	File
File Type	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Target Application	Yes	Yes	-	-
OCR Language	-	Yes	-	-
File Name	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Destination Folder	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Show Folder	-	-	-	Yes
File size	Yes	-	Yes	Yes
Resolution	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scan Type	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Document Size	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Brightness	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Contrast	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
ID Card Scan	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Default	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

File Type

Select the file type you want to use for the scanned data.

Target Application

Select the destination application from the drop-down list.

OCR Language

Set the OCR language to match the language of the scanned document's text.

File Name

Click **Change** to change the file name's prefix.

Destination Folder

Click the folder icon to browse and select the folder where you want to save your scanned documents.

Show Folder

Select this option to automatically display the destination folder after scanning.

File size

Adjust the data compression ratio of the scanned image. Change the file size by moving the **File size** slider to the right or left.

Resolution

Select a scanning resolution from the **Resolution** drop-down list. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

Scan Type

Select from a range of scan colour depths.

- **Auto**

Use for any type of document. This mode automatically picks an appropriate colour depth for the document.

- **Black & White**

Use for text or line art images.

- **Grey (Error Diffusion)**

Use for photographic images or graphics. (Error Diffusion is a method for creating simulated grey images without using true grey dots. Black dots are put in a specific pattern to give a grey appearance.)

- **True Grey**

Use for photographic images or graphics. This mode is more accurate because it uses up to 256 shades of grey.

- **24bit Colour**

Use to create an image with the most accurate colour reproduction. This mode uses up to 16.8 million colours to scan the image, but it requires the most memory and has the longest transfer time.

Document Size

Select the exact size of your document from the **Document Size** drop-down list.

- If you select **1 to 2 (A4)**, the scanned image will be divided into two A5-size documents.

Brightness

Set the **Brightness** level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness level and scan the document again. You can also type a value into the field to set the **Brightness** level.

Contrast

Increase or decrease the **Contrast** level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasises dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas. You can also type a value into the field to set the **Contrast** level.

ID Card Scan

Select this check box to scan both sides of an identification card onto one page.

Default

Select this option to restore all settings to their factory setting values.



Related Information

- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)

Related Topics:

- [Scan Photos and Graphics](#)
 - [Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File](#)
 - [Scan to an Editable Text File \(OCR\)](#)
 - [Scan to Email Attachment](#)
-


Configure Certificate for Signed PDF

If you select Signed PDF for Scan to USB, Scan to Email server, Scan to FTP, Scan to SFTP, Scan to Network or Scan to SharePoint features, you must configure a certificate on your machine using Web Based Management.

To use Signed PDF, you must install a certificate on your machine and your computer.

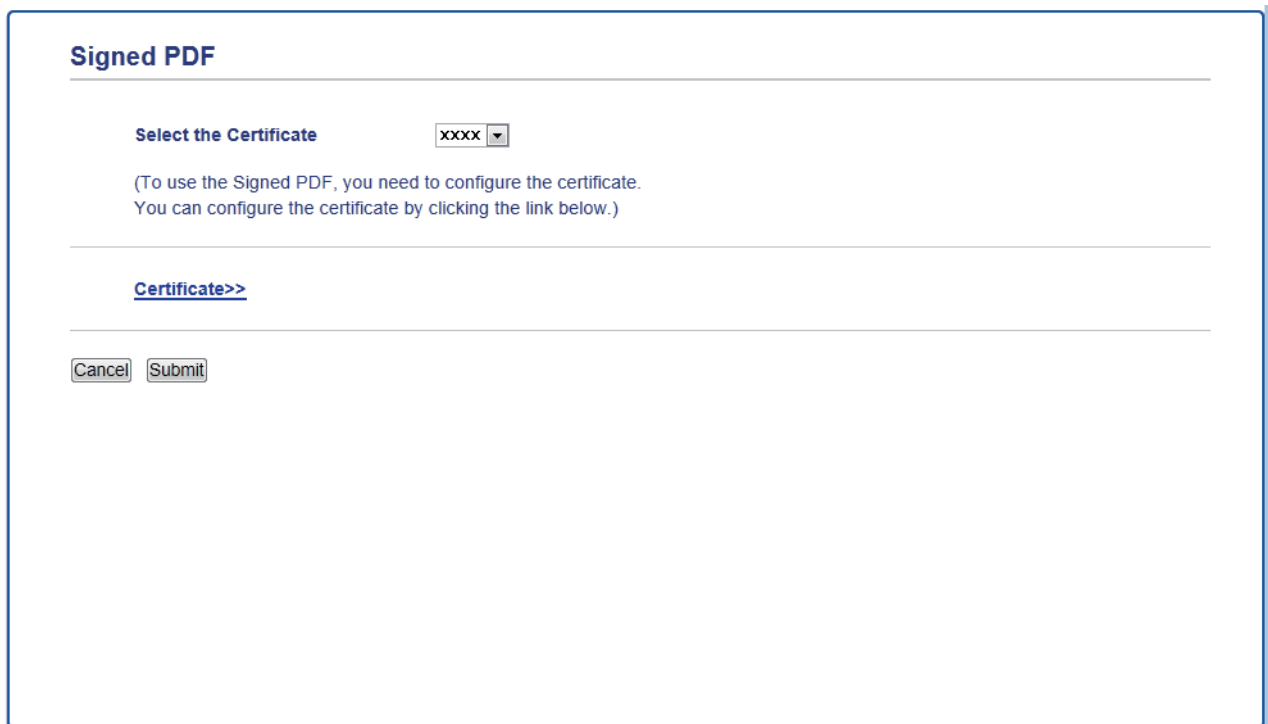
1. Start your web browser.

Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the IP address of the machine or the print server name). For example: http://192.168.1.2

Type a password if you have set one, and then press . The default password is initpass.

2. Click the **Administrator** tab.
3. Click the **Signed PDF** menu in the left navigation bar.

The Signed PDF configuration dialog box appears.



Signed PDF

Select the Certificate

(To use the Signed PDF, you need to configure the certificate.
You can configure the certificate by clicking the link below.)

[Certificate>>](#)

4. Click the **Select the Certificate** drop-down list, and then select the certificate.
5. Click **Submit**.



Related Information


- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)

Disable Scanning from Your Computer

You can disable the ability to scan from your computer. Set the pull scan setting using Web Based Management.

1. Start your web browser.

Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the IP address of the machine or the print server name). For example: http://192.168.1.2

Type a password if you have set one, and then press . The default password is initpass.

2. Click the **Scan** tab.
3. Click the **Scan from PC** menu in the left navigation bar.
4. In the **Pull Scan** field, click **Disabled**.
5. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Scan Using the Scan Button on Your Machine](#)

Scan from Your Computer (Windows)

There are several ways you can use your computer to scan photos and documents on your machine. Use the software applications provided by our company, or use your favourite scanning application.

- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Using Windows Photo Gallery or Windows Fax and Scan](#)


Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

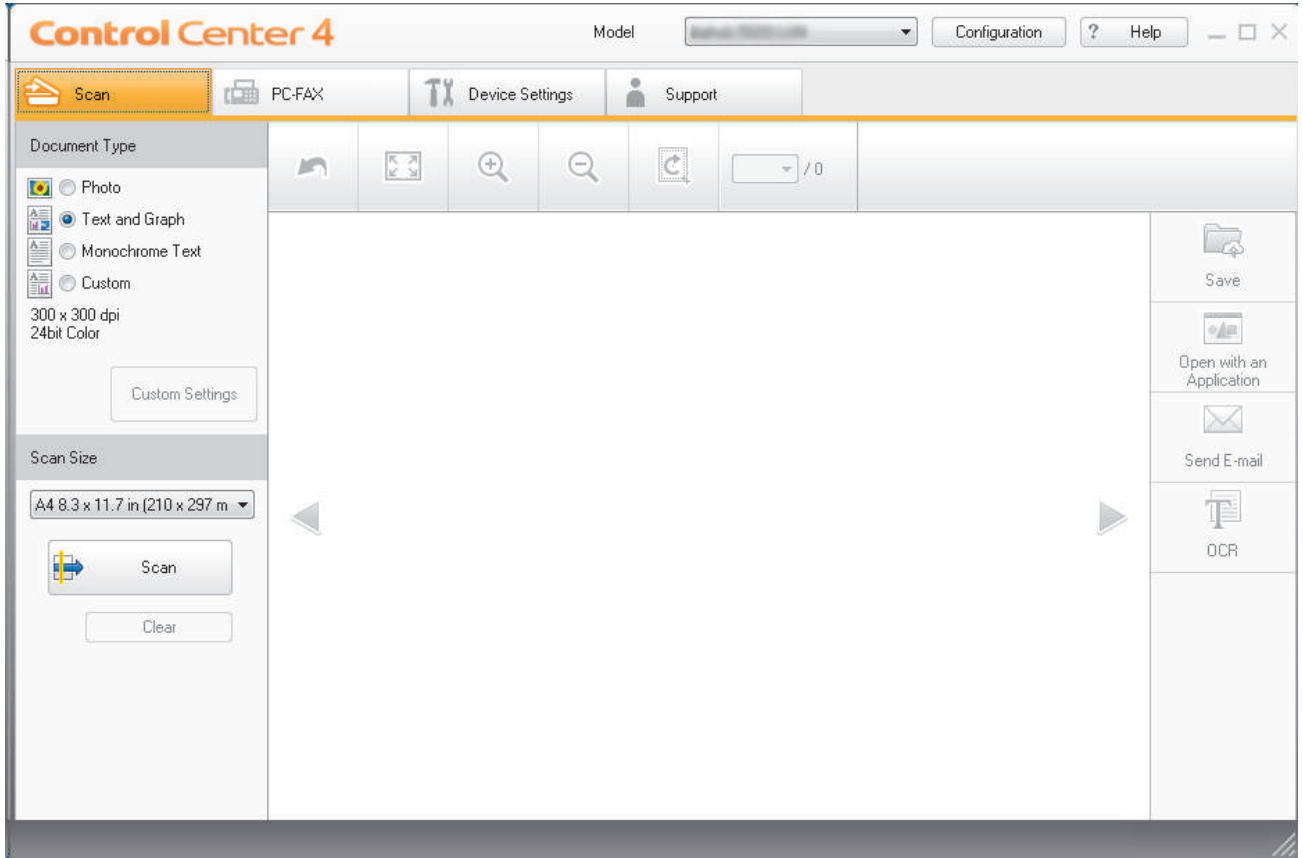
Use ControlCenter4 Home Mode to access your machine's main features.






- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)

Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

Select **Home Mode** as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

1. Load your document.
2. Click the  (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
3. Click the **Scan** tab.



4. Select the **Document Type**.
 5. Change the document's **Scan Size**, if needed.
 6. Click  (**Scan**).
- The machine starts scanning, and the scanned image appears in the image viewer.
7. Click the left or right arrow buttons to preview each scanned page.
 8. Crop the scanned image, if needed.
 9. Do one of the following:
 - Click  (**Save**) to save scanned data.
 - Click  (**Open with an Application**) to open scanned data in another application.
 - Click  (**Send E-mail**) to attach scanned data to an email.
 - Click  (**OCR**) to convert your scanned document to an editable text file. (available only for certain models)

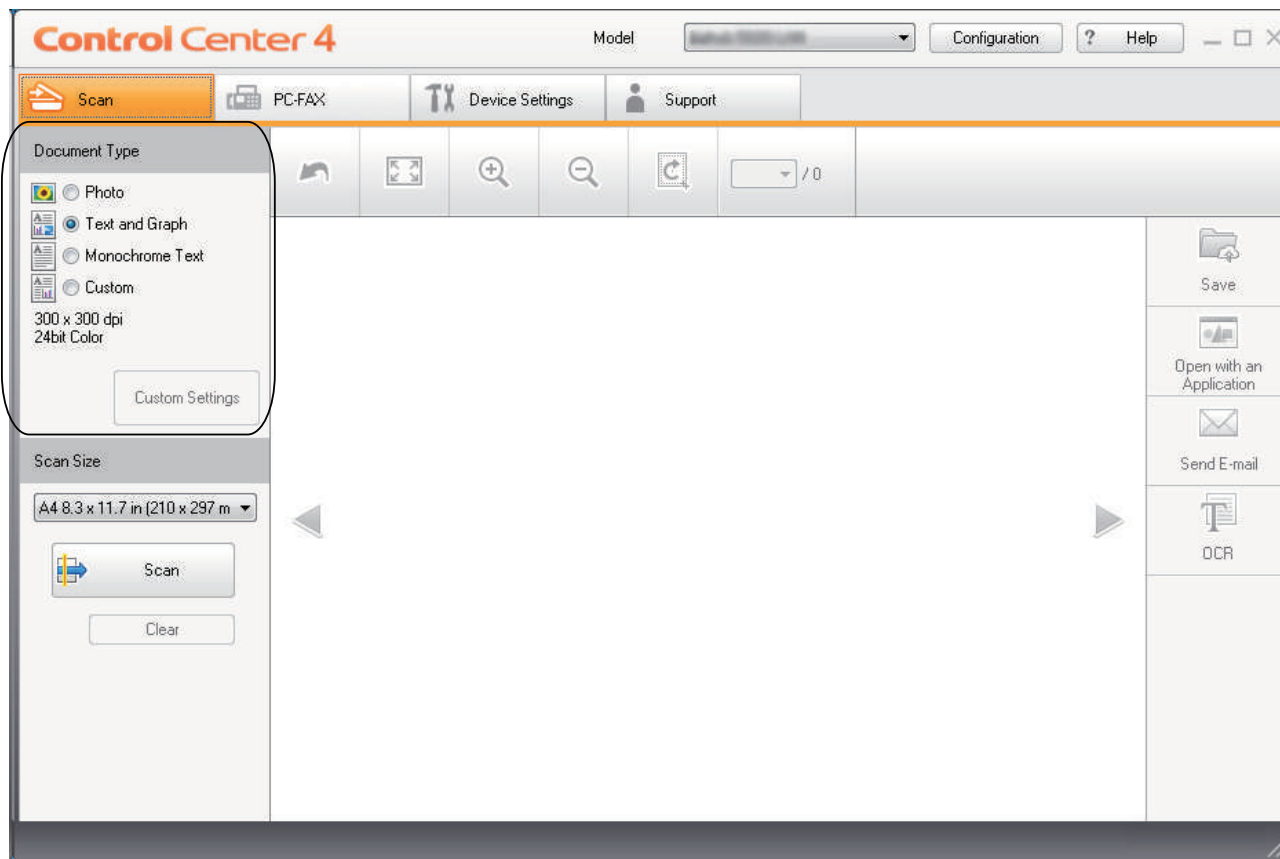
Related Information

- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)

-
- Select Document Type Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
 - Change Scan Size Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
 - Crop a Scanned Image Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
 - Scan to an Application Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)
-

Select Document Type Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

- Select the **Document Type** option that matches the type of original you want to scan.



Option	Description
Photo	600 x 600 dpi 24bit Colour
Text and Graph	300 x 300 dpi 24bit Colour
Monochrome Text	200 x 200 dpi Black & White
Custom	300 x 300 dpi (24bit Colour as default) Select the scan settings you want from the Custom Settings button.



Related Information

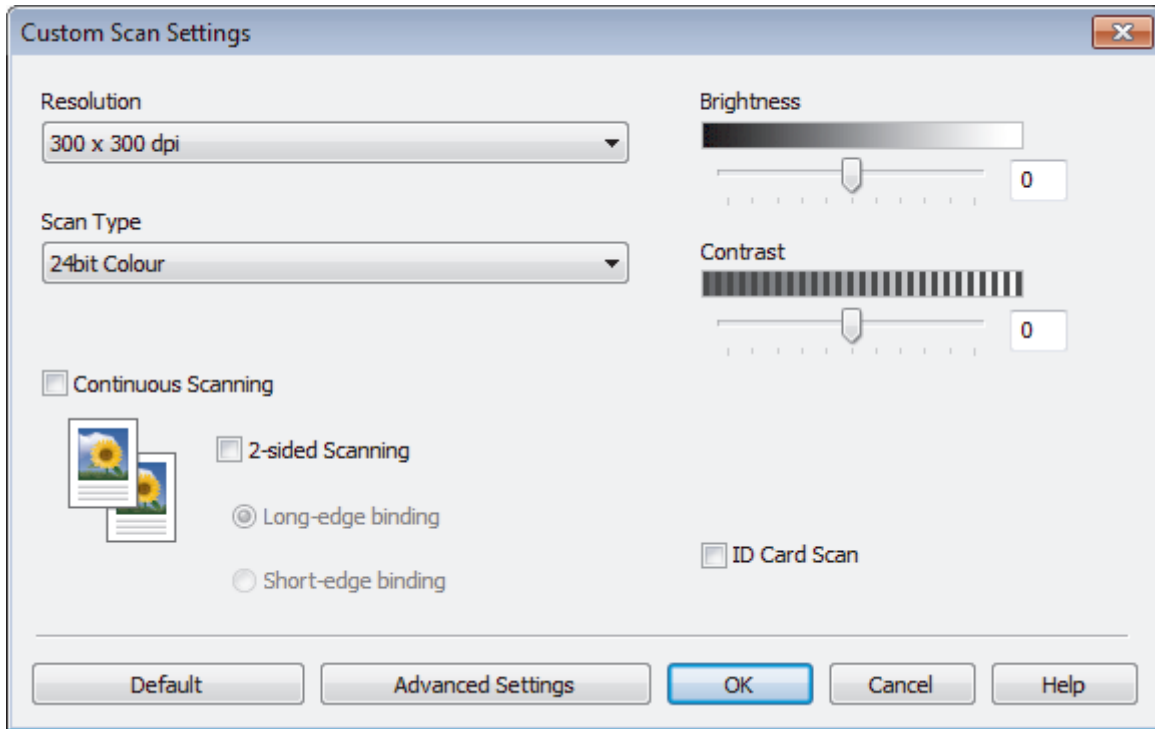
- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)
 - [Custom Scan Settings \(Windows\)](#)

Custom Scan Settings (Windows)

Select **Custom** in the **Document Type** list to change advanced scan settings.

- Select **Custom**, and then click the **Custom Settings** button.

The **Custom Scan Settings** dialog box appears.



You can change the following settings:

Resolution

Select a scanning resolution from the **Resolution** drop-down list. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

Scan Type

Select from a range of scan colour depths.

- Auto

Use for any type of document. This mode automatically picks an appropriate colour depth for the document.

- Black & White

Use for text or line art images.

- Grey (Error Diffusion)

Use for photographic images or graphics. (Error Diffusion is a method for creating simulated grey images without using true grey dots. Black dots are put in a specific pattern to give a grey appearance.)

- True Grey

Use for photographic images or graphics. This mode is more accurate because it uses up to 256 shades of grey.

- 24bit Colour

Use to create an image with the most accurate colour reproduction. This mode uses up to 16.8 million colours to scan the image, but it requires the most memory and has the longest transfer time.

Brightness

Set the **Brightness** level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness level and scan the document again. You can also type a value into the field to set the **Brightness** level.

Contrast

Increase or decrease the **Contrast** level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasises dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas. You can also type a value into the field to set the **Contrast** level.

Continuous Scanning

Select this option to scan multiple pages from the scanner glass or ADF (Available only for certain models). After a page is scanned, select either continue scanning or finish. Use this method to scan more pages than the maximum ADF capacity.

2-sided Scanning

Select this check box to scan both sides of the document. When using the Automatic 2-sided Scan feature, you must select the **Long-edge binding** or **Short-edge binding** option, depending on the layout of your original, to make sure the data file you create appears correctly.

(bizhub 5020i)

ID Card Scan

Select this check box to scan both sides of an identification card onto one page.

Advanced Settings

Configure advanced settings by clicking the **Advanced Settings** button in the Scan Settings dialog box.

- **Remove Background Colour**

Remove the base colour of documents to make the scanned data more legible. Choose from three settings: high, medium, and low.

(available only for the **Auto**, **True Grey** and **24bit Colour** options)

- **Skip Blank Page**

Remove the document's blank pages from the scanning results.

- **Display Scanning Results**

Show the numbers of total pages saved and blank pages skipped on your computer screen.

- **ADF Auto Deskew**

When scanning the document from the ADF, the machine corrects skewing of the document automatically.



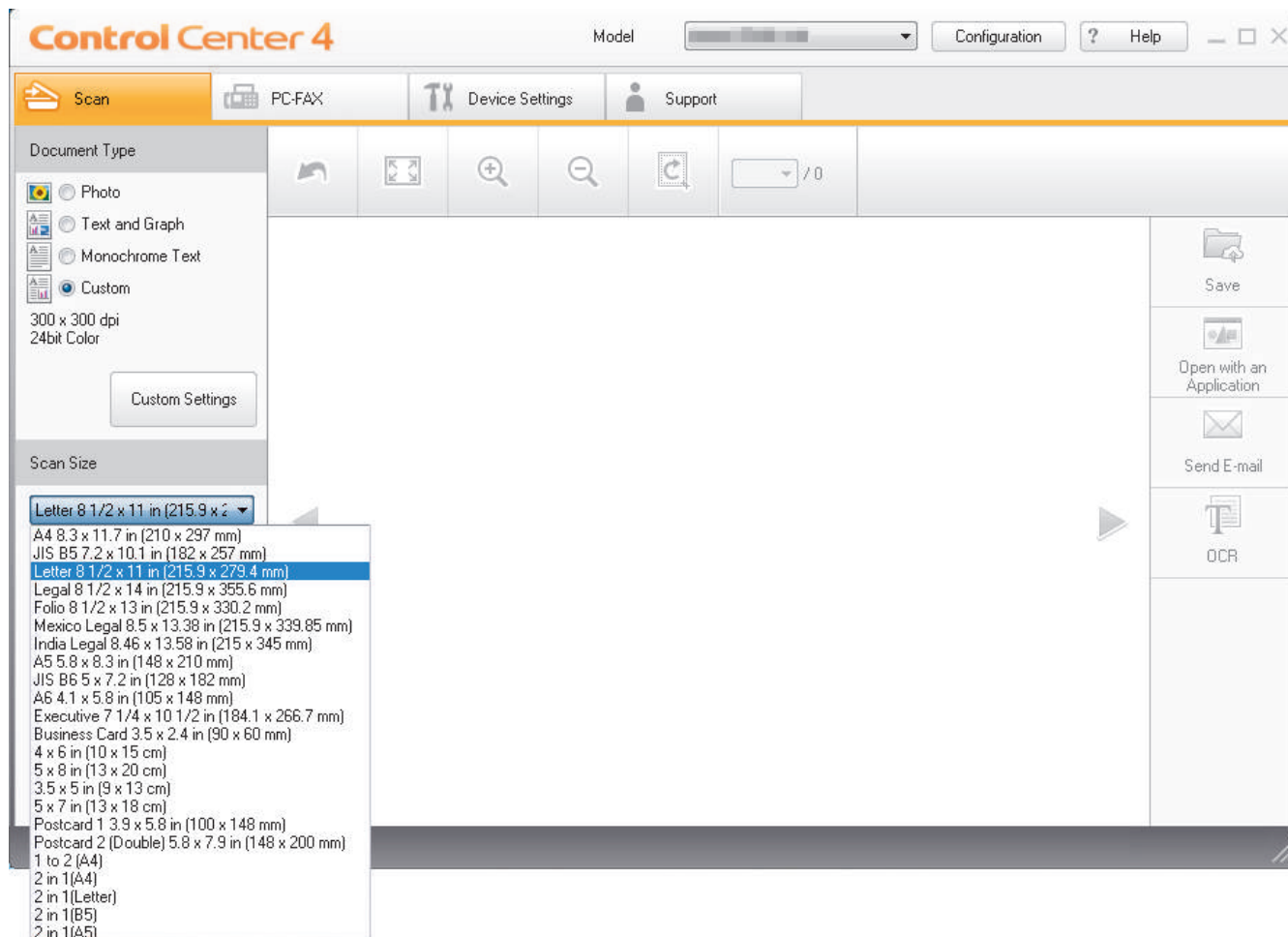
Related Information

- [Select Document Type Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)
-

Home > Scan > Scan from Your Computer (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows) > Change Scan Size Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

Change Scan Size Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

For faster scan speeds, select the exact size of your document from the **Scan Size** drop-down menu.



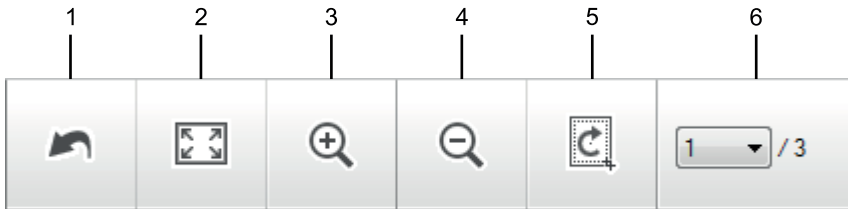
✓ Related Information

- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)

Crop a Scanned Image Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

The crop tool on the Image Editing Toolbar lets you trim unwanted areas from your scanned image. Use the **Zoom In** and **Zoom Out** tools to help view the image to be cropped.

Image Editing Toolbar



1. Restart

Cancels all the edits applied to the selected image. The edited image returns to its original state.

2. Fit to Window

Displays the scanned image so that the entire image fits in the window.

3. Zoom In

Zooms in on the scanned image.

4. Zoom Out

Zooms out of the scanned image.

5. Crop and Edit

Removes the outer parts of the image. Click the **Crop and Edit** button, and then change the frame to contain the area you want to keep after cropping.

6. Page Counter

Indicates the page number of the scanned page currently shown in the image viewer. To display a different page, select the desired page number from the drop-down page number list.

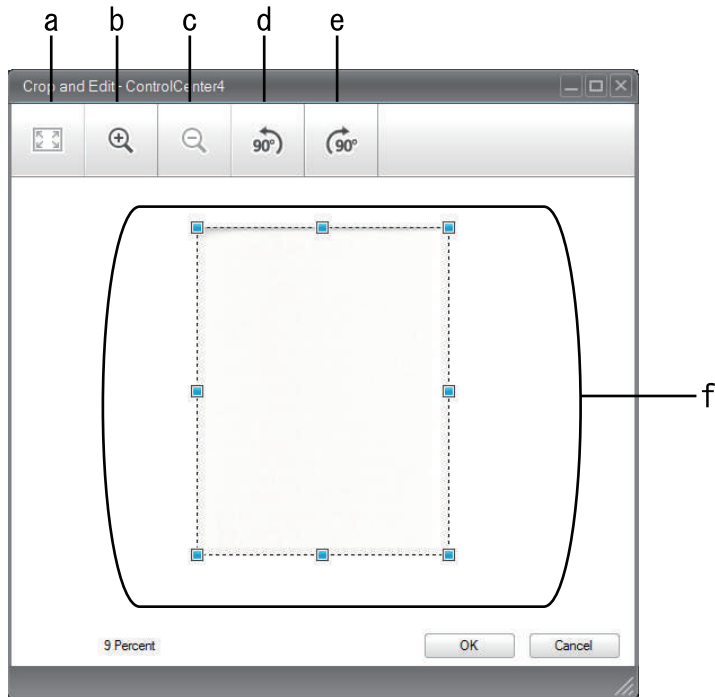


If you have scanned multiple pages, you can see the next or previous scanned page by clicking the left or right arrow buttons in the preview window.

1. Scan a document.

2. Click  (**Crop and Edit**) to edit the scanned image.

The **Crop and Edit - ControlCenter4** window appears.



- a. Expands the scanned image so that the entire image fits in the window.
 - b. Zooms in on the image.
 - c. Zooms out of the image.
 - d. Rotates the image counter-clockwise 90 degrees.
 - e. Rotates the image clockwise 90 degrees.
 - f. Click and drag the frame to adjust the area to be cropped.
3. Click **OK**.
- The edited image appears in the image viewer.


Related Information

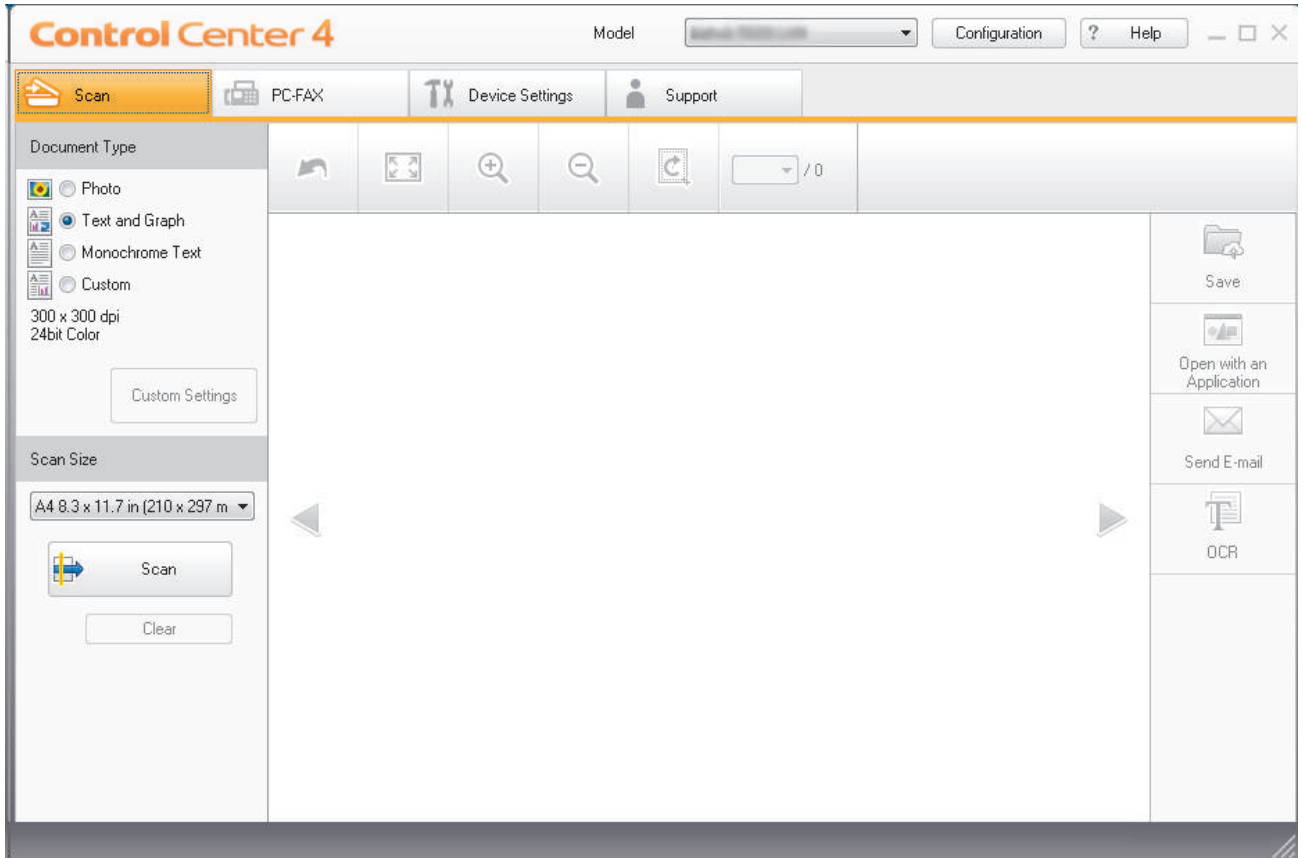
- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)


Scan to an Application Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

The **Open with an Application** button lets you scan an image directly into your graphics application for editing.

Select **Home Mode** as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

1. Load your document.
2. Click the  (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
3. Click the **Scan** tab.




4. Select the **Document Type**.
5. Change the size of your document, if needed.
6. Click  (**Scan**).
- The machine starts scanning, and the scanned image appears in the image viewer.
7. Click the left or right arrow buttons to preview each scanned page.
8. Crop the scanned image, if needed.
9. Click the **Open with an Application** button.
10. Select the application from the drop-down list, and then click **OK**.
- The image opens in the application you have selected.

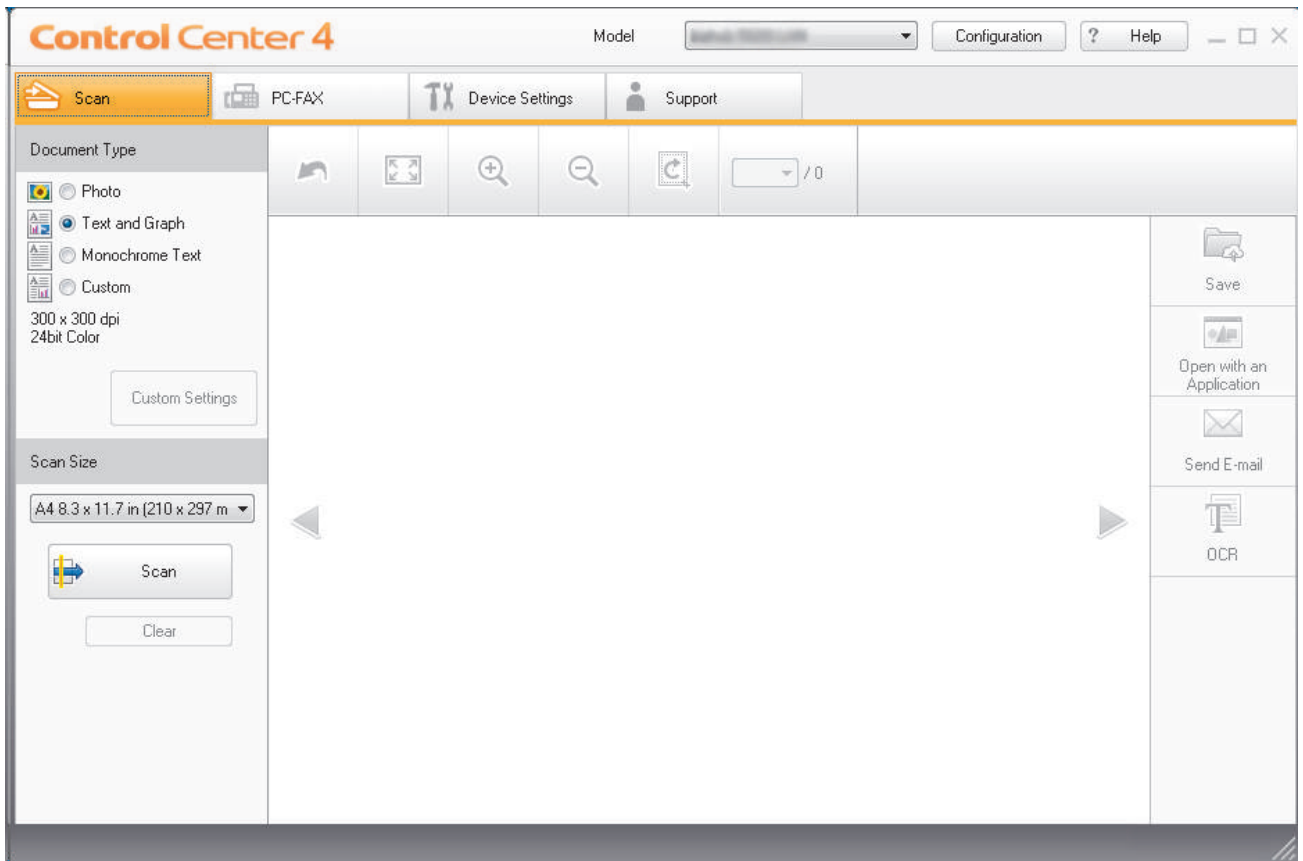
✓ Related Information


- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)

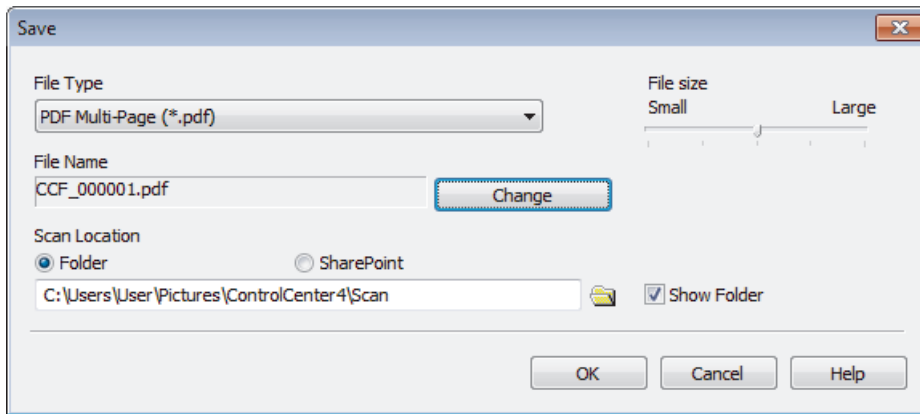
Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)



Select **Home Mode** as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

1. Load your document.
2. Click the  (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
3. Click the **Scan** tab.



4. Select the **Document Type**.
 5. Change the size of your document, if needed.
 6. Click  (**Scan**).
- The machine starts scanning, and the scanned image appears in the image viewer.
7. Click the left or right arrow buttons to preview each scanned page.
 8. Click **Save**.
- The **Save** dialog box appears.
9. Click the **File Type** drop-down list, and then select a PDF file.



 To save the document as a password-protected PDF, select **Secure PDF Single-Page (*.pdf)** or **Secure PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)** from the **File Type** drop-down list, click  , and then type the password.

10. To change the file name, click the **Change** button, if needed.
11. Click the folder icon to browse and select the folder where you want to save your scanned documents.
12. Click **OK**.

The scanned document is saved to the destination folder as a PDF.

Related Information

- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)

Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)


Related Models: bizhub 5020i

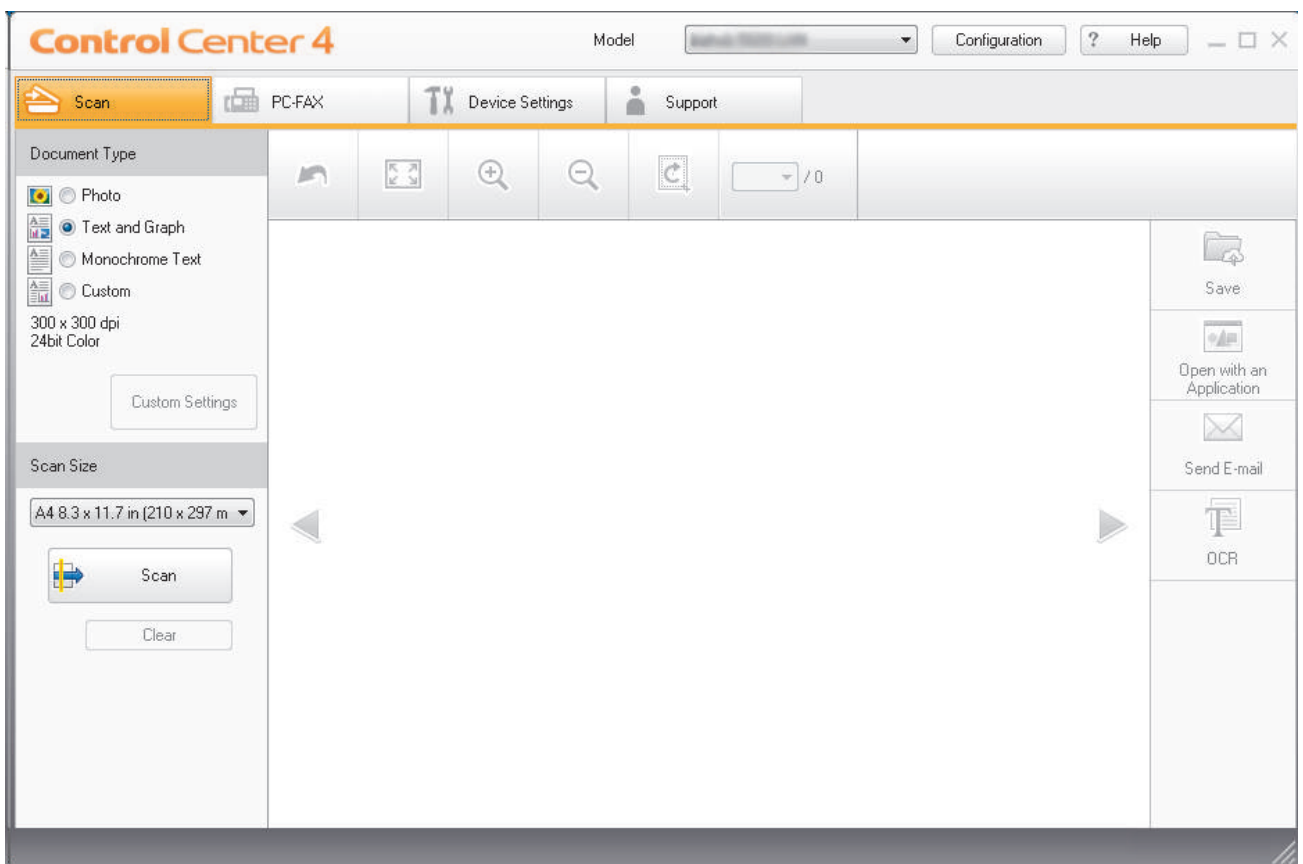
Select **Home Mode** as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

1. Load documents in the ADF.





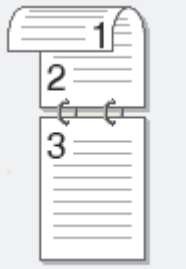

To scan both sides of a document automatically, you must use the ADF, not the flatbed scanner glass.

2. Click the  (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
3. Click the **Scan** tab.



4. Under **Document Type**, select **Custom**, and then click the **Custom Settings** button.
The **Custom Scan Settings** dialog box appears.
5. Select the **2-sided Scanning** check box.
6. Select the **Long-edge binding** or **Short-edge binding** option, depending on the Original layout (see table for layout examples).

2-sided Scan setting	Original layout	Scan Result
Long-edge binding		

2-sided Scan setting	Original layout	Scan Result
Short-edge binding		

7. Configure other **Custom Scan Settings**, if needed.





8. Click **OK**.

9. Click  (**Scan**).

The machine starts scanning, and the scanned image appears in the image viewer.

10. Click the left or right arrow buttons to preview each scanned page.

11. Do one of the following:

- Click  (**Save**) to save scanned data.
- Click  (**Open with an Application**) to open scanned data in another application.
- Click  (**Send E-mail**) to attach scanned data to an email.
- Click  (**OCR**) to convert your scanned document to an editable text file. (available only for certain models)



Related Information

- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)

Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

Settings	Applicable Features			
	Open with an Application	OCR	Send E-mail	Save
File Type	-	Yes	Yes	Yes
Target Application	Yes	Yes	-	-
OCR Language	-	Yes	-	-
File Name	-	-	-	Yes
Scan Location	-	-	-	Yes
Show Folder	-	-	-	Yes
File size	-	-	Yes	Yes

File Type

Select the file type you want to use for the scanned data.

For Send E-mail and Save

- **Windows Bitmap (*.bmp)**
- **JPEG (*.jpg)** (recommended for most users when scanning pictures)
- **TIFF Single-Page (*.tif)**
- **TIFF Multi-Page (*.tif)**
- **Portable Network Graphics (*.png)**
- **PDF Single-Page (*.pdf)** (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- **PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)** (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- **PDF/A Single-Page (*.pdf)** (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- **PDF/A Multi-Page (*.pdf)** (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- **High Compression PDF Single-Page (*.pdf)**
- **High Compression PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)**
- **Secure PDF Single-Page (*.pdf)**
- **Secure PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)**
- **Searchable PDF Single-Page (*.pdf)**
- **Searchable PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)**
- **XML Paper Specification (*.xps)** (the XML Paper Specification is available for Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10, and when using applications that support XML Paper Specification files)
- **Microsoft Office Word (*.docx)** (Available only for certain models)
- **Microsoft Office PowerPoint (*.pptx)** (Available only for certain models)

For OCR

- **HTML 3.2 (*.htm)**
- **HTML 4.0 (*.htm)**
- **Microsoft Excel 2003, XP (*.xls)**
- **RTF Word 2000 (*.rtf)**
- **WordPad (*.rtf)**
- **WordPerfect 9, 10 (*.wpd)**
- **Text (*.txt)**
- **Searchable PDF Single-Page (*.pdf)**
- **Searchable PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)**

Target Application

Select the destination application from the drop-down list.

OCR Language

Set the optical character recognition (OCR) language to match the language of the scanned document's text.

File Name

Click **Change** to change the file name's prefix.

Scan Location

Select the **Folder** or **SharePoint** button to specify the destination where you would like to save your scanned documents.

Show Folder

Select this option to automatically display the destination folder after scanning.

File size

Adjust the data compression ratio of the scanned image. Change the file size by moving the **File size** slider to the right or left.

Custom Settings

Select the **Custom** option, click the **Custom Settings** button, and then change settings.

Scan Size

Select the exact size of your document from the **Scan Size** drop-down menu.



Related Information

- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)

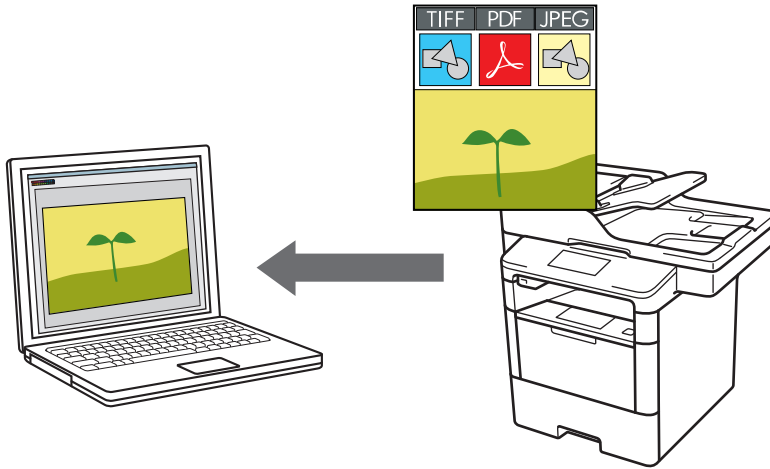
Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode gives you more control over the details of your machine's features and allows you to customise one-button scan actions.


- [Scan Photos and Graphics Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Both Sides of an ID Card Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan to Email Attachment Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan to an Editable Text File \(OCR\) Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)

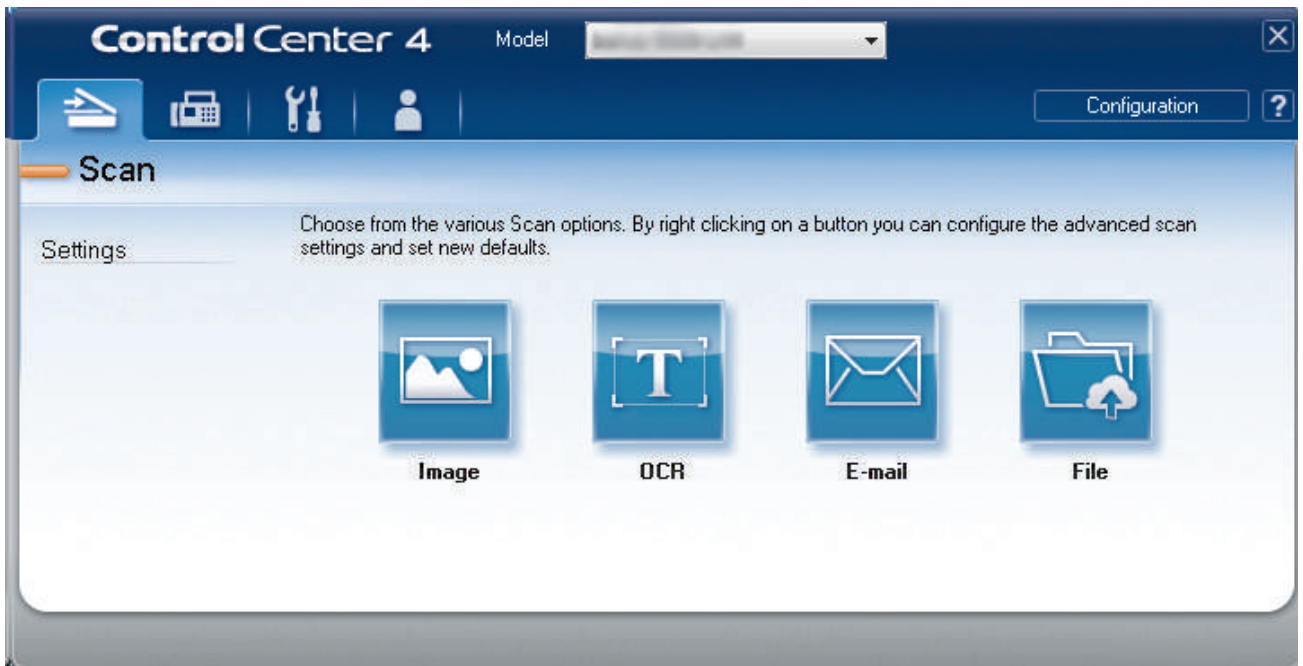
Scan Photos and Graphics Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

Send scanned photos or graphics directly to your computer.

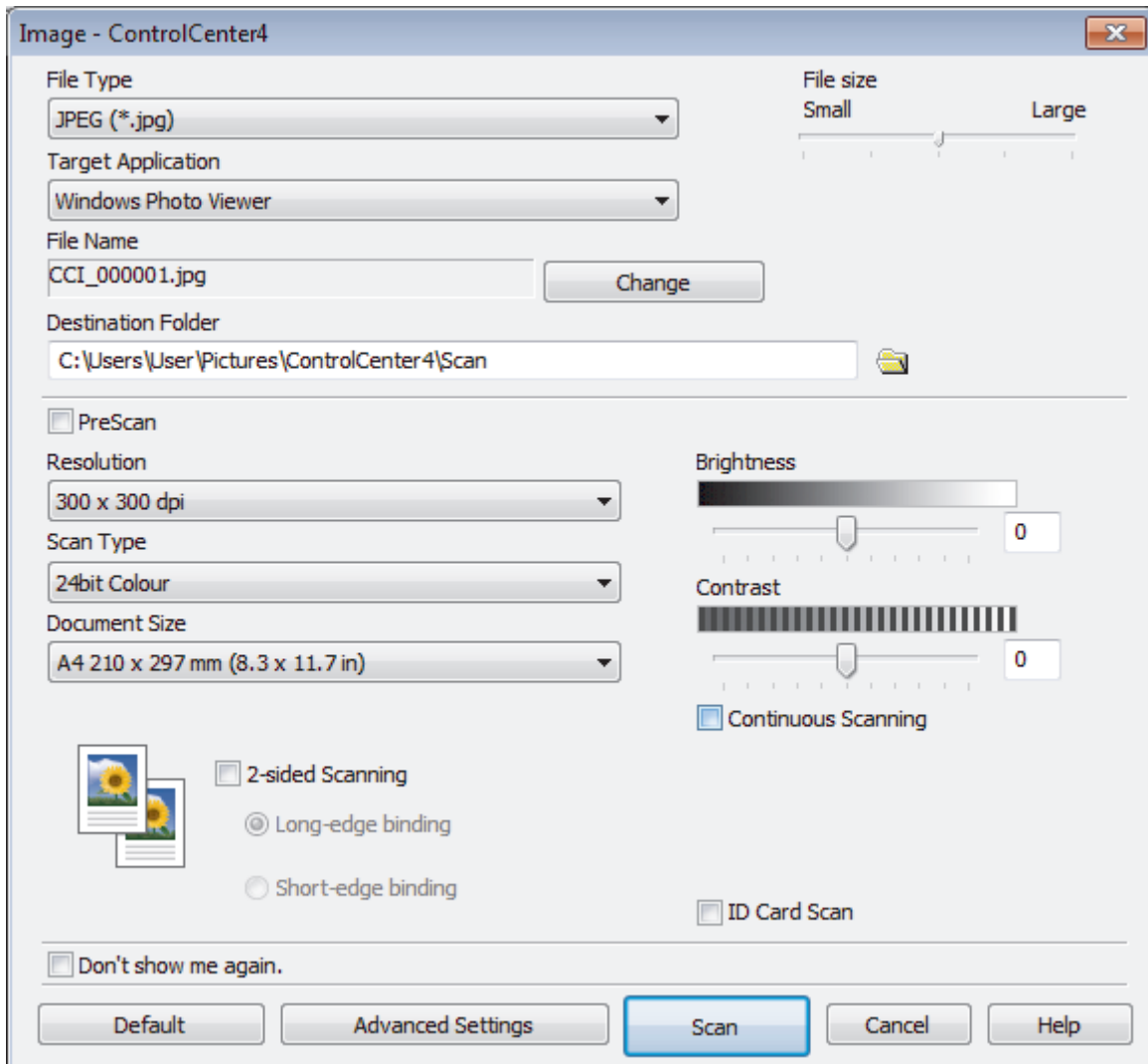


Select **Advanced Mode** as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

1. Load your document.
2. Click the  (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
3. Click the **Scan** tab.



4. Click the **Image** button.
The scan settings dialog box appears.



5. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, destination file path, resolution and colour, if needed.



- To change the file name, click **Change**.
- To change **Destination Folder**, click the folder icon.
- To preview and configure the scanned image, select the **PreScan** check box.

6. Click **Scan**.

The machine starts scanning. The image opens in the application you have selected.

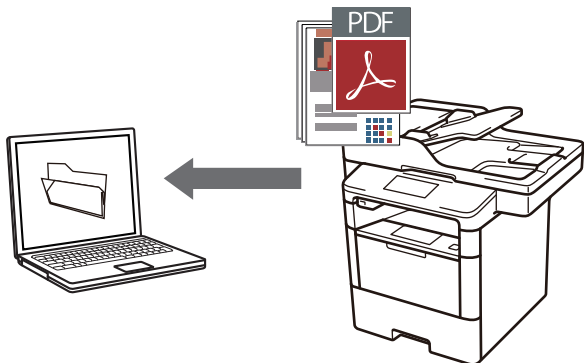


Related Information


- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)

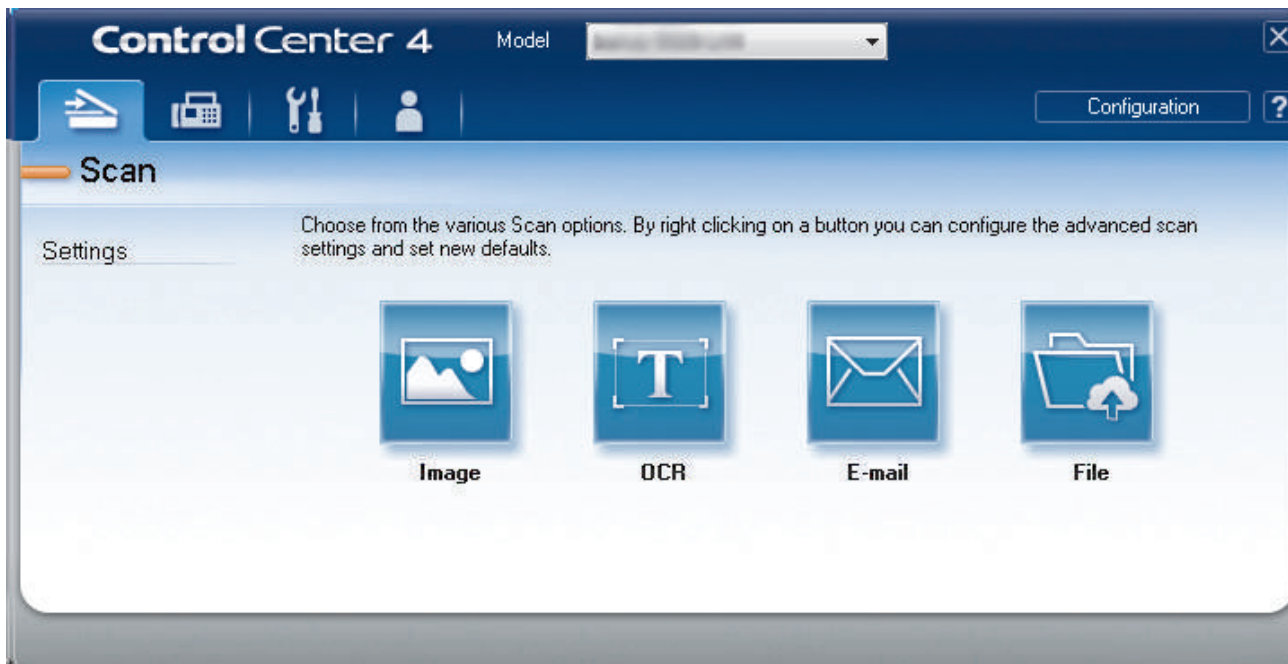
Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

Scan documents and save them to a folder on your computer as PDF files.



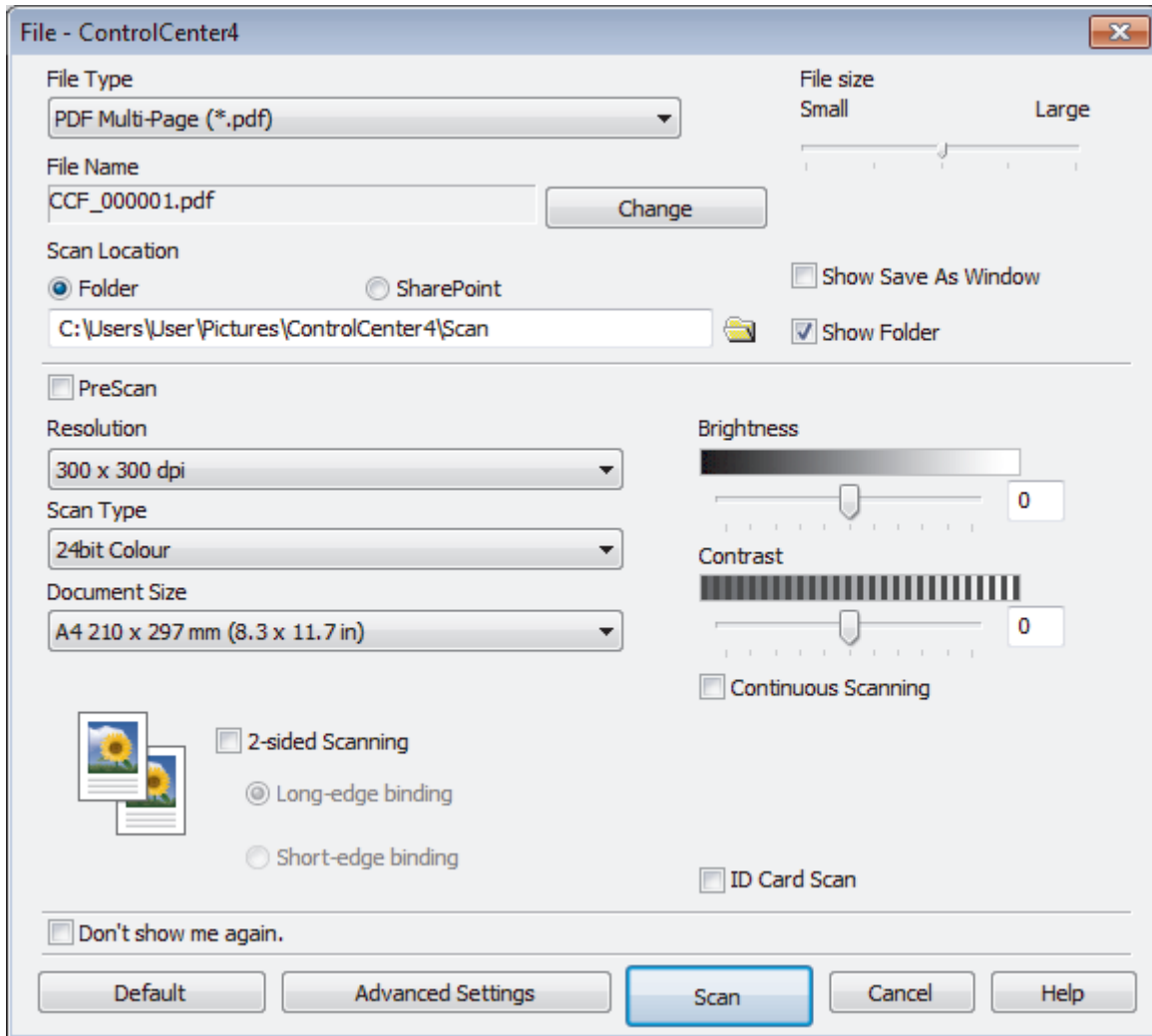
Select **Advanced Mode** as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

1. Load your document.
2. Click the  (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
3. Click the **Scan** tab.




4. Click the **File** button.

The scan settings dialog box appears.



5. Click the **File Type** drop-down list, and then select a PDF file.



To save the document as a password-protected PDF, select **Secure PDF Single-Page (*.pdf)** or **Secure PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)** from the **File Type** drop-down list, click , and then type the password..

6. Click the folder icon to browse and select the folder where you want to save your scanned documents.
7. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, resolution and colour, if needed.



To preview and configure the scanned image, select the **PreScan** check box.

8. Click **Scan**.

The machine starts scanning. The file is saved in the folder you selected.



Related Information

- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)

Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)


Related Models: bizhub 5020i

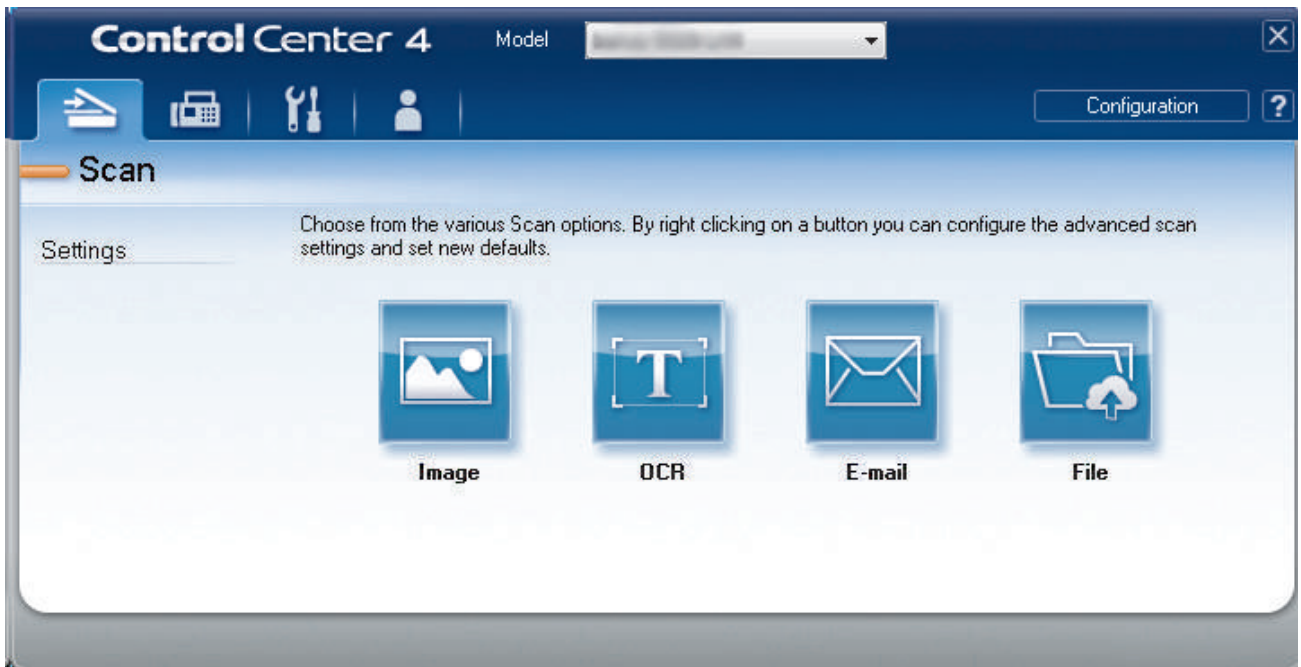
Select **Advanced Mode** as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

1. Load documents in the ADF.





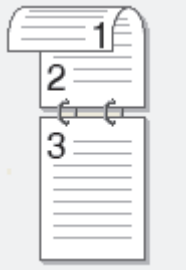

To scan both sides of a document automatically, you must use the ADF, not the flatbed scanner glass.

2. Click the  (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
3. Click the **Scan** tab.



4. Click the button for the setting you want to change (**Image**, **OCR**, **E-mail**, or **File**). The scan settings dialog box appears.
5. Select the **2-sided Scanning** check box.
6. Select the **Long-edge binding** or **Short-edge binding** option, depending on the Original layout (see table for layout examples).

2-sided Scan setting	Original layout	Scan Result
Long-edge binding		

2-sided Scan setting	Original layout	Scan Result
Short-edge binding		

- Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, destination file path, resolution and colour, if needed.



- To change the file name, click **Change**.
- To change **Destination Folder**, click the folder icon.

- Click **Scan**.

The machine starts scanning.

You have now changed the default settings for your selected Scan to action. These settings will be used the next time one of the scan options (**Image**, **OCR**, **E-mail**, or **File**) is selected for this action.




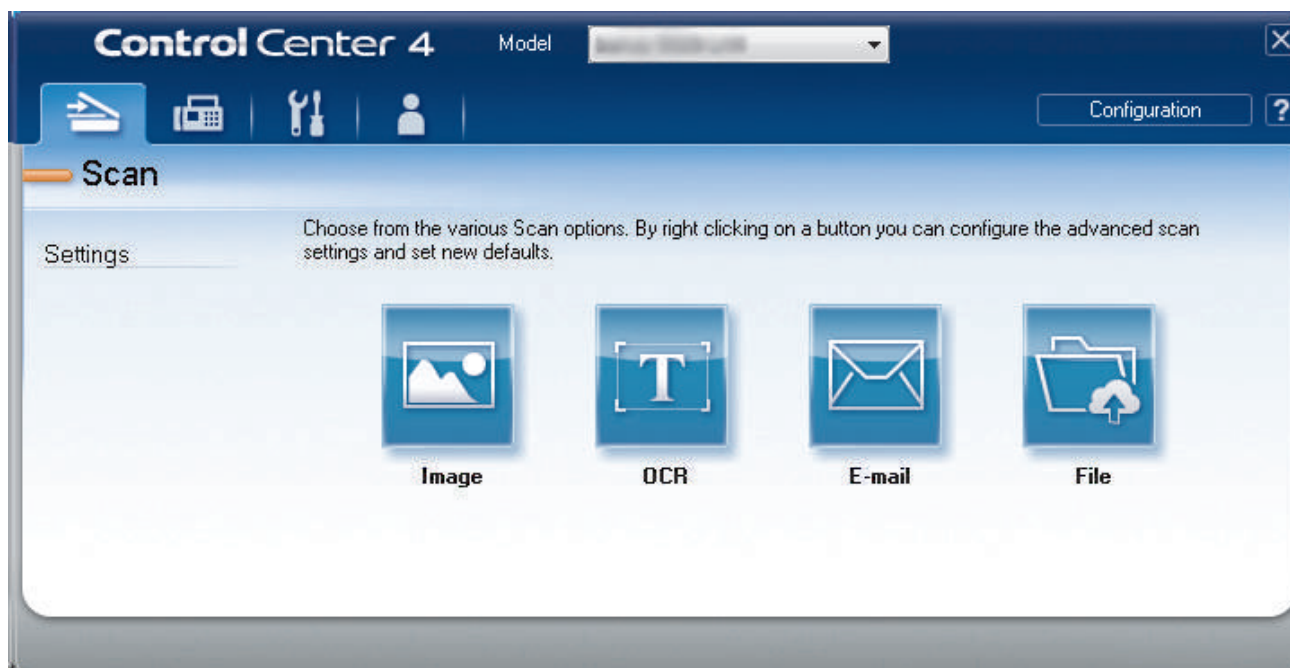
Related Information

- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)

Scan Both Sides of an ID Card Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

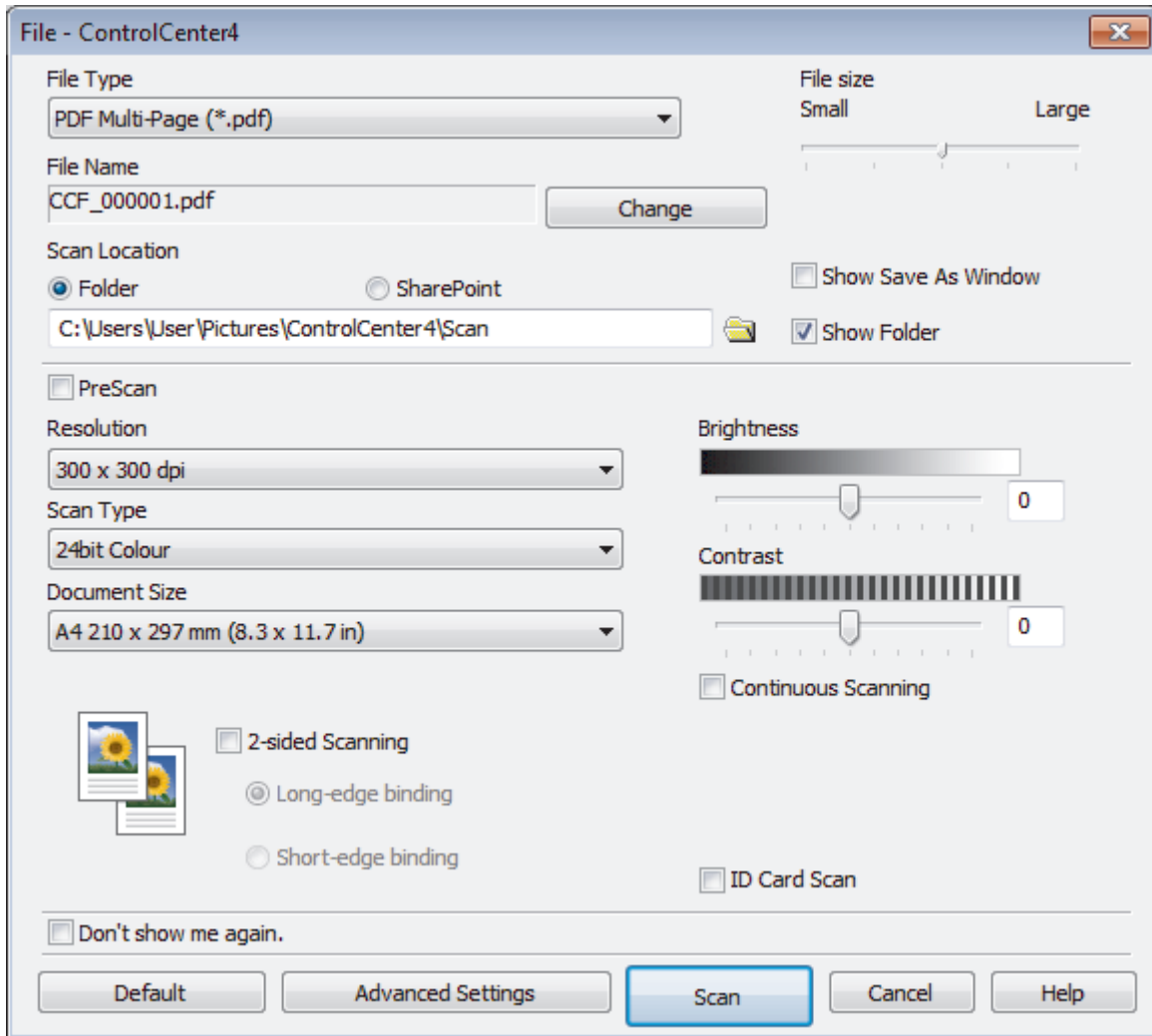
Select **Advanced Mode** as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

1. Place an ID card on the scanner glass.
2. Click the  (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
3. Click the **Scan** tab.



4. Click the **File** button.

The scan settings dialog box appears.



5. Select the **ID Card Scan** check box.

The instruction dialog box appears.

6. Read the instructions on the screen, and then press **OK**.
7. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, scan location, resolution and colour, if needed.
8. Click **Scan**.

The machine starts scanning one side of the identification card.

9. After the machine has scanned one side, turn over the identification card, and then click **Continue** to scan the other side.
10. Click **Finish**.

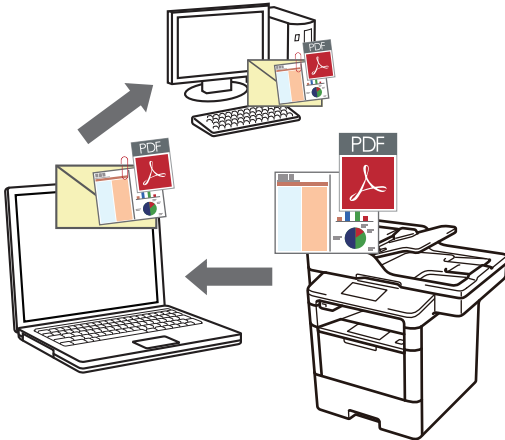


Related Information

- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)

Scan to Email Attachment Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)


Send a scanned document as an email attachment.

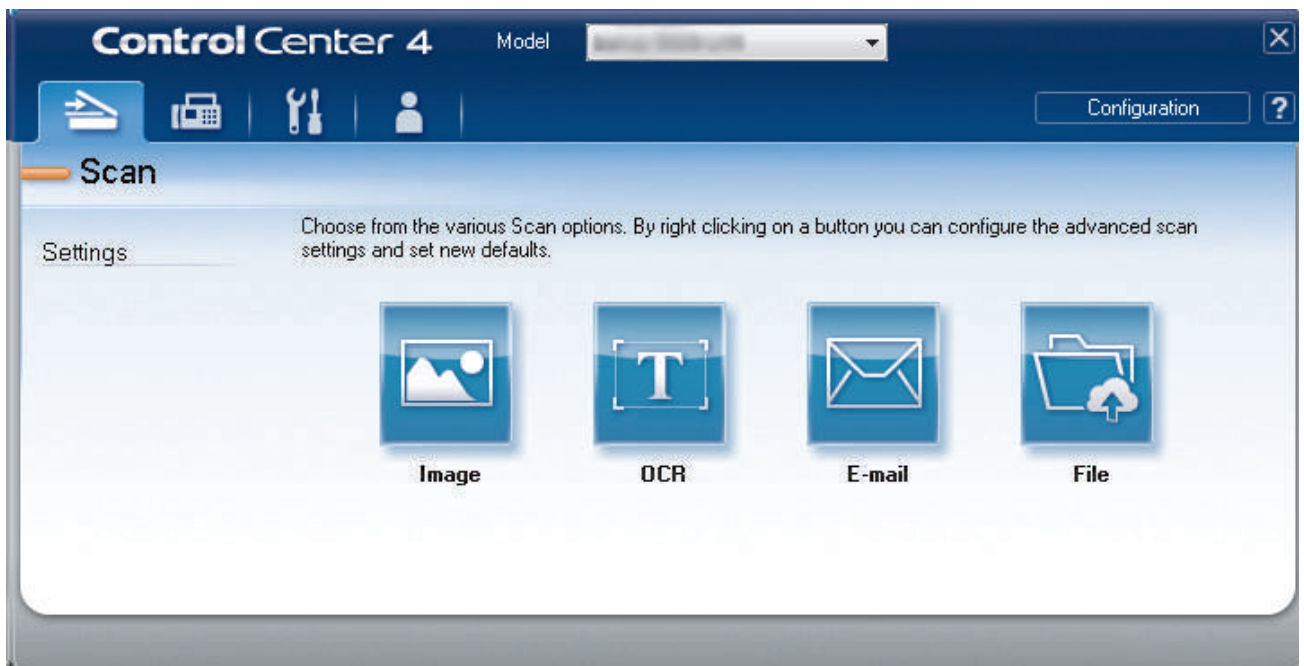


- Select **Advanced Mode** as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.
- The Scan to Email feature does not support Webmail services. Use the Scan to Image or Scan to File feature to scan a document or a picture, and then attach the scanned file to an email message.

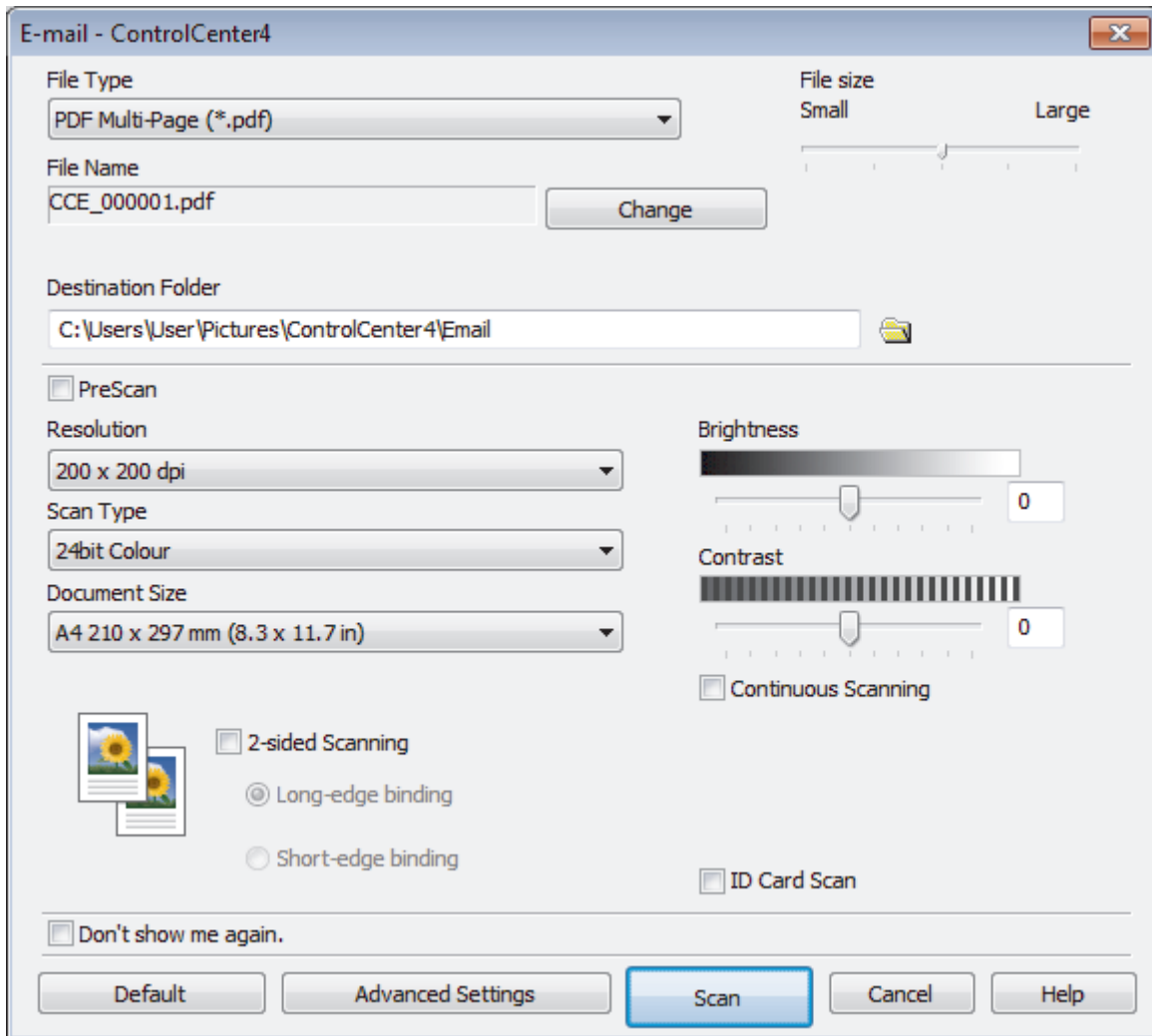


The machine scans to your default email client.

1. Load your document.
2. Click the  (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
3. Click the **Scan** tab.



4. Click the **E-mail** button.
The scan settings dialog box appears.



5. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, destination file path, resolution and colour, if needed.



- To change the file name, click **Change**.
- To change **Destination Folder**, click the folder icon.
- To preview and configure the scanned image, select the **PreScan** check box.

6. Click **Scan**.

The machine starts scanning. Your default email application opens and the scanned image is attached to a new, blank email message.

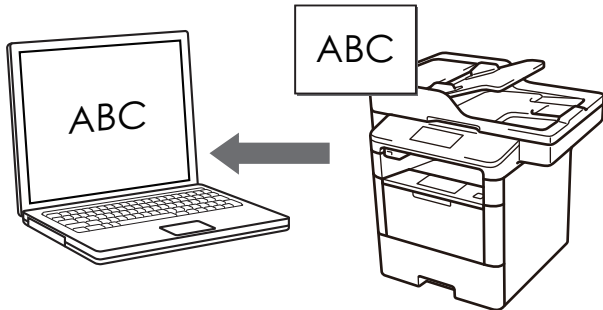


Related Information


- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)

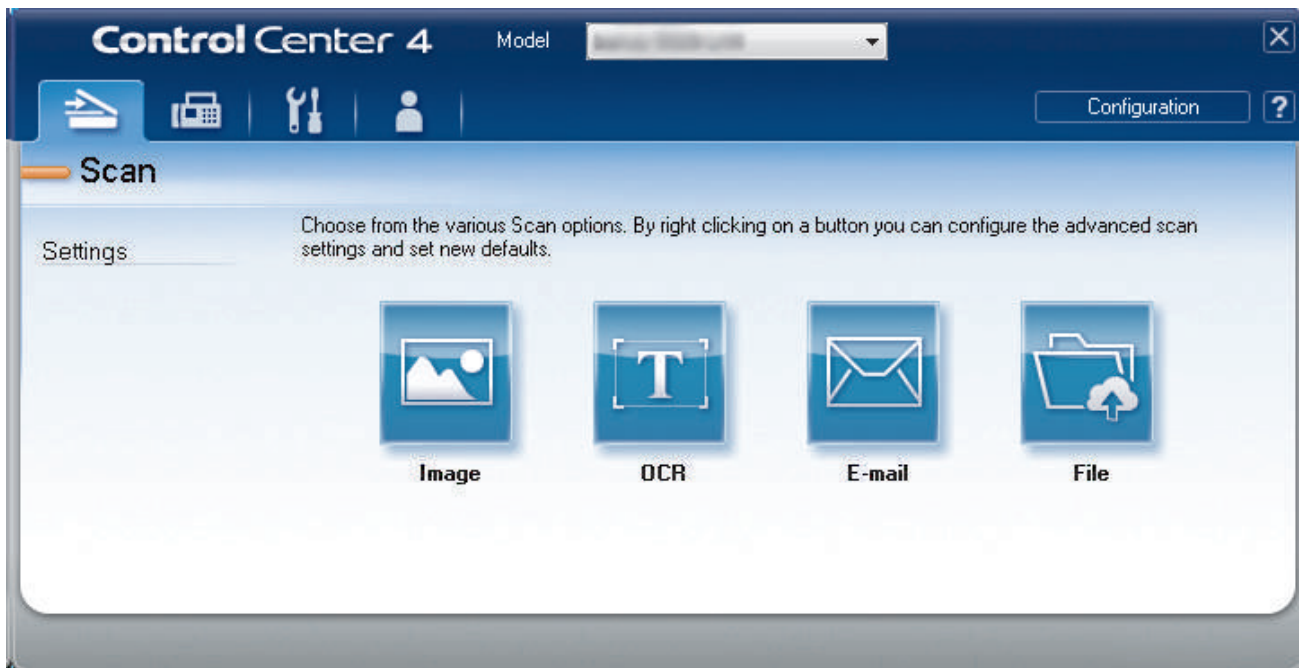
Scan to an Editable Text File (OCR) Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

Your machine can convert characters in a scanned document to text using optical character recognition (OCR) technology. You can edit this text using your preferred text-editing application.

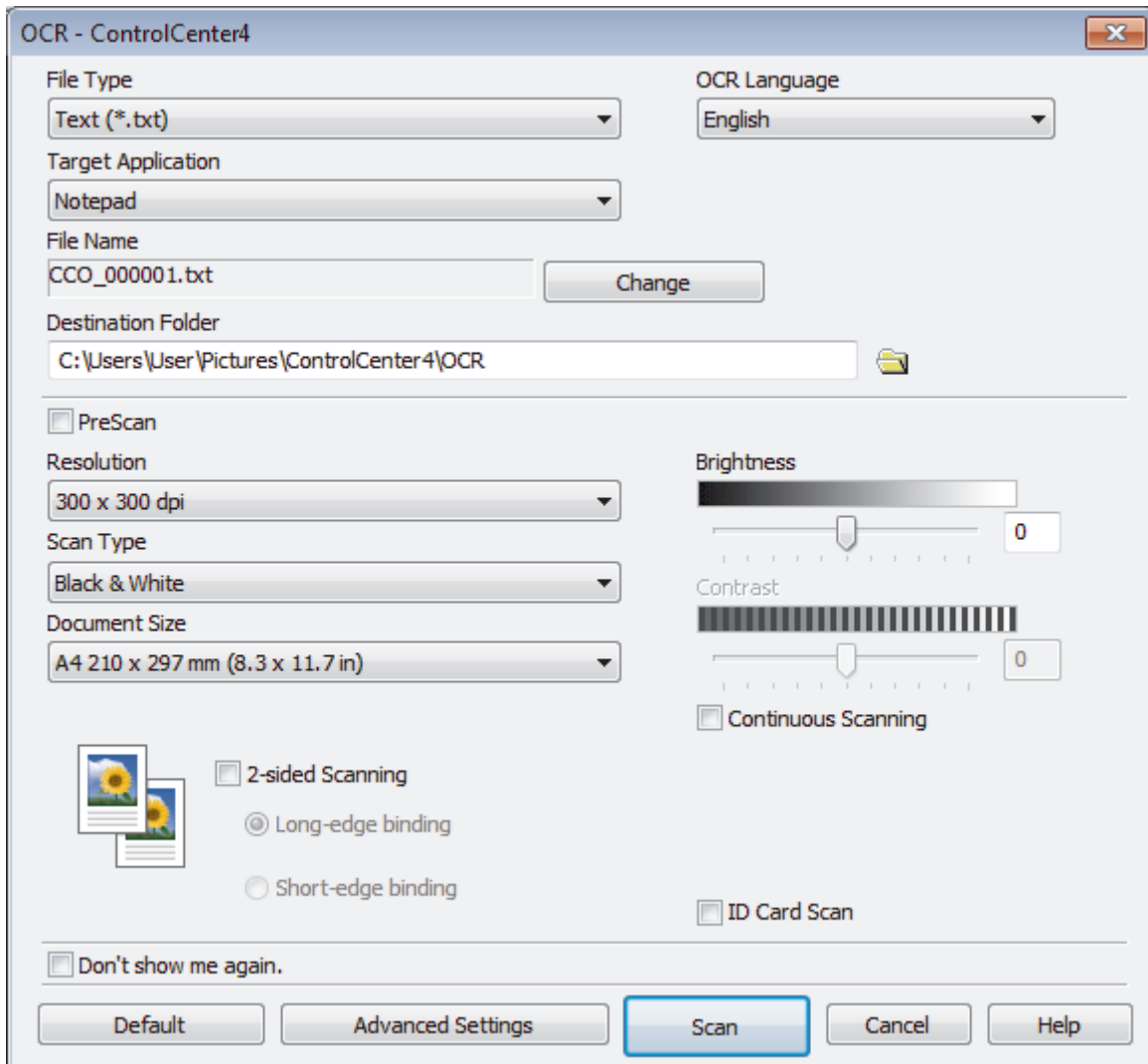


- Select **Advanced Mode** as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

1. Load your document.
2. Click the  (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
3. Click the **Scan** tab.



4. Click the **OCR** button.
The scan settings dialog box appears.



5. Change the scan settings, such as file format, file name, destination file path, resolution and colour, if needed.



- To change the file name, click **Change**.
- To change **Destination Folder**, click the folder icon.
- To preview and configure the scanned image, select the **PreScan** check box.

6. Click **Scan**.

The machine scans the document, converts it to editable text, and then sends it to your default word processing application.



Related Information

- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)

Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

Settings	Applicable Features			
	Image	OCR	E-mail	File
File Type	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Target Application	Yes	Yes	-	-
OCR Language	-	Yes	-	-
File Name	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scan Location or Destination Folder	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Show Folder	-	-	-	Yes
Show Save As Window	-	-	-	Yes
File size	Yes	-	Yes	Yes
PreScan	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Resolution	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scan Type	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Document Size	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Brightness	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Contrast	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Continuous Scanning	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
2-sided Scanning	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
ID Card Scan	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Advanced Settings	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Default	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

File Type

Select the file type you want to use for the scanned data.

For Image, Email and File

- **Windows Bitmap (*.bmp)**
- **JPEG (*.jpg)** (recommended for most users when scanning pictures)
- **TIFF Single-Page (*.tif)**
- **TIFF Multi-Page (*.tif)**
- **Portable Network Graphics (*.png)**
- **PDF Single-Page (*.pdf)** (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- **PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)** (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- **PDF/A Single-Page (*.pdf)** (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- **PDF/A Multi-Page (*.pdf)** (recommended for scanning and sharing documents)
- **High Compression PDF Single-Page (*.pdf)**
- **High Compression PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)**
- **Secure PDF Single-Page (*.pdf)**
- **Secure PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)**
- **Searchable PDF Single-Page (*.pdf)**
- **Searchable PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)**

-
- **XML Paper Specification (*.xps)** (the XML Paper Specification is available for Windows 7, Windows 8.1 and Windows 10, and when using applications that support XML Paper Specification files)
 - **Microsoft Office Word (*.docx)** (Available only for certain models)
 - **Microsoft Office PowerPoint (*.pptx)** (Available only for certain models)

For OCR

- **HTML 3.2 (*.htm)**
- **HTML 4.0 (*.htm)**
- **Microsoft Excel 2003, XP (*.xls)**
- **RTF Word 2000 (*.rtf)**
- **WordPad (*.rtf)**
- **WordPerfect 9, 10 (*.wpd)**
- **Text (*.txt)**
- **Searchable PDF Single-Page (*.pdf)**
- **Searchable PDF Multi-Page (*.pdf)**

Target Application

Select the destination application from the drop-down list.

OCR Language

Set the OCR language to match the language of the scanned document's text.

File Name

Click **Change** to change the file name's prefix.

Scan Location

Select the **Folder** or **SharePoint** button to specify the destination where you would like to save your scanned documents.

Destination Folder

Click the folder icon to browse and select the folder where you want to save your scanned documents.

Show Folder

Select this option to automatically display the destination folder after scanning.

Show Save As Window

Select this option if you want to specify the scanned image's destination every time you scan.

File size

Adjust the data compression ratio of the scanned image. Change the file size by moving the **File size** slider to the right or left.

PreScan

Select **PreScan** to preview your image and crop unwanted portions before scanning.

Resolution

Select a scanning resolution from the **Resolution** drop-down list. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.

Scan Type

Select from a range of scan colour depths.

- **Auto**
Use for any type of document. This mode automatically picks an appropriate colour depth for the document.
- **Black & White**
Use for text or line art images.

- **Grey (Error Diffusion)**

Use for photographic images or graphics. (Error Diffusion is a method for creating simulated grey images without using true grey dots. Black dots are put in a specific pattern to give a grey appearance.)

- **True Grey**

Use for photographic images or graphics. This mode is more accurate because it uses up to 256 shades of grey.

- **24bit Colour**

Use to create an image with the most accurate colour reproduction. This mode uses up to 16.8 million colours to scan the image, but it requires the most memory and has the longest transfer time.

Document Size

Select the exact size of your document from the **Document Size** drop-down list.

- If you select **1 to 2 (A4)**, the scanned image will be divided into two A5-size documents.

Brightness

Set the **Brightness** level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness level and scan the document again. You can also type a value into the field to set the **Brightness** level.

Contrast

Increase or decrease the **Contrast** level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasises dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas. You can also type a value into the field to set the **Contrast** level.

Continuous Scanning

Select this option to scan multiple pages from the scanner glass or ADF (Available only for certain models). After a page is scanned, select either continue scanning or finish. Use this method to scan more pages than the maximum ADF capacity.

2-sided Scanning

Select this check box to scan both sides of the document. When using the Automatic 2-sided Scan feature, you must select the **Long-edge binding** or **Short-edge binding** option, depending on the layout of your original, to make sure the data file you create appears correctly.

(bizhub 5020i)

ID Card Scan

Select this check box to scan both sides of an identification card onto one page.

Advanced Settings

Configure advanced settings by clicking the **Advanced Settings** button in the Scan Settings dialog box.

- **Remove Background Colour**

Remove the base colour of documents to make the scanned data more legible. Choose from three settings: high, medium, and low.

(available only for the **Auto**, **True Grey** and **24bit Colour** options)

- **Skip Blank Page**

Remove the document's blank pages from the scanning results.

- **Display Scanning Results**

Show the numbers of total pages saved and blank pages skipped on your computer screen.

- **ADF Auto Deskew**

When scanning the document from the ADF, the machine corrects skewing of the document automatically.

Default

Select this option to restore all settings to their factory setting values.



Related Information

- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
-

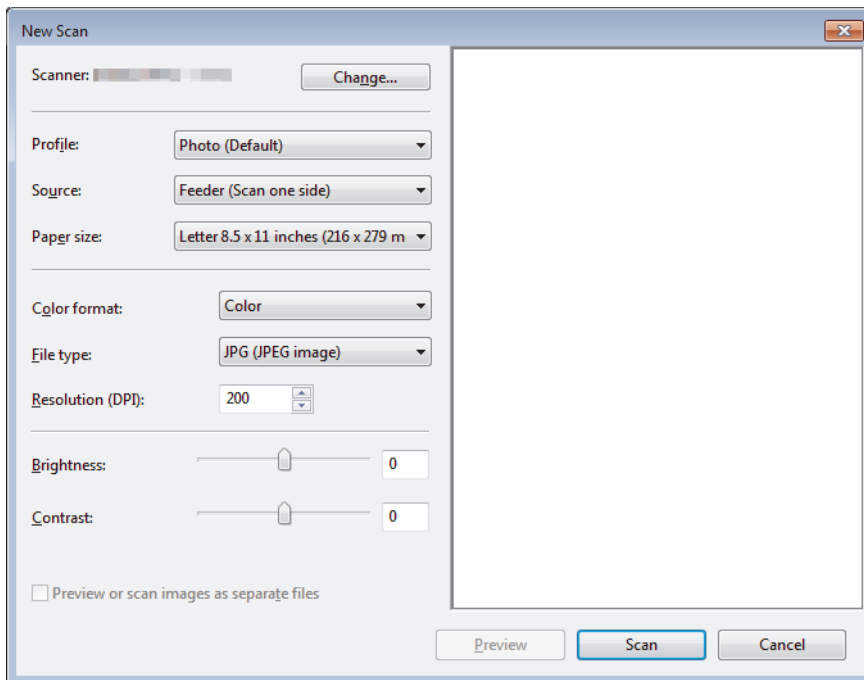
Scan Using Windows Photo Gallery or Windows Fax and Scan

Windows Photo Gallery or Windows Fax and Scan applications are other options that you can use for scanning.

- These applications use the WIA scanner driver.
- If you want to crop a portion of a page after pre-scanning the document, you must scan using the scanner glass (also called the flatbed).

1. Load your document.
2. Launch your scanning application. Do one of the following:
 - (Windows Photo Gallery)
Click **File > Import from Camera or Scanner**.
 - (Windows Fax and Scan)
Click **New Scan**.
3. Select the scanner you want to use.
4. Click **Import** or **OK**.

The **New Scan** dialog box appears.



5. Adjust the settings in the Scanner Setup dialog box, if needed.

The scanner resolution can be set to a maximum of 1200 dpi. If you want to scan at higher resolutions, use the **Scanner Utility** software of **KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.

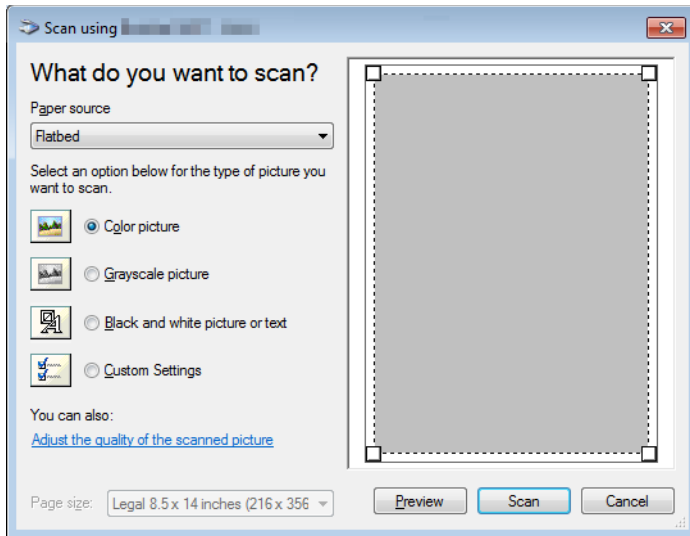
If your machine supports 2-sided Scan and you want to scan both sides of your document, select **Feeder (Scan both sides)** as **Source**.
6. Click **Scan**.

The machine starts scanning the document.

✓ Related Information

- [Scan from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
 - [WIA Driver Settings \(Windows\)](#)

WIA Driver Settings (Windows)



Paper source

Select the **Document Feeder** or **Flatbed** option from the drop-down list.

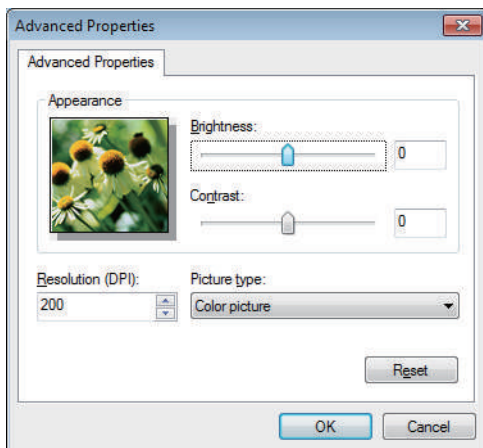
Picture Type (Image Type)

Select **Color picture**, **Grayscale picture**, **Black and white picture or text**, or **Custom Settings** for the type of document you want to scan.

To change advanced settings, click the **Adjust the quality of the scanned picture** link.

Page size

The **Page size** option is available if you select the **Document Feeder** as the **Paper source** option.



Brightness

Set the **Brightness** level by dragging the slider to the right or left to lighten or darken the image. If the scanned image is too light, set a lower brightness level and scan the document again. If the image is too dark, set a higher brightness level and scan the document again.

Contrast

Increase or decrease the **Contrast** level by moving the slider to the right or left. An increase emphasises dark and light areas of the image, while a decrease reveals more details in grey areas. You can also type a value in the field to set the contrast level.

Resolution (DPI)

Select a scanning resolution from the **Resolution (DPI)** list. Higher resolutions take more memory and transfer time, but produce a finer scanned image.



Related Information

- [Scan Using Windows Photo Gallery or Windows Fax and Scan](#)
-

Scan from Your Computer (Mac)

There is one way you can use your Mac to scan photos and documents on your machine. Use the software application provided by our company.

- [Scan Using iPrint&Scan \(Mac\)](#)

Scan Using iPrint&Scan (Mac)

iPrint&Scan for Mac provides access to printing, scanning and workflow functionality.

1. Open **iPrint&Scan**:
 - Browse to **Go > Applications > KONICA MINOLTA > iPrint&Scan**.
2. The program will search for your machine.





If your machine is not automatically found, make sure that it is turned on and connected either to the computer or network (depending on your machine's specifications). You may click **Select your Machine** to search again. Select the **USB** tab or **Network** tab depending on how your machine is connected.

3. Load your document.
4. Click **Scan**.
5. Configure the desired scan settings. Click **All Settings** for additional settings.



The available settings will vary depending on your machine's specifications.

6. Click **Scan**.
7. Once the scan is complete, the results will appear.
 - Click **Add Pages**, if you want to scan additional pages, and follow the instructions.
 - You can use   to change the display size of the scanned thumbnails.
8. Under **Save/Share**, select where you want to save the scanned data.
Follow the on-screen instructions to configure the settings.



Related Information

- [Scan from Your Computer \(Mac\)](#)

Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management


- [Set the Scan Job Email Report Using Web Based Management](#)

Set the Scan Job Email Report Using Web Based Management

When you scan a document, the machine will send a scan job email report automatically to the registered email address.

1. Start your web browser.

Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the IP address of the machine or the print server name). For example: http://192.168.1.2

Type a password if you have set one, and then press . The default password is initpass.

2. Click the **Scan** tab.
3. Click the **Scan Job e-mail report** menu in the left navigation bar.
4. In the **Administrator Address** field, type the email address.
5. For the scan functions you want, select **On** to send a scan job email report.
6. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

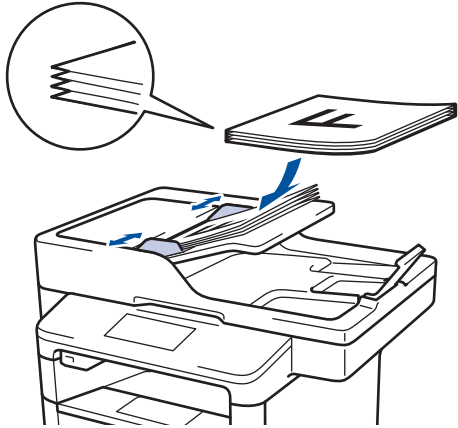
- [Configure Scan Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Copy

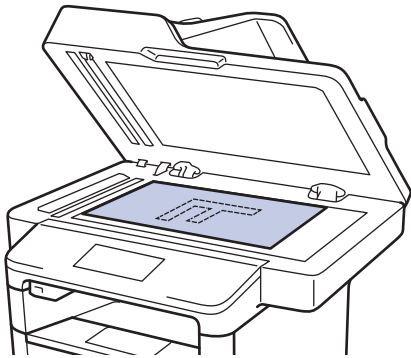
- [Copy a Document](#)
- [Enlarge or Reduce Copied Images](#)
- [Make N in 1 Copies Using the Page Layout Feature](#)
- [Sort Copies](#)
- [Copy an ID Card](#)
- [Copy on Both Sides of the Paper \(2-sided Copy\)](#)
- [Copy Options](#)

Copy a Document

1. Make sure you have loaded the correct size paper in the paper tray.
2. Do one of the following:
 - Place the document *face up* in the ADF.
(If you are copying multiple pages, we recommend using the ADF.)

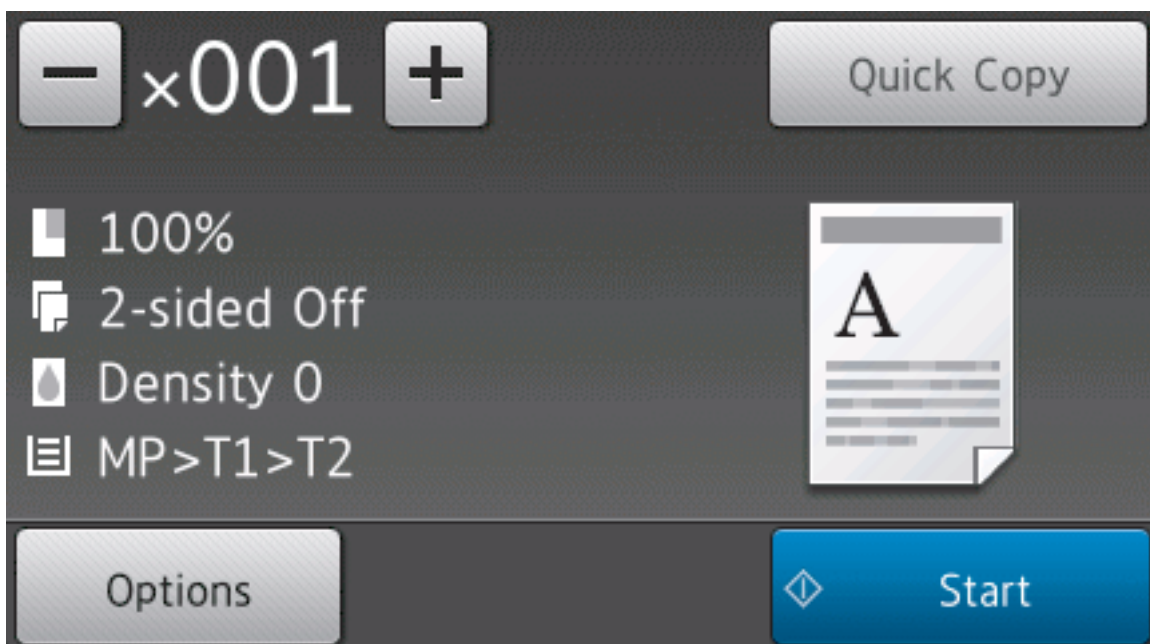



- Place the document *face down* on the scanner glass.





3. Press  [Copy].

The LCD displays:



4. Change the copy settings, if needed.
 -  (Number of copies)

Enter the number of copies in one of the following ways:


- Press  or  on the LCD.
- Press the numbers on the control panel.

- [Options]

Press  to change the copy settings for the next copy only.





- When finished, press [OK].
- After you have finished choosing new options, you can save them by pressing the [Save as Shortcut] button.

- [Quick Copy]

Press  to access the preset copy settings.

- Current setting indications

Press the following icons to change these settings for the next copy only.

-  [Enlarge/Reduce]
-  [2-sided Copy]
-  [Density]
-  [Tray Use]

5. Press [Start].



To stop copying, press .

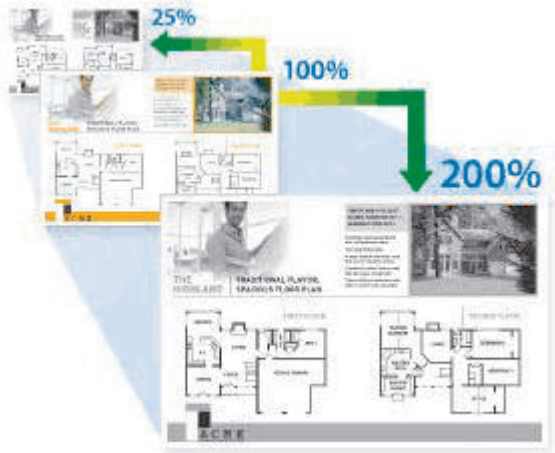





Related Information

- [Copy](#)
-

Enlarge or Reduce Copied Images

Select an enlargement or reduction ratio to resize your copied data.



1. Load your document.
 2. Press  [Copy].
 3. Enter the number of copies.
 4. Press [Options] > [Enlarge/Reduce].
 5. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the available options, and then press the option you want.
 6. Do one of the following:
 - If you select [Enlarge] or [Reduce], press the enlargement or reduction ratio you want to use.
 - If you select [Custom (25-400%)], press  (backspace) to erase the displayed percentage, or press ◀ to move the cursor, and then enter an enlargement or reduction ratio from [25] to [400]. Press [OK].
 - If you selected [100%] or [Auto], go to the next step.
-
-  • [Auto] sets the machine to calculate the reduction ratio that best fits the size of paper.
- [Auto] is only available when using the ADF.
-
7. When finished, press [OK].
 8. Press [Start].

Related Information

- [Copy](#)

Make N in 1 Copies Using the Page Layout Feature

The N in 1 copy feature saves paper by copying two or four pages of your document onto one page of the copy.



If you are copying from the ADF, insert the documents face up in the direction as shown below:

- 2 in 1 (Portrait)
 - ◀ →
- 2 in 1 (Landscape)
 - ◀ →
- 4 in 1 (Portrait)
 - ◀ →
- 4 in 1 (Landscape)
 - ◀ →

If you are copying from the scanner glass, place the document face down in the direction as shown below:

- 2 in 1 (Portrait)
 - ◀ →
- 2 in 1 (Landscape)
 - ◀ →
- 4 in 1 (Portrait)
 - ◀ →
- 4 in 1 (Landscape)
 - ◀ →

1. Load your document.
2. Press [Copy].

-
3. Enter the number of copies.
 4. Press [Options] > [Page Layout].
 5. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [2in1 (Portrait)], [2in1 (Landscape)], [4in1 (Portrait)] or [4in1 (Landscape)] option, and then press the option you want.
 6. When finished, press [OK].
 7. Press [Start].

If you placed the document in the ADF, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.

8. **If you are using the scanner glass, repeat the following steps for each page of the document:**
 - Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the page.
 - After scanning all the pages, press [Finish].




Related Information

- [Copy](#)
-

Sort Copies

Sort multiple copies. Pages will be stacked in the order they are fed, that is: 1, 2, 3, and so on.

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Copy].
3. Enter the number of copies.
4. Press [Options] > [Stack/Sort] > [Sort].
5. When finished, press [OK].
6. Press [Start].

If you placed the document in the ADF, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.

7. **If you are using the scanner glass, repeat the following steps for each page of the document:**
 - Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the page.
 - After scanning all the pages, press [Finish].

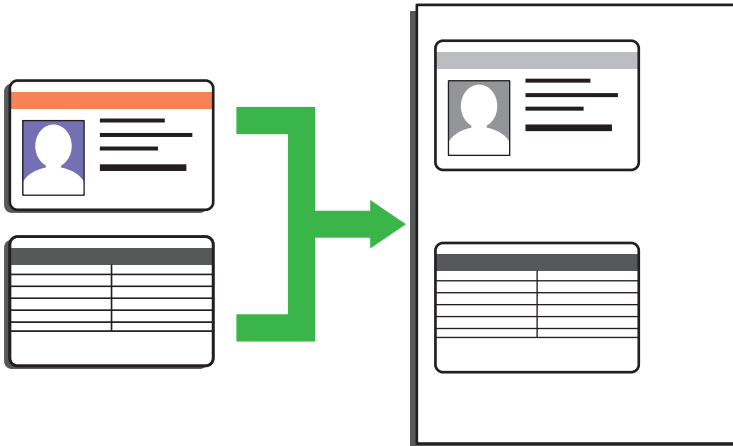


Related Information

- [Copy](#)

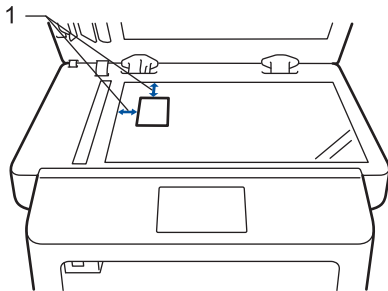
Copy an ID Card

Use the [2 in 1 ID Copy] feature to copy both sides of an identification card onto one page, keeping the original card size.



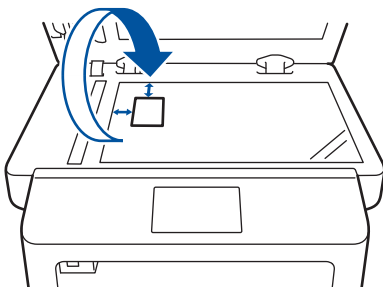
- You may copy an identification card only to the extent permitted under applicable laws. For more detailed information, see the Safety Information.

- Place your identification card *face down* near the upper left corner of the scanner glass.



1: Distance 4.0 mm or greater (top, left)

- Swipe left or right or press ◀ or ▶ to display the [2 in 1 ID Copy] option, and then press [2 in 1 ID Copy].
- Enter the number of copies.
- Press [Start].
The machine scans one side of the identification card.
- After the machine has scanned the first side, turn over the identification card.



- Press [Continue] to scan the other side.

✓ Related Information

- [Copy](#)

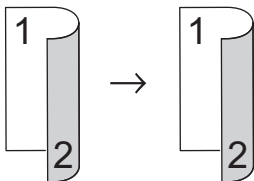
Copy on Both Sides of the Paper (2-sided Copy)

Reduce the amount of paper you use by copying onto both sides of the paper.

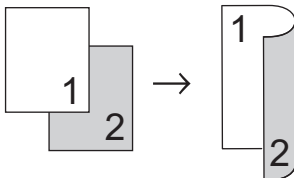
- You must choose a 2-sided copy layout from the following options before you can start 2-sided copying.
- The layout of your original document determines which 2-sided copy layout you should choose.
- To use the automatic 2-sided copy feature, you must load your document in the ADF.
- When you manually make 2 sided copies from a 2-sided document, use the scanner glass.

Portrait

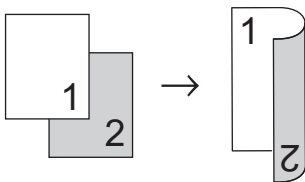
2-sided to 2-sided



1-sided to 2-sided (Long Edge Flip)

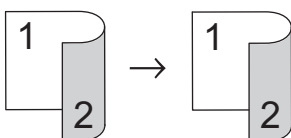


1-sided to 2-sided (Short Edge Flip)

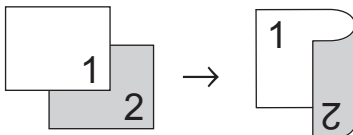


Landscape

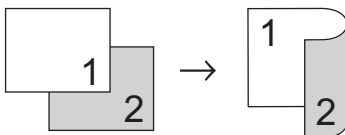
2-sided to 2-sided




1-sided to 2-sided (Long Edge Flip)



1-sided to 2-sided (Short Edge Flip)



1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Copy].
3. Enter the number of copies.
4. Press [Options] > [2-sided Copy].
5. Do one of the following:

-
- (bizhub 5020i)
To make 2-sided copies of a 2-sided document automatically, press [2-sided⇒2-sided].



Load your document in the ADF to use the automatic 2-sided copy feature.

- (bizhub 4020i)
To make 2-sided copies of a 2-sided document manually, press [2-sided⇒2-sided].



Use the scanner glass to make 2-sided copies of a 2-sided document manually.

- To make 2-sided copies from a 1-sided document, follow these steps:
 - a. To change the layout options, press [Layout], and then press [Long Edge Flip] or [Short Edge Flip].
 - b. Press [1-sided⇒2-sided].

6. When finished, press [OK].

7. Press [Start].

If you placed the document in the ADF, the machine scans the pages and starts printing.

8. **If you are using the scanner glass, repeat the following steps for each page of the document:**



-
- For a 2-sided document, turn the sheet over along the long edge to scan the other side.
-
- Place the next page on the scanner glass, and then press [Continue] to scan the page.
 - After scanning all the pages, press [Finish].

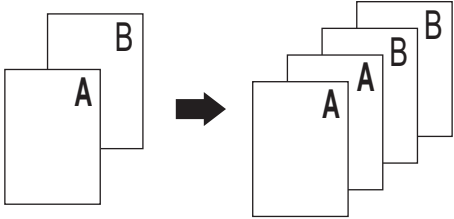
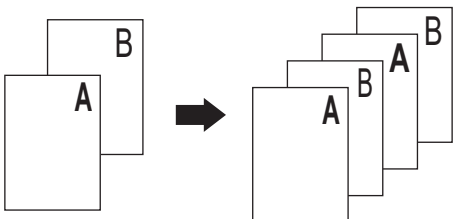



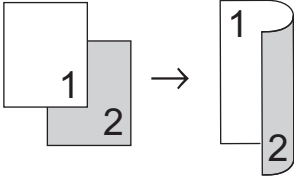
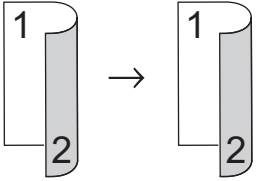
Related Information

- [Copy](#)
-

Copy Options

To change Copy settings, press [Options].

Menu selections	Options	
Quality	Select the copy quality for your type of document.	
Enlarge/Reduce	100%	-
	Enlarge	Select an enlargement ratio for the next copy.
	Reduce	Select a reduction ratio for the next copy.
	Auto	Adjusts the copy size to fit on the paper size you have set.
	Custom (25-400%)	Enter an enlargement or reduction ratio.
Density	Increase the density to make the text darker. Decrease the density to make the text lighter.	
Contrast	Increase the contrast to make an image clearer. Decrease the contrast to make an image more subdued.	
Stack/Sort	Select to stack or sort multiple copies. Stack  Sort 	
Page Layout	Make N in 1 or 2 in 1 ID copies. 4 in 1 	

Menu selections	Options
2-sided Copy	<p>Select to copy on both sides of the paper.</p> <p>1-sided → 2-sided</p>  <p>2-sided → 2-sided</p>  <p>The available options will vary depending on your model.</p>
2-sided Copy Page Layout (available only for bizhub 5020i)	Select long edge binding or short edge binding.
Tray Use	Select a paper tray for the next copy.
Save as Shortcut	Add the current settings as a shortcut.



Related Information

- [Copy](#)

Fax

- [Send a Fax](#)
- [Receive a Fax](#)
- [Voice Operations and Fax Numbers](#)
- [Telephone Services and External Devices](#)
- [Fax Reports](#)
- [PC-FAX](#)

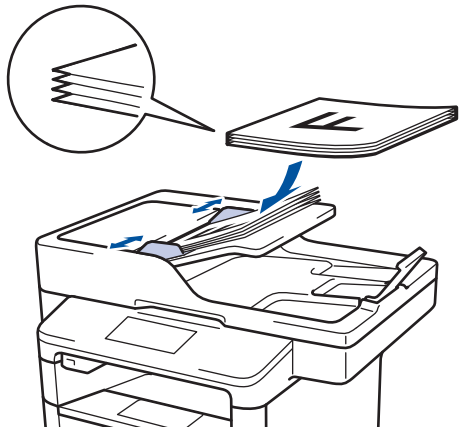
Send a Fax

- [Send a Fax](#)
- [Send a 2-sided Fax from the ADF](#)
- [Send a Fax Manually](#)
- [Send a Fax at the End of a Conversation](#)
- [Send the Same Fax to More than One Recipient \(Broadcasting\)](#)
- [Send a Fax in Real Time](#)
- [Send a Fax at a Specified Time \(Delayed Fax\)](#)
- [Add a Cover Page to Your Fax](#)
- [Cancel a Fax in Progress](#)
- [Check and Cancel a Pending Fax](#)
- [Fax Options](#)

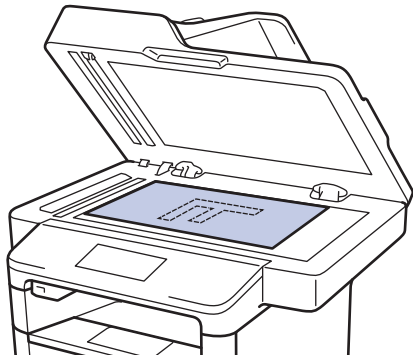
Send a Fax

1. Do one of the following:

- Place the document *face up* in the ADF.
(If you are faxing multiple pages, we recommend using the ADF.)



- Place the document *face down* on the scanner glass.

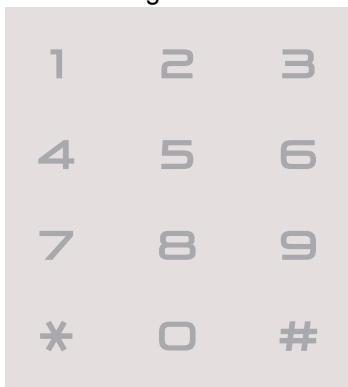


2. Press  [Fax].


3. Enter the fax number.


- Using the dial pad**

Press the digits to enter the fax number.




- Using the Address Book**

Press  [Address Book], and then do one of the following:

- Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the number you want, and then press it.
- Press  [Search:], and then enter the name and press [OK]. Press the name you want to dial.

When finished, press [Apply].

- Using the call history**

Press  [Call History], and then press the [Outgoing Call] option.

Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the fax number you want, and then press it.

To send a fax, press [Apply].

4. Press [Fax Start].

The machine scans and sends the document.

If you placed the document on the scanner glass, follow the instructions in the table.

Option	Description
Yes	To scan the next page, press the Yes option, and then place the next page on the scanner glass. Press OK to scan the page.
No	After you have scanned the last page, press the No option. The machine sends the document.

To stop faxing, press , and then press .


Related Information

- [Send a Fax](#)
-

Send a 2-sided Fax from the ADF

Related Models: bizhub 5020i

You must select a 2-sided scanning format before sending a 2-sided fax. Select either Long Edge or Short Edge, depending on the layout of your document.

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Fax] > [Options] > [2-sided Fax].
3. Do one of the following:
 - If your document is flipped on the Long edge, press the [2-sided Scan: Long Edge] option.
 - If your document is flipped on the Short edge, press the [2-sided Scan: Short Edge] option.
4. Press [OK].
5. Enter the fax number.
6. Press [Fax Start].




Related Information

- [Send a Fax](#)

Send a Fax Manually

Manual fax transmission lets you hear the dialling, ringing and fax-receiving tones while sending a fax.

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Fax].
3. Pick up the handset of the external telephone.
4. Dial the fax number you want to call.
5. When you hear the fax tone, press [Fax Start].
 - If you are using the scanner glass, press [Send].



Related Information

- [Send a Fax](#)

Send a Fax at the End of a Conversation

At the end of a conversation, you can send a fax to the other party before you both hang up.

1. Ask the other party to wait for fax tones (beeps) and then to press the Start or Send key before hanging up.
2. Load your document.
3. Press [Fax Start].
 - If you are using the scanner glass, press [Send].
4. Replace the handset of an external telephone.




Related Information

- [Send a Fax](#)
-

Send the Same Fax to More than One Recipient (Broadcasting)

Use the Broadcasting feature to send the same fax to multiple fax numbers at the same time.


- The same broadcast can include Groups, Address Book numbers (One Touch Dial numbers and Speed Dial numbers in some models) and up to 50 manually dialed numbers.
- Touchscreen LCD models
If you did not use any of the Address Book numbers for Groups, you can broadcast faxes to as many as 350 different numbers.
- Address Book numbers (One Touch Dial numbers and Speed Dial numbers in some models) must be stored in the machine's memory before they can be used in a broadcast.
- Group numbers must also be stored in the machine's memory before they can be used in a broadcast. Group numbers include many stored Address Book numbers (One Touch Dial numbers and Speed Dial numbers in some models) for easier dialling.

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Fax] > [Options] > [Broadcasting].
3. Press [Add Number].

You can add numbers to the broadcast in the following ways:

- Press [Add Number] and enter a number using the LCD.
Press [OK].




If you want to broadcast using an email address, press , enter the email address, and press [OK].

(On certain models, you must download Internet Fax to use the Internet Fax feature and the Scan to Email server feature.)

- Press [Add from Address book]. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the number you want to add to the broadcast. Select the check boxes of the broadcast. After you select all the numbers you want, press [OK].
 - Press [Search in Address book]. Press the name and press [OK]. Press the name, and then press the number you want to add.
4. When finished, press [OK].
 5. Press [Fax Start]. After the broadcast is finished, the machine will print a broadcast report to let you know the results.



- The machine's available memory will vary depending on the types of jobs in the memory and the numbers used for broadcasting. If you broadcast to the maximum number available, you will not be able to use dual access and delayed fax.
- If the [Out of Memory] message appears, press  to stop the job. If more than one page has been scanned, press [Send Now] to send the portion that is in the machine's memory.






Related Information

- [Send a Fax](#)
 - [Cancel a Broadcast in Progress](#)

Cancel a Broadcast in Progress

While broadcasting you can cancel the fax currently being sent or the whole broadcast job.

1. Press .
2. Press .
3. Do one of the following:
 - To cancel the entire broadcast, press [Entire Broadcast].
 - To cancel the current job, press the name or number being dialled on the LCD.
 - To exit without cancelling, press .




Related Information

- [Send the Same Fax to More than One Recipient \(Broadcasting\)](#)

Send a Fax in Real Time

When sending a fax, the machine scans the document into the memory before sending it. As soon as the telephone line is free, the machine starts dialling and sending. If you want to send an important document immediately without waiting for the machine to retrieve the scan from its memory, turn on [Real Time TX].

- If the memory is full and you are sending a fax from the ADF, the machine sends the document in real time (even if [Real Time TX] is set to [Off]). If the memory is full, faxes from the scanner glass cannot be sent until you clear some of the memory.
- In Real Time Transmission, the automatic redial feature does not work when using the scanner glass.
- If [Real Time TX] is set to on, the option to scan 2-sided documents is not available.

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Fax] > [Options] > [Real Time TX].
3. Press [On] or [Off].
4. Press [OK].
5. Enter the fax number.
6. Press [Fax Start].





Related Information

- [Send a Fax](#)

Send a Fax at a Specified Time (Delayed Fax)

You can store up to 50 faxes in the machine's memory to be sent within the next twenty-four hour period.

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Fax] > [Options] > [Delayed Fax] > [Delayed Fax].
3. Press [On].
4. Press [Set Time].
5. Enter the time you want the fax to be sent (in 24-hour format), and then press [OK].
(For example, enter 19:45 for 7:45 PM.)
6. Press [OK].
7. Enter the fax number.
8. Press [Fax Start].
9. Press .





Related Information

- [Send a Fax](#)

Add a Cover Page to Your Fax

You can add a cover page to the next fax or every outgoing fax.

- This feature will not work unless you have programmed your Station ID.
- Your cover page includes your Station ID, a comment, and the name stored in the Address Book, One Touch Dial, or Speed Dial (in some models).

1. Load your document.
2. Press  [Fax] > [Options] > [Coverpage Setup] > [Coverpage Setup].
3. Press [On].
4. Press [Coverpage Note].
5. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to choose the comment you want to use, and then press the comment.
Press .
6. Press [OK].
7. Enter the fax number.
8. Press [Fax Start].

The cover page will be added to the next fax. If you want to add the cover page to every outgoing fax, set the settings as the new default.






Related Information

- [Send a Fax](#)
 - [Compose Your Own Comments](#)
 - [Use a Printed Cover Page](#)

Compose Your Own Comments

You can set up two comments of your own.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Send] > [Coverpage Setting] > [Coverpage Note].
2. Press [5.] or [6.] to store your own comment.
3. Enter your own comment using the LCD. Press [OK].
Press  to choose numbers, letters or special characters.
4. Press .





Related Information

- [Add a Cover Page to Your Fax](#)

Use a Printed Cover Page

If you want a printed cover page you can write on, print the sample page and attach it to your fax.



1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Send] > [Coverpage Setting] > [Print Sample].
2. Press [Yes].
The machine prints the sample cover page.
3. Press .



Related Information

- [Add a Cover Page to Your Fax](#)

Cancel a Fax in Progress

1. Press .
2. Press  while the machine is dialling or sending a fax.
The LCD will display [Cancel Job?].
3. Press an option in the table to cancel or continue the fax job in progress.



Option	Description
Yes	The machine cancels sending the fax job.
No	The machine exits from the process without cancelling the fax job.

Related Information

- [Send a Fax](#)

Check and Cancel a Pending Fax

You can cancel a fax job before it is sent, by cancelling the fax job while it is stored and waiting in the memory.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Remaining Jobs].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the waiting jobs, and then press the job you want to cancel.
3. Press [Cancel].
4. Press [Yes] to confirm or press [No] to exit without cancelling.
5. When finished cancelling jobs, press .



Related Information

- [Send a Fax](#)
-

Fax Options

To change fax-sending settings, press the [Options] button.

Option	Description
Fax Resolution	Set the resolution for outgoing faxes. The fax quality often can be improved by changing the Fax Resolution.
2-sided Fax (For automatic 2-sided scanning models)	Set the 2-sided scanning format.
Contrast	Adjust the contrast. If your document is very light or very dark, changing the contrast may improve the fax quality.
Broadcasting	Send the same fax message to more than one fax number at the same time.
Delayed Fax	Set the time of day the delayed faxes will be sent.
Real Time TX	Send a fax immediately without waiting for the machine to retrieve the scan from its memory.
Coverpage Setup	Set the machine to automatically send a cover page that you have pre-programmed.
Overseas Mode	Set to On if you have difficulty sending faxes overseas.
Glass Scan Size	Adjust the scan area of the scanner glass to the size of the document.
Set New Default	Save your settings as the default.
Factory Reset	Restore all settings back to the factory settings.



You can save the current settings by pressing [Save as Shortcut].



Related Information

- [Send a Fax](#)

Receive a Fax

- [Receive Mode Settings](#)
- [Memory Receive \(Remote Fax\) Options](#)
- [Remote Fax Retrieval](#)

Receive Mode Settings

- [Receive Modes Overview](#)
- [Choose the Correct Receive Mode](#)
- [Set the Number of Rings Before the Machine Answers \(Ring Delay\)](#)
- [Set the F/T Ring Time \(Fast Double-ring\)](#)
- [Set Fax Detect](#)
- [Shrink Page Size of an Oversized Incoming Fax](#)
- [Set the 2-sided Printing for Received Faxes](#)
- [Set the Fax Receive Stamp](#)
- [Receive a Fax at the End of a Telephone Conversation](#)

Receive Modes Overview

Some receive modes answer automatically (Fax Only Mode and Fax/Tel Mode). You may want to change the Ring Delay before using these modes.

Fax Only Mode

([Fax] or [Fax Only] in the machine's menu)

Fax Only Mode automatically answers every call as a fax.

Fax/Tel Mode

([Fax/Tel] in the machine's menu)

Fax/Tel Mode helps you manage incoming calls, by recognising whether they are fax or voice calls and handling them in the following ways:

- Faxes will be received automatically.
- Voice calls will start the F/T ring to tell you to pick up the call. The F/T ring is a fast pseudo/double-ring made by your machine.

Manual Mode

([Manual] in the machine's menu)

Manual Mode turns off all automatic answering operations unless you are using the BT Call Sign feature.

To receive a fax in Manual Mode lift the handset of the external telephone connected to the machine.

When you hear fax tones (short repeating beeps), press the buttons in the table to receive a fax. Use the Fax Detect feature to receive faxes when you have lifted a handset on the same line as the machine.

Applicable Models	To receive the fax
bizhub 4020i/bizhub 5020i	Fax Start and then Receive

External TAD Mode

([External TAD] in the machine's menu)

External TAD Mode lets an external answering device manage your incoming calls.

Incoming calls will be handled in the following ways:

- Faxes will be received automatically.
- Voice callers can record a message on the external TAD.



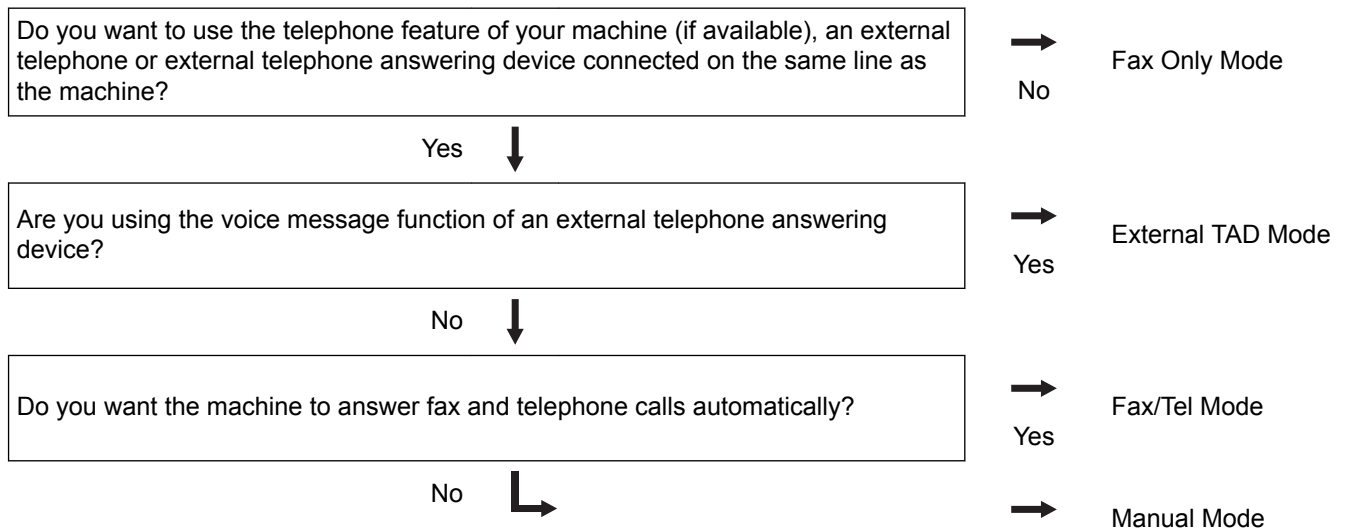
Related Information


- [Receive Mode Settings](#)

Choose the Correct Receive Mode

You must choose a Receive Mode depending on the external devices and telephone services you have on your line.

By default, your machine will automatically receive any faxes that are sent to it. The diagram below will help you select the correct mode.




1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Receive Mode].



(U.K. only) If you cannot change the [Receive Mode], make sure the BT Call Sign feature is set to Off.

2. Press [Fax], [Fax/Tel], [External TAD], or [Manual].

3. Press .

Related Information

- [Receive Mode Settings](#)


Related Topics:

- [Telephone and Fax Problems](#)

Set the Number of Rings Before the Machine Answers (Ring Delay)

When somebody calls your machine, you will hear the normal telephone ring sound. The number of rings is set in the Ring Delay option.

- The Ring Delay setting sets the number of times the machine rings before it answers in the Fax Only and Fax/Tel Modes.
- If you have external or extension telephones on the same line as the machine, choose the maximum number of rings.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Ring Delay].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to select the number of rings you want, and then press the number.



If you select [0], the machine will answer immediately and the line will not ring at all (available only for some countries).

3. Press .



Related Information

- [Receive Mode Settings](#)

Related Topics:



- [Telephone and Fax Problems](#)

Set the F/T Ring Time (Fast Double-ring)

When you set the Receive Mode to Fax/Tel Mode, if the call is a fax, your machine will automatically receive it. However, if it is a voice call, the machine will sound the F/T ring (fast double-ring) for the time you set in the F/T Ring Time option. When you hear the F/T ring, it means that a voice caller is on the line.

- The F/T Ring Time feature works when you set Fax/Tel Mode as the Receive Mode.

Because the F/T ring is made by the machine, extension and external telephones will not ring; however, you can still answer the call on any telephone.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [F/T Ring Time].
2. Press how long you want the machine to ring to alert you that you have a voice call.
3. Press .



Even if the caller hangs up during the pseudo/double-ringing, the machine will continue to ring for the set time.



Related Information

- [Receive Mode Settings](#)

Set Fax Detect



If Fax Detect is On: The machine receives a fax call automatically, even if you answer the call. When you see [Receiving] on the LCD or when you hear “chirps” through the handset you are using, just replace the handset. Your machine will do the rest.

If Fax Detect is Off: If you are at the machine and answer a fax call by lifting the handset, press the buttons in the following table to receive the fax. If you answered at an extension or external telephone, press *51.

Applicable Models	To receive the fax
bizhub 4020i/bizhub 5020i	Fax Start and then Receive



- If this feature is set to [On], but your machine does not connect a fax call when you lift an extension or external telephone handset, press the remote activation code *51.
- If you send faxes from a computer on the same telephone line and the machine intercepts them, set Fax Detect to [Off].

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Fax Detect].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .



Related Information



- [Receive Mode Settings](#)

Related Topics:

- [Operation from External and Extension Telephones](#)

Shrink Page Size of an Oversized Incoming Fax

If you enable the auto reduction function, the machine reduces each page of an incoming fax to fit on your paper. The machine calculates the reduction ratio by using the page size of the fax and your Paper Size setting.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Auto Reduction].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .





Related Information

- [Receive Mode Settings](#)

Set the 2-sided Printing for Received Faxes

Your machine prints received faxes on both sides of the paper when [2-sided] is set to [On].

- When 2-sided printing is enabled, incoming faxes are automatically reduced to fit the paper in the paper tray.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [2-sided].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .





Related Information

- [Receive Mode Settings](#)

Set the Fax Receive Stamp

You can set the machine to print the received date and time at the top centre of each received fax page.

- Make sure you have set the current date and time on the machine.
- The received time and date will not appear when using Internet Fax.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Fax Rx Stamp].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .



Related Information

- [Receive Mode Settings](#)

Receive a Fax at the End of a Telephone Conversation

If you are speaking on the telephone connected to your machine and the other party is also speaking on a telephone connected to his fax machine, at the end of the conversation, the other party can send you a fax before you both hang up.

Your machine's ADF must be empty.

1. Ask the other party to place the document in their machine and to press the Start or Send key.
2. When you hear the CNG tones (slowly repeating beeps), press [Fax Start].



If the machine is in Automatic Redial, wait until it is finished and try again.

3. Press [Receive] to receive a fax.
4. Replace the external handset.



Related Information

- [Receive Mode Settings](#)

Memory Receive (Remote Fax) Options


Use Memory Receive (Remote Fax) options to direct incoming faxes while you are away from the machine. You can use only one Memory Receive option at a time.

Memory Receive (Remote Fax) can be set to:

- Fax Forwarding
 - Fax Storage
 - PC-Fax Receive
 - Off
-
- [Forward Incoming Faxes to Another Machine](#)
 - [Store Incoming Faxes in the Machine's Memory](#)
 - [Change Memory Receive Options](#)
 - [Turn Off Memory Receive](#)
 - [Print a Fax Stored in the Machine's Memory](#)
 - [Use PC-Fax Receive to Transfer Received Faxes to Your Computer \(Windows only\)](#)

Forward Incoming Faxes to Another Machine

Use the Fax Forwarding feature to automatically forward your incoming faxes to another machine.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Memory Receive].
2. Press [Fax Forward].
3. Do one of the following:
 - Press [Manual] to enter the forwarding fax number (up to 20 characters) using the LCD.
Press [OK].



To forward a fax using an email address, press , enter the email address, and press [OK].

- Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display to scroll until you find the fax number or email address where you want your faxes to be forwarded.
Press the fax number or email address you want.

NOTE

- Press [Backup Print: On] or [Backup Print: Off]. If you select [Backup Print: On], the machine also prints a copy of received faxes at your machine.

4. Press .





Related Information

- [Memory Receive \(Remote Fax\) Options](#)

Store Incoming Faxes in the Machine's Memory

Use the Fax Storage feature to store incoming faxes in the machine's memory. Retrieve your stored fax messages from your fax machine when you are at another location using the Remote Retrieval commands. Your machine will print a backup copy of each stored fax.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Memory Receive].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Fax Storage] option, and then press [Fax Storage].
3. Press .



Related Information

- [Memory Receive \(Remote Fax\) Options](#)

Change Memory Receive Options

If received faxes are in your machine's memory when you change the Remote Fax operations, the LCD will ask you one of the following questions:

If received faxes have been printed automatically, the LCD displays [Erase all documents?]

- Do one of the following:
 - If you press [Yes], faxes in the memory will be erased before the setting changes.
 - If you press [No], faxes in the memory will not be erased and the setting will be unchanged.

If unprinted faxes are in the machine's memory, the LCD displays [Print all faxes?]

- Do one of the following:
 - If you press [Yes], faxes in the memory will be printed before the setting changes.
 - If you press [No], faxes in the memory will not be printed and the setting will be unchanged.

If received faxes are left in the machine's memory when you change to [PC Fax Receive] from another option ([Fax Forward] or [Fax Storage]).

- Press [<USB>] or the name of the computer if you are on a network, and then press [OK].

The LCD displays:

[Send Fax to PC?]

- If you press [Yes], faxes in the memory will be sent to your computer before the setting changes. You will be asked if you want to turn on Backup Print.
- If you press [No], faxes in the memory will not be erased and the setting will be unchanged.




Related Information

- [Memory Receive \(Remote Fax\) Options](#)


Turn Off Memory Receive

Turn off Memory Receive if you do not want the machine to save or transfer incoming faxes.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Memory Receive].
2. Press [Off].



The LCD displays options if there are received faxes still in your machine's memory.

3. Press .




Related Information

- [Memory Receive \(Remote Fax\) Options](#)

Print a Fax Stored in the Machine's Memory

If you select [Fax Storage], you can still print a fax from the memory when you are at your machine.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Print Document].
2. Press [Yes].



Related Information

- [Memory Receive \(Remote Fax\) Options](#)
-

Use PC-Fax Receive to Transfer Received Faxes to Your Computer (Windows only)


Turn on the PC-Fax Receive feature, automatically store incoming faxes to your machine's memory, and then send them to your computer. Use your computer to view and store these faxes.

To transfer the received faxes to your computer you must have the PC-FAX Receiving software running on your computer.

Even if you have turned off your computer (at night or on the weekend, for example), your machine will receive and store your faxes in its memory.


When you start your computer and the PC-FAX Receiving software runs, your machine transfers your faxes to your computer automatically.

If you selected [Backup Print: On], the machine will also print the fax.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [PC Fax Receive].
2. Press [On], and then following the LCD instruction.



- Before you can set up PC-Fax Receive, you must install the software on your computer. Make sure your computer is connected and turned on.
- PC-Fax Receive is not available for the Mac operating systems.
- If you get an error message and the machine cannot print the faxes in the memory, you can use this setting to transfer your faxes to your computer.

3. Press [<USB>] or the name of the computer you want to receive faxes if you are on a network, and then press [OK].
4. Press [Backup Print: On] or [Backup Print: Off].
5. Press .



Related Information

- [Memory Receive \(Remote Fax\) Options](#)

Related Topics:

- [Transfer Faxes to Your Computer](#)
- [Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive \(Windows\)](#)

Remote Fax Retrieval


Use Remote Retrieval to call your machine from any touch-tone telephone or fax machine, and use a remote access code and remote commands to retrieve fax messages.

- [Set a Remote Access Code](#)
- [Use Your Remote Access Code](#)
- [Remote Retrieval Commands](#)
- [Forward Faxes Remotely](#)
- [Change the Fax Forwarding Number](#)


Set a Remote Access Code


Set a Remote Access Code to access and control your machine even when you are away from it.

Before you can use the remote access and retrieval features, you must set up your own code. The factory default code is the inactive code (---*).

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Remote Access].
2. Enter a three-digit code using the numbers [0] to [9], [*] or [#] using the LCD (the preset "*" cannot be changed), and then press [OK].



- DO NOT use the same code used for your Remote Activation Code (*51) or Remote Deactivation Code (#51).
- To make your code inactive, press and hold  to restore the inactive setting (---*), and then press [OK].

3. Press .



Related Information

- [Remote Fax Retrieval](#)

Use Your Remote Access Code

1. Dial your fax number from a telephone or another fax machine using touch tone.
2. When your machine answers, immediately enter your Remote Access Code (three digits followed by *).
3. The machine signals if it has received messages:
 - One long beep -- Fax messages
 - No beeps -- No messages
4. When the machine gives two short beeps, enter a command.
 - The machine will hang up if you wait longer than 30 seconds to enter a command.
 - The machine will beep three times if you enter an invalid command.
5. Press 9 0 to reset the machine when you are finished.
6. Hang up.
 - If your machine is set to Manual mode and you want to use the remote retrieval features, wait for about 100 seconds after it starts ringing, and then enter the remote access code within 30 seconds.
 - This function may not be available in some countries or supported by your local telephone company.



Related Information

- [Remote Fax Retrieval](#)

Remote Retrieval Commands

Use the Remote Commands in this table to access fax commands and options when you are away from your machine. When you call the machine and enter your remote access code (three digits followed by *), the system will sound two short beeps and you must enter a Remote Command (column 1), followed by one of the options (column 2) for that command.

Remote commands	Options	Operation details
95	Change the Fax Forwarding, or Fax Storage settings	
	1 OFF	You can select <i>Off</i> after you retrieve or erase all your messages.
	2 Fax Forwarding	One long beep means the change is accepted. If you hear three short beeps, you cannot make a change because something has not been set up (for example, a Fax Forwarding number has not been registered). You can register your Fax Forwarding number by entering 4. After you register the number, Fax Forwarding will work.
	4 Fax Forwarding number	
	6 Fax Storage	
96	Retrieve a fax	
	2 Retrieve all faxes	Enter the fax number of a remote fax machine to receive stored fax messages.
	3 Erase faxes from memory	If you hear one long beep, fax messages have been erased from memory.
97	Check the receiving status	
	1 Fax	Check whether your machine has received any faxes. If yes, you will hear one long beep. If not, you will hear three short beeps.
98	Change the Receive Mode	
	1 External TAD	One long beep means the change has been accepted.
	2 Fax/Tel	
	3 Fax Only	
90	Exit	Press 9 0 to stop remote retrieval. Wait for the long beep, then hang up.



Related Information

- [Remote Fax Retrieval](#)

Forward Faxes Remotely

Call your machine from any touch-tone telephone or fax machine to forward incoming faxes to another machine.

You must turn on Fax Storage to use this feature.

1. Dial your fax number.
2. When your machine answers, enter your Remote Access Code (three digits followed by *). If you hear one long beep, you have messages.
3. When you hear two short beeps, press 9 6 2.
4. Wait for the long beep, and then use the dial pad to enter the number of the remote fax machine where you want your fax messages sent, followed by # # (up to 20 digits).



You cannot use * and # as dial numbers. However, press # if you want to create a pause.

5. Hang up after you hear your machine beep. Your machine will call the other fax machine, which will then print your fax messages.



Related Information

- [Remote Fax Retrieval](#)

Change the Fax Forwarding Number

You can change your fax forwarding number from another touch-tone telephone or fax machine.

1. Dial your fax number.
2. When your machine answers, enter your Remote Access Code (three digits followed by *). If you hear one long beep, you have messages.
3. When you hear two short beeps, press 9 5 4.
4. Wait for the long beep, enter the new number (up to 20 digits) of the remote fax machine you want your fax messages forwarded to using the dial pad, then enter # #.

You will hear one long beep.



You cannot use * and # as dial numbers. However, press # if you want to create a pause.

5. When you hear two short beeps, press 9 0 to stop Remote Access when you have finished.
6. Hang up after you hear your machine beep.



Related Information

- [Remote Fax Retrieval](#)

Voice Operations and Fax Numbers

- [Voice Operations](#)
- [Store Fax Numbers](#)
- [Set up Groups for Broadcasting](#)
- [Combine Address Book Numbers](#)

Voice Operations

- [Pick up a Voice Call in Fax/Tel Receive Mode](#)

Pick up a Voice Call in Fax/Tel Receive Mode

When the machine is in Fax/Tel mode, it will use the F/T Ring (fast double-ring) to alert you to pick up a voice call.

If you are at the machine, lift the external telephone's handset, and then press the button in the following table to answer:

Applicable Models	To pick up voice call
bizhub 4020i/bizhub 5020i	Pickup

If you are at an extension telephone, lift the handset during the F/T Ring, and then press #51 between the fast double-rings. If no one is on the line, or if someone wants to send you a fax, send the call back to the machine by pressing *51.




Related Information

- [Voice Operations](#)


Store Fax Numbers

- [Store Address Book Numbers](#)
- [Change or Delete Address Book Names or Numbers](#)
- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)

Store Address Book Numbers


1. Press  [Fax] > [Address Book].
2. Do the following steps:
 - a. Press [Edit].
 - b. Press [Add New Address].
 - c. Press [Name].
 - d. Enter the name using the LCD (up to 16 characters), and then press [OK].
 - e. Press [Address].
 - f. Enter the fax or telephone number using the LCD (up to 20 digits), and then press [OK].



- To store an email address to use with Internet Fax or Scan to Email server, press  and enter the email address and press [OK].

- g. Press [OK].

To store another Address Book number, repeat these steps.

3. Press .




Related Information

- [Store Fax Numbers](#)
 - [Store Address Book Numbers from Outgoing Calls](#)


Store Address Book Numbers from Outgoing Calls

You can store Address Book numbers from the Outgoing Call history.

1. Press  [Fax] > [Call History] > [Outgoing Call].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the number you want, and then press it.
3. Press [Edit] > [Add to Address Book] > [Name].



To delete the number, press [Edit] > [Delete]. Press [Yes] to confirm.


4. Enter the name using the LCD (up to 16 characters).
5. Press [OK].
6. Press [OK] to confirm the fax or telephone number you want to store.
7. Press .



Related Information

- [Store Address Book Numbers](#)


Change or Delete Address Book Names or Numbers

1. Press  [Fax] > [Address Book] > [Edit].
2. Do one of the following:
 - Press [Change] to edit the names or fax or telephone numbers.
Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the number you want to change, and then press it.
 - To change the name, press [Name]. Enter the new name (up to 16 characters) using the LCD, and then press [OK].
 - To change the fax or telephone number, press [Address]. Enter the new fax or telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the LCD, and then press [OK].


Press [OK] to finish.



How to enter text:

To change a character, press ◀ or ▶ to position the cursor to highlight the incorrect character, and then press .

Enter the new character.

- To delete numbers, press [Delete].
 - Select the fax or telephone numbers you want to delete by pressing them to display a red check mark, and then press [OK].
3. Press .



Related Information



- [Store Fax Numbers](#)

Set up Groups for Broadcasting

A Group, which can be stored in the Address Book (One Touch Dial or Speed Dial in some models) allows you to send the same fax message to many fax numbers.

First, you must store each fax number in the Address Book. Then you can include them as numbers in the Group. Each Group uses up an Address Book (a One Touch Dial, or a Speed Dial in some models) number.


Applicable Models	Maximum number of Group	Maximum numbers in a large Group
bizhub 4020i/bizhub 5020i	20 groups	299 numbers

1. Press  [Fax] > [Address Book].
2. Do the following steps:
 - a. Press [Edit] > [Setup Groups] > [Name].
 - b. Enter the Group name (up to 16 characters) using the LCD, and then press [OK].
 - c. Press [Add/Delete].
 - d. Add Address Book numbers to the Group by pressing them to display a red checkmark, and then press [OK].
 - e. Read and confirm the displayed list of names and numbers you have chosen, and then press [OK] to save your Group.To store another Group for broadcasting, repeat these steps.
3. Press .

Related Information


- [Voice Operations and Fax Numbers](#)
 - [Change a Group Name](#)
 - [Delete a Group](#)
 - [Add or Delete Group Members](#)

Change a Group Name

1. Press  [Fax] > [Address Book] > [Edit] > [Change].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the Group you want, and then press the Group name.
3. Press [Name].
4. Enter the new Group name (up to 16 characters) using the LCD, and then press [OK].



How to change the stored name:

To change a character, press ◀ or ▶ to position the cursor to highlight the incorrect character, and then press .

Enter the new character.



5. Press [OK].
6. Press .



Related Information

- [Set up Groups for Broadcasting](#)

Delete a Group



1. Press  [Fax] > [Address Book] > [Edit] > [Delete].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the Group you want, and then press the Group name.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press .



Related Information

- [Set up Groups for Broadcasting](#)

Add or Delete Group Members

1. Press  [Fax] > [Address Book] > [Edit] > [Change].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the Group you want, and then press the Group name.
3. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Add/Delete] option, and then press [Add/Delete].
4. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the number you want to add or delete.
5. Do the following for each number you want to change:
 - To add a number to the Group, press the check box of the number to add a check mark.
 - To delete a number from the Group, press the check box of the number to remove the check mark.
6. Press [OK].
7. Press [OK].
8. Press .



Related Information

- [Set up Groups for Broadcasting](#)

Combine Address Book Numbers


Sometimes you may want to choose from several long-distance carriers when you send a fax. Rates may vary depending on the time and destination. To take advantage of low rates, you can store the access codes of long-distance carriers and credit card numbers as Address Book numbers.

You can store these long dialling sequences by dividing them and setting them up as separate Address Book numbers in any combination. You can even include manual dialling using the dial pad.

For example: You might have stored '01632' and '960555' in your machine as shown in the following table.

Applicable Models	'01632' stored in	'960555' stored in
bizhub 4020i/bizhub 5020i	Address Book: Address Book 1	Address Book: Address Book 2

You can use them both to dial '01632-960555' by using the following procedure.

1. Press  [Fax] > [Address Book].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the number of Address Book 1.
3. Press the number.
4. Press [Apply].
5. Press [Address Book].
6. Press [OK].
7. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the number of Address Book 2.
8. Press the number.
9. Press [Apply].
10. Press [Fax Start].

The machine will dial '01632-960555'.

To temporarily change a number, you can substitute part of the number by pressing it using the LCD. For example, to change the number to '01632-960556', you could enter the number (Address Book 1: 01632) using Address Book, press [Apply], and then press 960556 using the LCD.



If you must wait for another dial tone or signal at any point in the dialling sequence, create a pause in the number by pressing [Pause].



Related Information

- [Voice Operations and Fax Numbers](#)

Telephone Services and External Devices

- [Use BT Call Sign](#)
- [Set the Telephone Line Type](#)
- [External TAD \(Telephone Answering Device\)](#)
- [External and Extension Telephones](#)
- [Multi-line Connections \(PBX\)](#)

Use BT Call Sign

This feature of the machine lets you use the BT Call Sign subscriber service which allows you to have at least two separate telephone numbers on one telephone line. Each telephone number has its own distinctive ringing pattern, so you know which telephone number is ringing. This is one way you can have a separate telephone number for your machine.

Your machine has a BT Call Sign compatible distinctive ringing function, allowing you to dedicate a second telephone number (on the same telephone line) just for receiving faxes.



- This feature is available only in the U.K.
- You can switch BT Call Sign Off temporarily, then turn it back on. When you get a new fax number, make sure you reset this function. This machine will automatically answer incoming calls that use your new fax number.
- When you set the BT Call Sign feature to On, the receive mode is set to [Manual] automatically. [Manual] mode will not respond to incoming telephone calls, since the number you use for telephone calls will use the normal ring pattern.





Related Information

- [Telephone Services and External Devices](#)
 - [Enable the Machine to Work with BT Call Sign](#)

Enable the Machine to Work with BT Call Sign

- This feature is available only in the U.K.
- This feature will only work with your external phone.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Miscellaneous] > [BT Call Sign].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .

If you turn off BT Call Sign, the receive mode stays in Manual mode. You will need to set the receive mode again.




Related Information

- [Use BT Call Sign](#)

Set the Telephone Line Type

If you are connecting the machine to a line that features PBX or ISDN to send and receive faxes, you must select a Telephone Line Type that matches your line's features.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Phone Line Set].
2. Press [Normal], [PBX], or [ISDN].
3. If you selected [PBX], do the following steps:
 - a. Press [On] or [Always].




- If you select [On], the machine dials a prefix number before the fax number only when [R] is pressed.
- If you select [Always], the machine always dials a prefix number before the fax number.

- b. Press [Dial Prefix].
- c. Enter the prefix number using the LCD, and then press [OK].



Use the numbers 0 to 9, #, * and !. You cannot use ! with any other numbers or characters.

4. Press .



Related Information

- [Telephone Services and External Devices](#)
 - [PBX and TRANSFER](#)

PBX and TRANSFER

The machine's [Phone Line Set] default setting is [Normal], which lets the machine connect to a standard Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) line. However, many offices use a central telephone system or Private Branch Exchange (PBX). Your machine can be connected to most types of PBX. The machine's recall feature supports timed break recall only (TBR). TBR will work with most PBX systems allowing you to gain access to an outside line, or transfer calls to another extension. To use this feature, press the button in the table.

Applicable Models	To use the machine's recall feature
bizhub 4020i/bizhub 5020i	R



Program a press of the button in the table as part of a number stored in the Address Book (One Touch Dial and Speed Dial in some models). When programming the Address Book number (One Touch Dial number and Speed Dial number in some models), press the button first (the LCD displays '!'), then enter the telephone number. This avoids having to press the button each time before you dial from the Address Book (One Touch Dial or Speed Dial). Your Telephone Line Type must be set to PBX on the machine to use this programming.



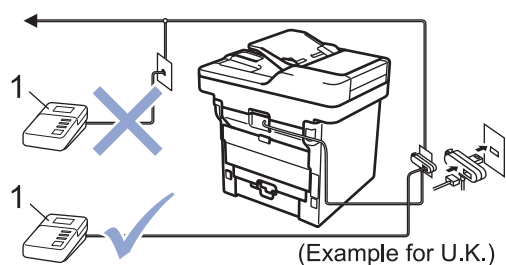
Related Information

- [Set the Telephone Line Type](#)

External TAD (Telephone Answering Device)

You can connect an external Telephone Answering Device (TAD) to the same line as your machine. When the TAD answers a call, your machine will “listen” for the CNG (fax calling) tones sent by a sending fax machine. If it hears them it will take over the call and receive the fax. If it does not hear them, it will let your TAD take a voice message and the LCD will show [Telephone].

The external TAD must answer within four rings (we recommend setting it to two rings). This is because your machine cannot hear the CNG tones until the external TAD has picked up the call. The sending machine will send CNG tones for only eight to ten seconds longer. We do not recommend using the toll saver feature on your external TAD if it needs more than four rings to activate it.



1 TAD

IMPORTANT

DO NOT connect a TAD elsewhere on the same telephone line.



If you have problems receiving faxes, reduce the Ring Delay setting on your external TAD.



Related Information

- [Telephone Services and External Devices](#)
 - [Connect an External TAD](#)
 - [Record an Outgoing Message \(OGM\) on the External TAD](#)

Connect an External TAD

1. Set your external TAD to one or two rings. (The machine's Ring Delay setting does not apply.)
2. Record an outgoing message on your external TAD.
3. Set the TAD to answer calls.
4. Set the Receive Mode on your machine to [External TAD].



Related Information

- [External TAD \(Telephone Answering Device\)](#)
-

Record an Outgoing Message (OGM) on the External TAD

1. Record 5 seconds of silence at the beginning of your message. This allows your machine time to listen for fax tones.
2. Limit your speaking to 20 seconds.
3. End your 20-second message by giving your Remote Activation Code for people sending manual faxes. For example: "After the beep, leave a message or press *51 and Start to send a fax."

NOTE

We recommend beginning your OGM with an initial 5 second silence because the machine cannot hear fax tones over a loud voice. You may try leaving out this pause, but if your machine has trouble receiving faxes, then you should re-record the OGM to include it.



Related Information

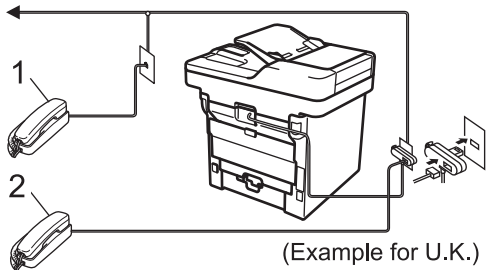
- [External TAD \(Telephone Answering Device\)](#)

External and Extension Telephones

- [Connect an External or Extension Telephone](#)
- [Operation from External and Extension Telephones](#)
- [Use Extension Telephones](#)
- [Use the Remote Codes](#)

Connect an External or Extension Telephone

You can connect a separate telephone to your machine as shown in the diagram below.



1 Extension telephone

2 External telephone



Please make sure you use an external telephone with a cable no more than three metres long.



Related Information

- [External and Extension Telephones](#)

Operation from External and Extension Telephones

If you answer a fax call at an extension or an external telephone, you can make your machine take the call by using the Remote Activation Code. When you press the Remote Activation Code ***51**, the machine starts to receive the fax.

If the machine answers a voice call and pseudo/double-rings for you to take over, you can take the call at an extension telephone by pressing the Remote Deactivation Code **#51**.

If you answer a call and no one is on the line:

You should assume that you're receiving a manual fax.

Press ***51** and wait for the chirp or until the LCD displays [Receiving], and then hang up.



You can also use the Fax Detect feature to make your machine automatically take the call.



Related Information

- [External and Extension Telephones](#)

Related Topics:

- [Set Fax Detect](#)

Use Extension Telephones

Your premises may already be wired with parallel extension telephones, or you may plan to add extension telephones to your line, as well as your machine. While the simplest arrangement is a straightforward parallel connection, there are some problems with this. The most obvious is inadvertent interruption of a fax transmission caused by someone picking up an extension telephone to make an outgoing call. Also, the remote activation code feature may not operate reliably in such a simple configuration.

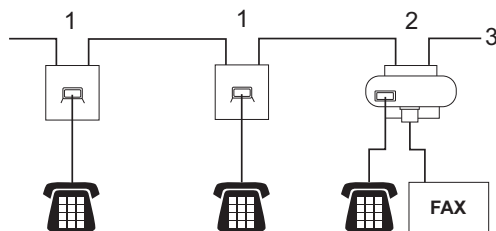
This machine may also be set to make a delayed transmission (i.e. a transmission at a preset time). This preset job may coincide with someone picking up an extension handset.

These problems can easily be eliminated, if you arrange modification of your extension wiring circuit, such that extension devices are connected “downstream” of your machine in a master/slave configuration (see figure 2). In this configuration the machine can always detect whether a telephone is in use. Thus it will not attempt to seize the line during that time. This is known as “telephone off-hook detection.”

The inadvisable configuration is shown in figure 1, and the recommended master/slave configuration is shown in figure 2.

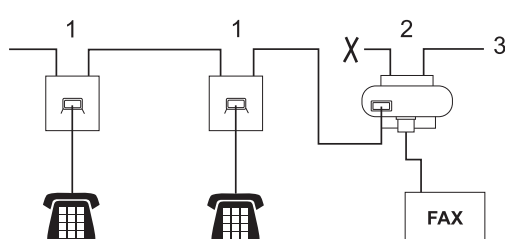
This new connection configuration can be arranged by contacting BT, Kingston upon Hull Telecommunications, your PBX maintainer or a qualified telephone installation company as appropriate. Simply explained, the extension telephone circuit should be terminated on a normal modular plug (BT 431A style), which in turn should be put into the modular socket of the white “T”-shaped connector provided as part of the line cord assembly.

Inadvisable connection of extension sockets (Figure 1.)



1. Extension socket
2. Master socket
3. Incoming line

Recommended connection of extension sockets (Figure 2.)



1. Extension socket
2. Master socket
3. Incoming line

The fax machine must be plugged into the master socket.



These telephones are now connected as external devices, because they are connected to the fax machine via the T-connector.



Related Information

- [External and Extension Telephones](#)

Use the Remote Codes

Remote Activation Code

If you answer a fax call on an extension or external telephone, you can tell your machine to receive it by pressing the Remote Activation Code ***51**. Wait for the chirping sounds, and then replace the handset.

If you answer a fax call at the external telephone, you can make the machine receive the fax by pressing the buttons in the following table:

Applicable Models	To make the machine receive the fax
bizhub 4020i/bizhub 5020i	Fax Start and then Receive

Remote Deactivation Code

If you receive a voice call and the machine is in F/T mode, it will start to sound the F/T ring (fast double-ring) after the initial ring delay. If you pick up the call on an extension telephone you can turn the F/T ring off by pressing **#51** (make sure you press this between the rings).

If the machine answers a voice call and fast double-rings for you to take over, you can take the call at the external telephone by pressing the button in the following table:

Applicable Models	To pick up voice call
bizhub 4020i/bizhub 5020i	Pickup





Related Information

- [External and Extension Telephones](#)
 - [Change the Remote Codes](#)

Change the Remote Codes

The preset Remote Activation Code is ***51**. The preset Remote Deactivation Code is **#51**. If you are always disconnected when accessing your External TAD remotely, try changing the three-digit remote codes using the numbers 0-9, *, #.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Remote Codes].
2. Do one of the following:
 - To change the Remote Activation Code, press [Act . Code]. Enter the new code, and then press [OK].
 - To change the Remote Deactivation Code, press [Deact . Code]. Enter the new code, and then press [OK].
 - If you do not want to change the Codes, go to the next step.
 - To turn off (or turn on) the Remote Codes, press [Remote Codes], and then press [Off] (or [On]).
3. Press .



Related Information

- [Use the Remote Codes](#)

Multi-line Connections (PBX)

We suggest you ask the company that installed your PBX to connect your machine. If you have a multi line system we suggest you ask the installer to connect the unit to the last line on the system. This prevents the machine being activated each time the system receives telephone calls. If all incoming calls will be answered by a switchboard operator we recommend setting the Receive Mode to `[Manual]`.

We cannot guarantee that your machine will operate correctly under all circumstances when connected to a PBX. Any difficulties with sending or receiving faxes should be reported first to the company that handles your PBX.



Related Information

- [Telephone Services and External Devices](#)
-

Fax Reports

The Transmission Verification Report and the Fax Journal are available to confirm the results of fax transmission.


- [Print a Transmission Verification Report](#)
- [Print a Fax Journal](#)

Print a Transmission Verification Report

You can use the Transmission Verification Report as proof that you sent a fax. This report lists the receiving party's name or fax number, the time and date of transmission, duration of transmission, number of pages sent, and whether or not the transmission was successful.

There are several settings available for the Transmission Verification Report:

On	Prints a report after every fax you send.
On+Image	Prints a report after every fax you send. A portion of the fax's first page appears on the report.
Off	Prints a report if your fax is unsuccessful due to a transmission error. Off is the factory setting.
Off+Image	Prints a report if your fax is unsuccessful due to a transmission error. A portion of the fax's first page appears on the report.
No Report	Your machine does not print any reports after sending faxes.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Report Setting] > [XMIT Report].

2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to select the option you want, and then press it.

If you select [On+Image] or [Off+Image], the image will not appear on the Transmission Verification Report if Real Time Transmission is set to [On].

3. Press .

If the transmission is successful, OK appears next to RESULT on the Transmission Verification Report. If the transmission is not successful, NG appears next to RESULT.





Related Information

- [Fax Reports](#)

Print a Fax Journal

You can set the machine to print a Fax Journal at specific intervals (every 50 faxes, 6, 12 or 24 hours, 2 or 7 days).

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Report Setting] > [Journal Period] > [Journal Period].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to select an interval, and then press it.
 - Every 6, 12, 24 hours, 2 or 7 days
The machine will print the report at the selected time and then erase all reception and transmission log data from its memory. If the machine's memory becomes full with 200 log data before the time you selected has passed, the machine will print the Journal early and then erase all jobs from the memory. If you want an extra report before it is due to print, you can print it without erasing the log data from the memory.
 - Every 50 Faxes
The machine will print the Journal when the machine has stored 50 reception and transmission log data.
3. If you selected every 6, 12, 24 hours, 2 or 7 days, press [Time] and enter the time to start printing (in 24-hour format) using the LCD, and then press [OK]. (For example: enter 19:45 for 7:45 PM.)
4. If you selected [Every 7 Days], press [Day].
5. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Every Monday], [Every Tuesday], [Every Wednesday], [Every Thursday], [Every Friday], [Every Saturday] or [Every Sunday] option, and then press the first day of the 7-day countdown.
6. Press .



Related Information

- [Fax Reports](#)

PC-FAX

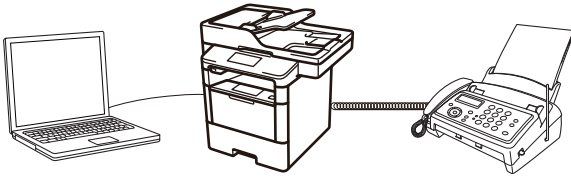
- [PC-FAX for Windows](#)

PC-FAX for Windows

- [PC-FAX Overview \(Windows\)](#)
- [Send a Fax Using PC-FAX \(Windows\)](#)
- [Receive Faxes on Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)

PC-FAX Overview (Windows)

Reduce paper consumption and save time by using PC-FAX software to send faxes directly from your machine.



- [Configure PC-FAX \(Windows\)](#)
- [Configure your PC-Fax Address Book \(Windows\)](#)

Configure PC-FAX (Windows)

Before sending faxes using PC-FAX, personalise the send options in each tab of the **PC-FAX Setup** dialog box.


1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

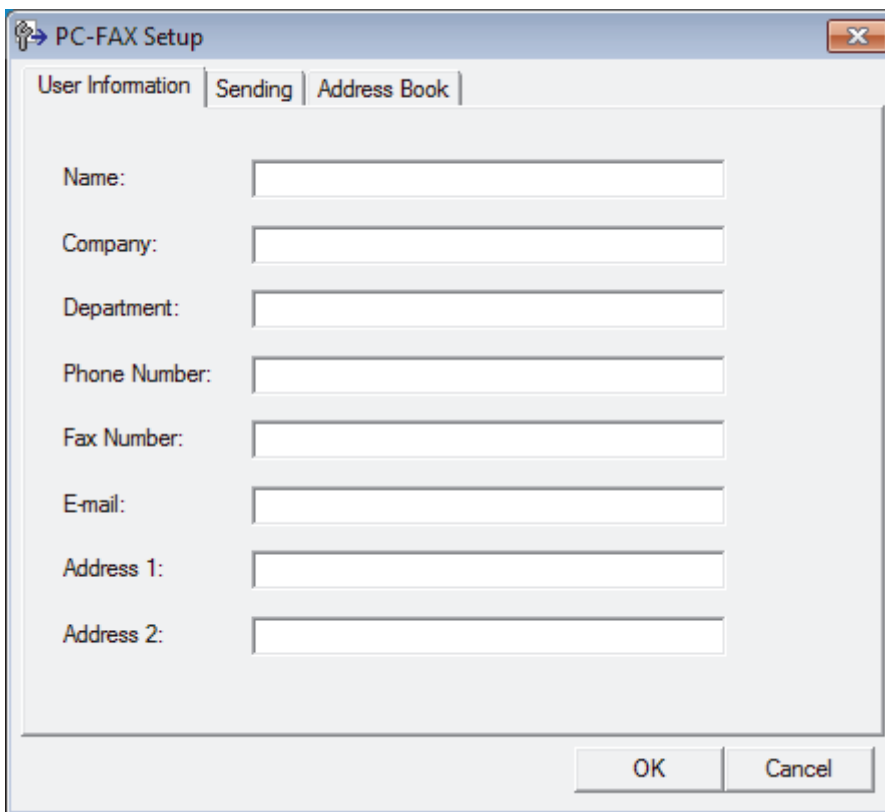
Click  (**Start**) > **All Programs** > **KONICA MINOLTA** > **KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Setup Sending**.

- (Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

Launch  (**KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Setup Sending**.

The **PC-FAX Setup** dialog box appears.



2. Do one of the following:

- Click the **User Information** tab, and then type your user information in the fields.



Each Microsoft account can have its own customised **User Information** screen for custom fax headers and cover pages.

- Click the **Sending** tab, and then type the number needed to access an outside line (if needed) in the **Outside line access** field. Select the **Include header** check box to include the header information.
- Click the **Address Book** tab, and then select the address book you want to use for PC-FAX from the **Select Address Book** drop-down list.

3. Click **OK**.



Related Information

- [PC-FAX Overview \(Windows\)](#)

Related Topics:

- [Transfer Faxes to Your Computer](#)
-

Configure your PC-Fax Address Book (Windows)

Add, edit and delete members and groups to personalise your **Address Book**.

- [Add a Member to the Address Book \(Windows\)](#)
- [Create a Group in the Address Book \(Windows\)](#)
- [Edit Member or Group Information \(Windows\)](#)
- [Delete a Member or Group \(Windows\)](#)
- [Export the Address Book \(Windows\)](#)
- [Import Information to the Address Book \(Windows\)](#)

Add a Member to the Address Book (Windows)

Add new people and their fax information to the PC-Fax Address Book if you want to send a fax using PC-Fax software.


1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

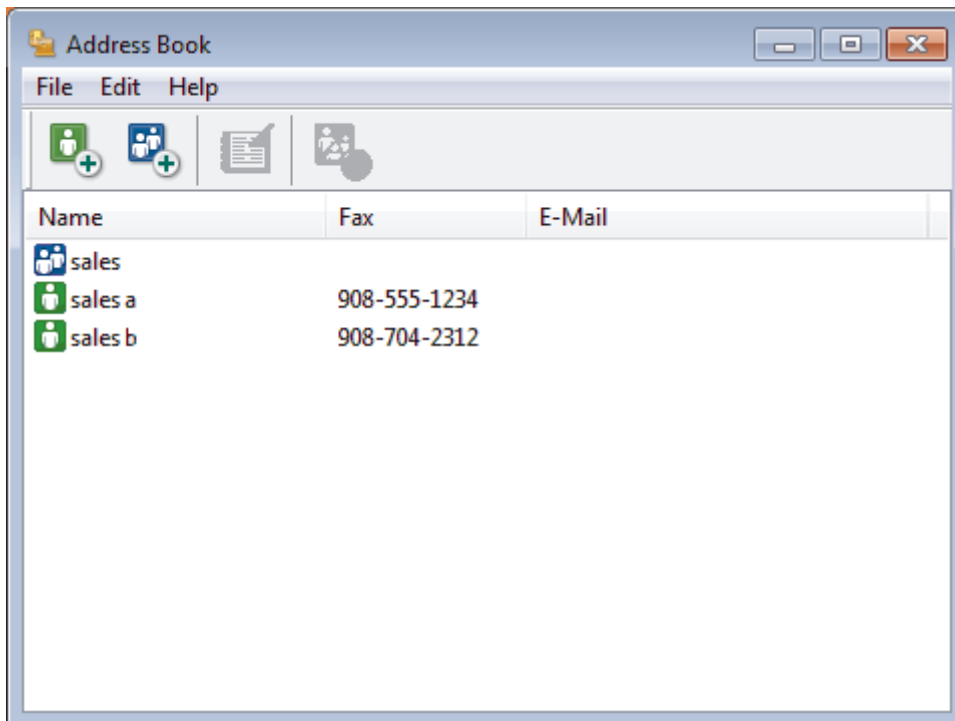
Click  (**Start**) > **All Programs** > **KONICA MINOLTA** > **KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

- (Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

Launch  (**KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

The **Address Book** dialog box appears.



2. Click .

The **Address Book Member Setup** dialog box appears.

Address Book Member Setup

Name: Title:

Company:

Department: Job Title:

Street Address:

City: State/Province:

Zip Code/Post Code: Country/Region:

Business Phone: Home Phone:

Fax: Mobile Phone:

E-Mail:

OK Cancel

3. Type the member's information in the corresponding fields. Only the **Name** field is required.
4. Click **OK**.



Related Information

- [Configure your PC-Fax Address Book \(Windows\)](#)

Create a Group in the Address Book (Windows)

Create a group to broadcast the same PC-FAX to several recipients at one time.


1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

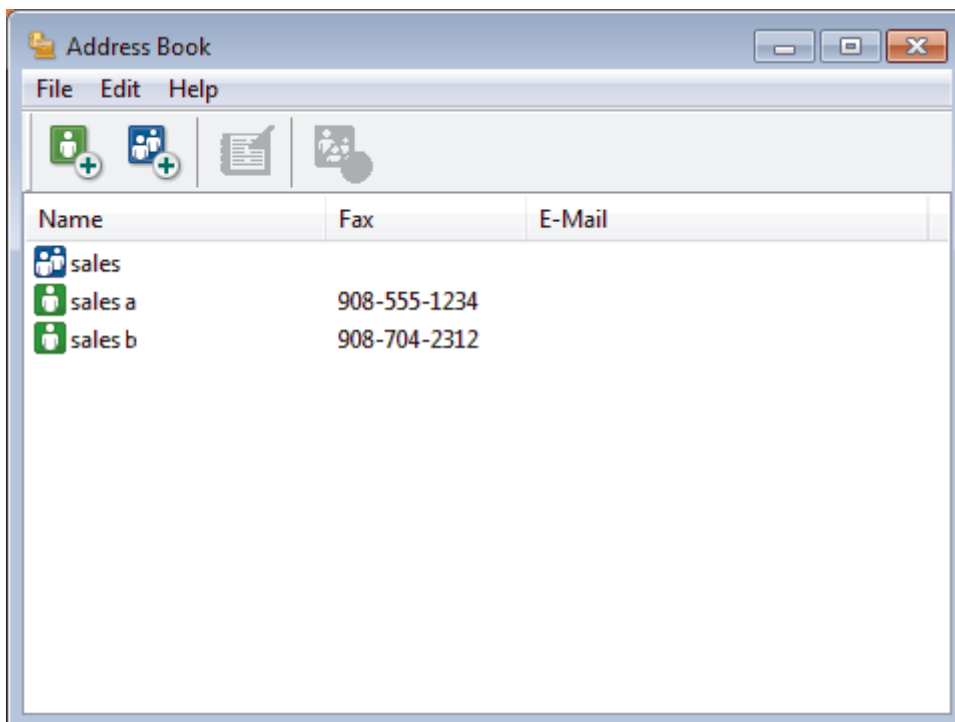
Click  (**Start**) > **All Programs** > **KONICA MINOLTA** > **KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

- (Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

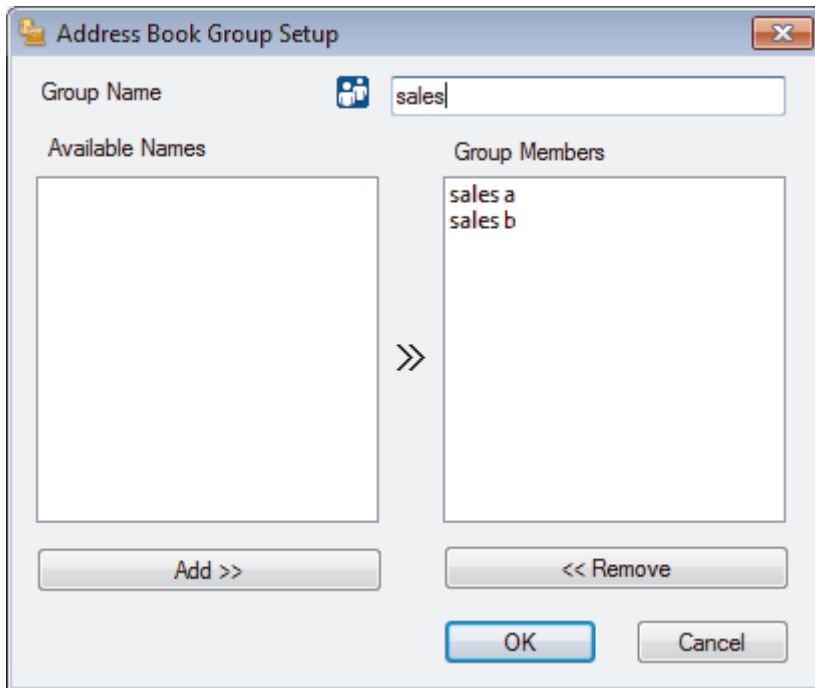
Launch  (**KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

The **Address Book** dialog box appears.



2. Click .

The **Address Book Group Setup** dialog box appears.



3. Type the name of the new group in the **Group Name** field.
4. In the **Available Names** field, select each name you want to include in the group, and then click **Add >>**. Members added to the group appear in the **Group Members** box.
5. When finished, click **OK**.



Each group can contain up to 50 members.



Related Information

- [Configure your PC-Fax Address Book \(Windows\)](#)

Edit Member or Group Information (Windows)


1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

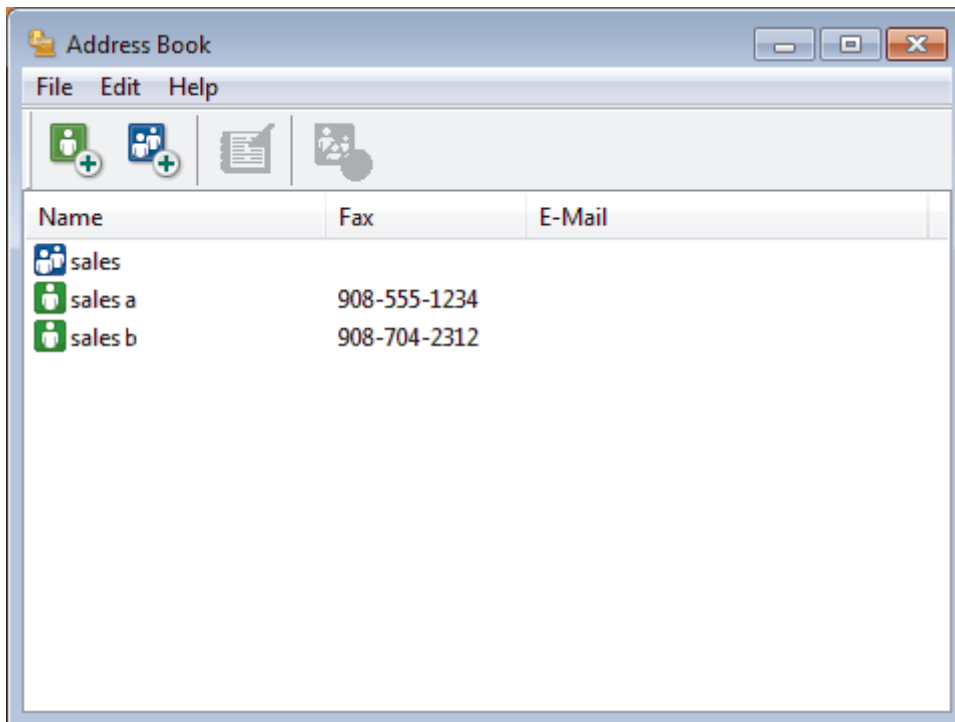
Click  (**Start**) > **All Programs** > **KONICA MINOLTA** > **KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.


Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

- (Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

Launch  (**KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

The **Address Book** dialog box appears.



2. Select the member or group you want to edit.
3. Click  (**Properties**).
4. Change the member or group information.
5. Click **OK**.



Related Information

- [Configure your PC-Fax Address Book \(Windows\)](#)

Delete a Member or Group (Windows)


1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

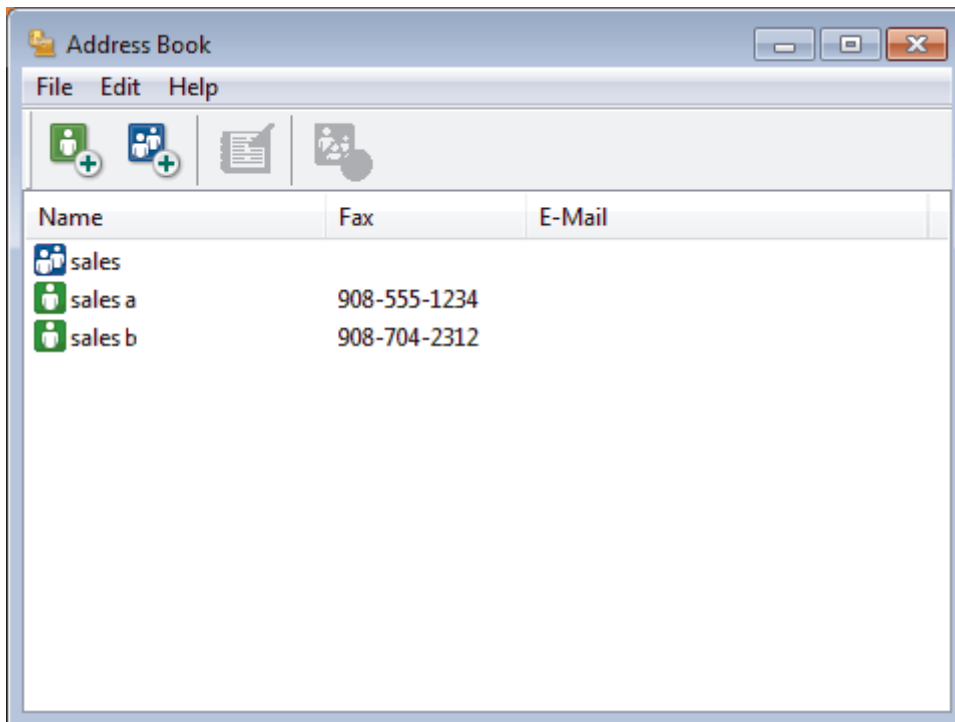
Click  (**Start**) > **All Programs** > **KONICA MINOLTA** > **KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

- (Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

Launch  (**KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

The **Address Book** dialog box appears.



2. Select the member or group you want to delete.

3. Click  (**Delete**).

4. When the confirmation dialog box appears, click **OK**.



Related Information

- [Configure your PC-Fax Address Book \(Windows\)](#)

Export the Address Book (Windows)

You can export the Address Book as an ASCII text file (*.csv), a vCard (an electronic business card), or **Remote Setup Dial Data** and save it on your computer.

- You cannot export the group settings when you export the **Address Book** data.


1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

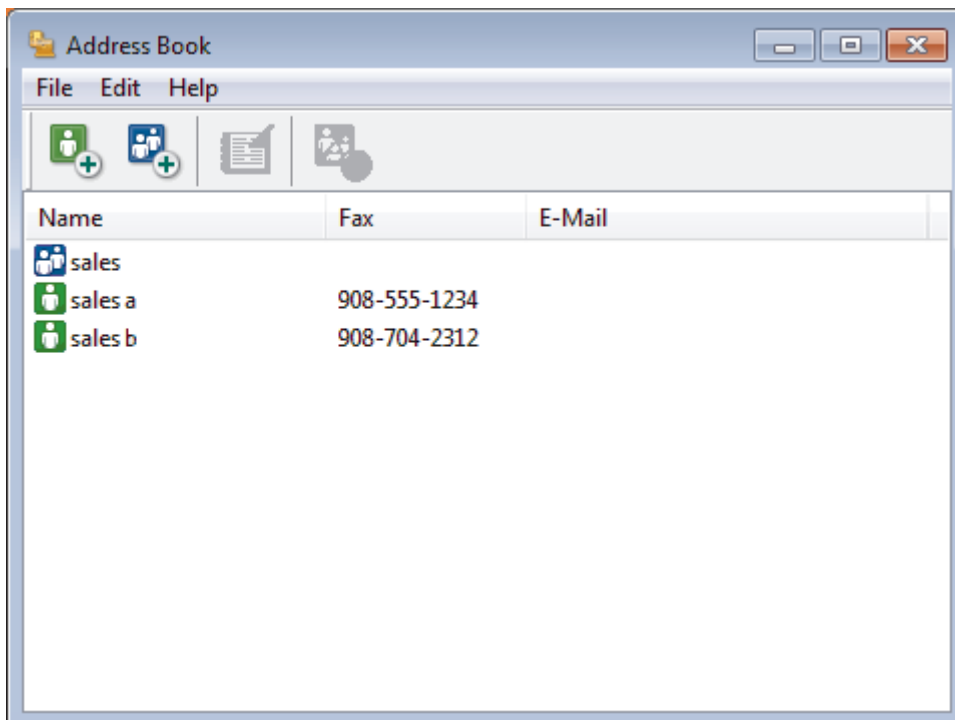
Click  (**Start**) > **All Programs** > **KONICA MINOLTA** > **KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

- (Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

Launch  (**KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

The **Address Book** dialog box appears.



2. Click the **File** menu, and then select **Export**.

3. Select one of the following:

- Text**

The **Select Items** dialog box appears. Go to step 4.

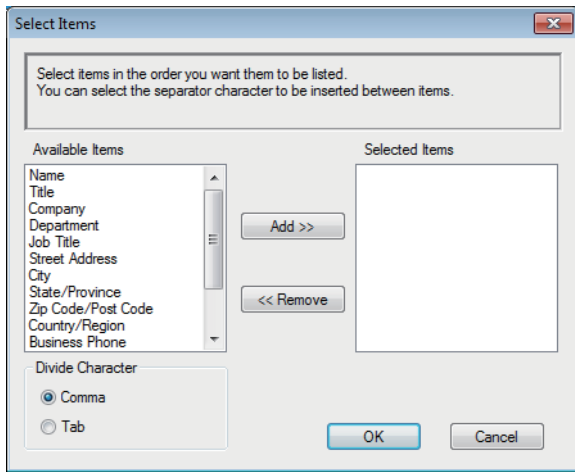
- vCard**

You must select the member you want to export from your address book before selecting this option. Browse to the folder where you want to save the vCard, type the vCard name in the **File name** field, and then click **Save**.

- Remote Setup Dial Data**

Browse to the folder where you want to save the data, type the file name in the **File name** field, and then click **Save**.

4. In the **Available Items** field, select the data you want to export, and then click **Add >>**.



Select and add the items in the order you want them listed.

5. If you are exporting to an ASCII file, under the **Divide Character** section, select the **Tab** or **Comma** option to separate the data fields.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Browse to the folder on your computer where you want to save the data, type the file name, and then click **Save**.



Related Information

- [Configure your PC-Fax Address Book \(Windows\)](#)

Import Information to the Address Book (Windows)

You can import ASCII text files (*.csv), vCards (electronic business cards), or **Remote Setup Dial Data** into your Address Book.


1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

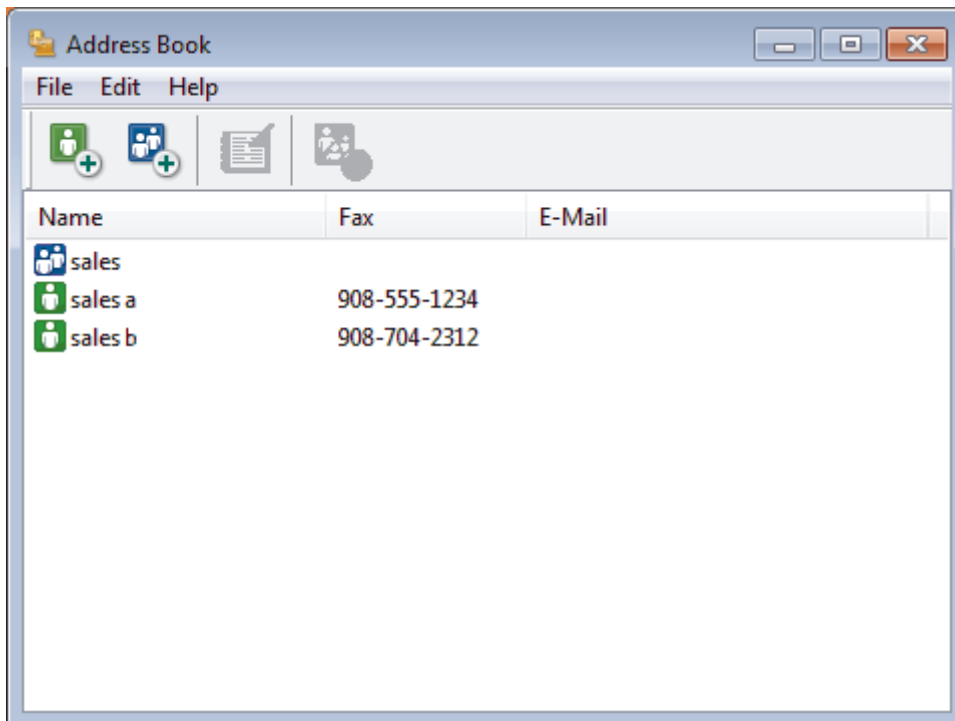
Click  (**Start**) > **All Programs** > **KONICA MINOLTA** > **KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

- (Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

Launch  (**KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Address Book (Send)**.

The **Address Book** dialog box appears.



2. Click the **File** menu, and then select **Import**.

3. Select one of the following:

- **Text**

The **Select Items** dialog box appears. Go to step 4.

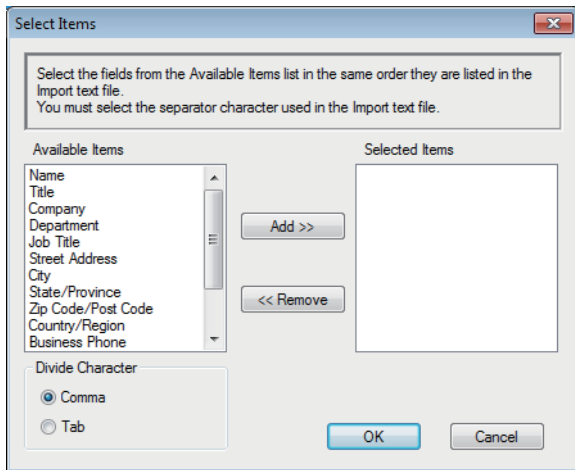
- **vCard**

Go to step 7.

- **Remote Setup Dial Data**

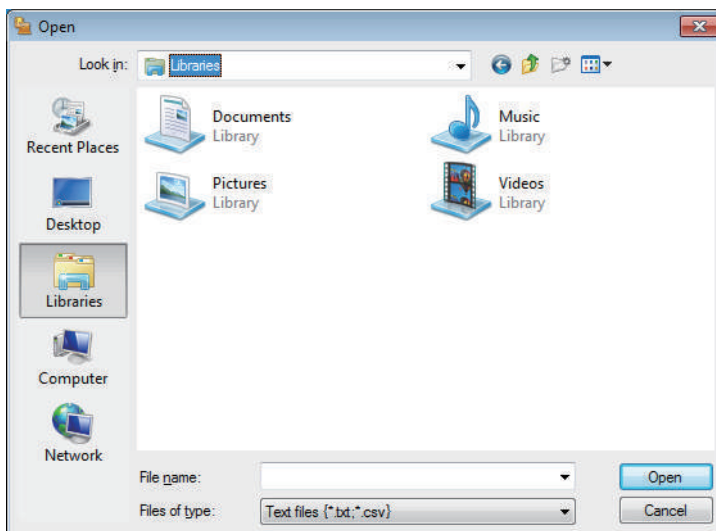
Go to step 7.

4. In the **Available Items** field, select the data you want to import, and then click **Add >>**.



You must select and add fields from the **Available Items** list in the same order they are listed in the import text file.

5. If you are importing an ASCII file, under the **Divide Character** section, select the **Tab** or **Comma** option to separate the data fields.
6. Click **OK**.
7. Browse to the folder where you want to import the data, type the file name, and then click **Open**.



Related Information

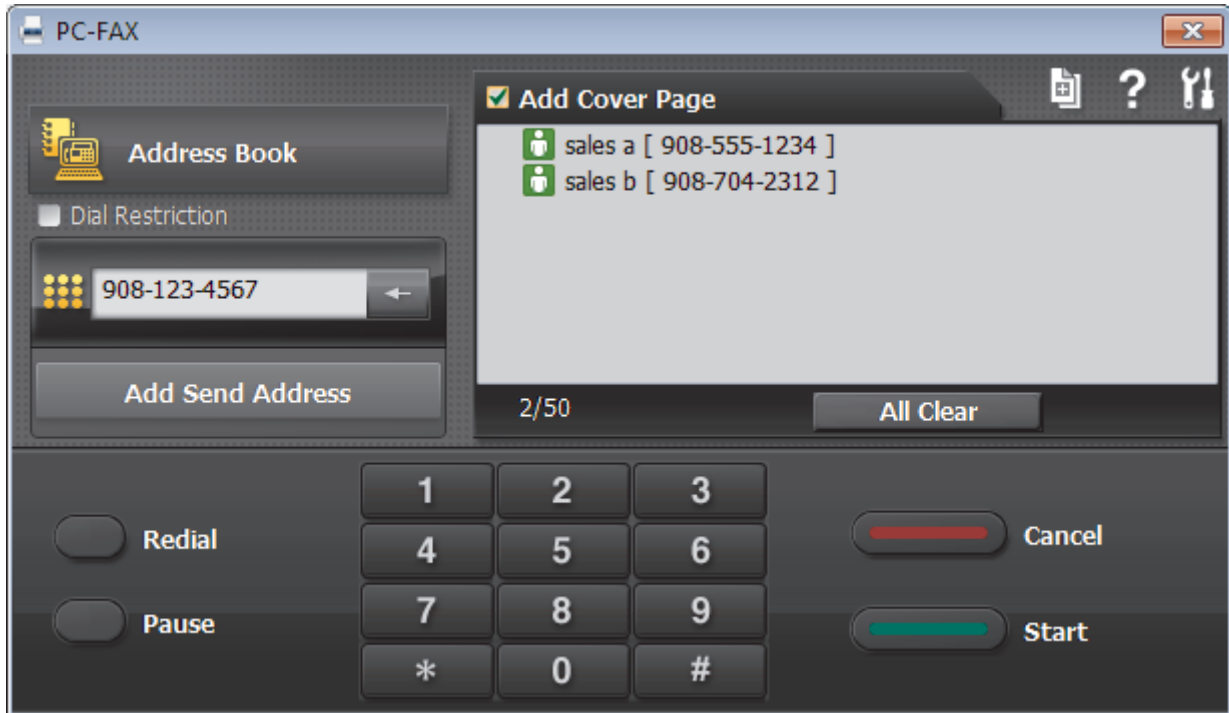
- [Configure your PC-Fax Address Book \(Windows\)](#)

Send a Fax Using PC-FAX (Windows)


PC-FAX supports only monochrome faxes. A monochrome fax will be sent even if the original data is colour and the receiving fax machine supports colour faxes.

1. Create a file in any application on your computer.
2. Select the print command in your application.
3. Select **KONICA MINOLTA XXXX PC-FAX** (where XXXX is the name of your model) as your printer, and then complete your print operation.

The **PC-FAX** dialog box appears.



4. Type a fax number using one of the following methods:
 - Click the numbers on the dial pad to type the number, and then click **Add Send Address**.

 If you select the **Dial Restriction** check box, a confirmation dialog box will appear for you to re-type the fax number using the keyboard. This feature helps to prevent transmissions to the wrong destination.

- Click the **Address Book** button, and then select a member or group from the Address Book.

 If you make a mistake, click **All Clear** to delete all entries.

5. To include a cover page, select the **Add Cover Page** check box. You can also click  to create or edit a cover page.
6. Click **Start** to send the fax.

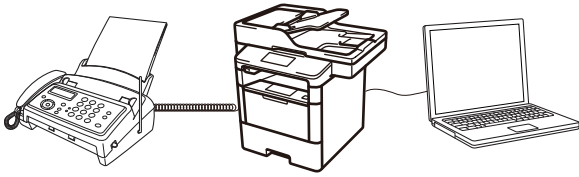
- To cancel the fax, click **Cancel**.
- To redial a number, click **Redial** to show the last five fax numbers, select a number, and then click **Start**.

Related Information

- [PC-FAX for Windows](#)

Receive Faxes on Your Computer (Windows)

Use PC-FAX software to receive faxes on your computer, screen them and print only those faxes you want.



- [Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive \(Windows\)](#)

Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive (Windows)

The PC-FAX Receive software lets you view and store faxes on your computer. It is automatically installed when you install the software and drivers and works on locally or network-connected machines.

- [PC-FAX Receive supports only monochrome faxes.](#)

When you turn off your computer, your machine will continue to receive and store faxes in your machine's memory. The machine's LCD will display the number of stored faxes received. When you start this application, the software will transfer all received faxes to your computer at once. You can enable the Backup Print option if you want the machine to print a copy of the fax before the fax is sent to your computer, or before the computer is switched off. You can configure the Backup Print settings from your machine.



Related Information

- [Receive Faxes on Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
 - [Run PC-FAX Receive on Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
 - [View Received Messages \(Windows\)](#)

Related Topics:

- [Use PC-Fax Receive to Transfer Received Faxes to Your Computer \(Windows only\)](#)

Run PC-FAX Receive on Your Computer (Windows)



We recommend selecting the **Start PC-FAX Receive on computer startup** check box so that the software runs automatically and can transfer any faxes upon computer startup.


1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

Click  (**Start**) > **All Programs** > **KONICA MINOLTA** > **KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Receive**.

- (Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

Launch  (**KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Receive**.

2. Confirm the message and click **Yes**.

The **PC-FAX Receive** window appears. The  (**PC-Fax Receive (Ready)**) icon also appears in your computer task tray.



Related Information

- [Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive \(Windows\)](#)
 - [Set Up Your Computer for PC-FAX Receiving \(Windows\)](#)
 - [Add Your Machine to PC-FAX Receiving \(Windows\)](#)

Set Up Your Computer for PC-FAX Receiving (Windows)

1. Double-click the  (PC-Fax Receive (Ready)) icon in your computer task tray.

The **PC-FAX Receive** window appears.

2. Click **Settings**.
3. Configure these options as needed:

Preferences

Configure to start PC-FAX Receive automatically when you start Windows.

Save

Configure the path to save PC-FAX files and select the received document format.

Upload to

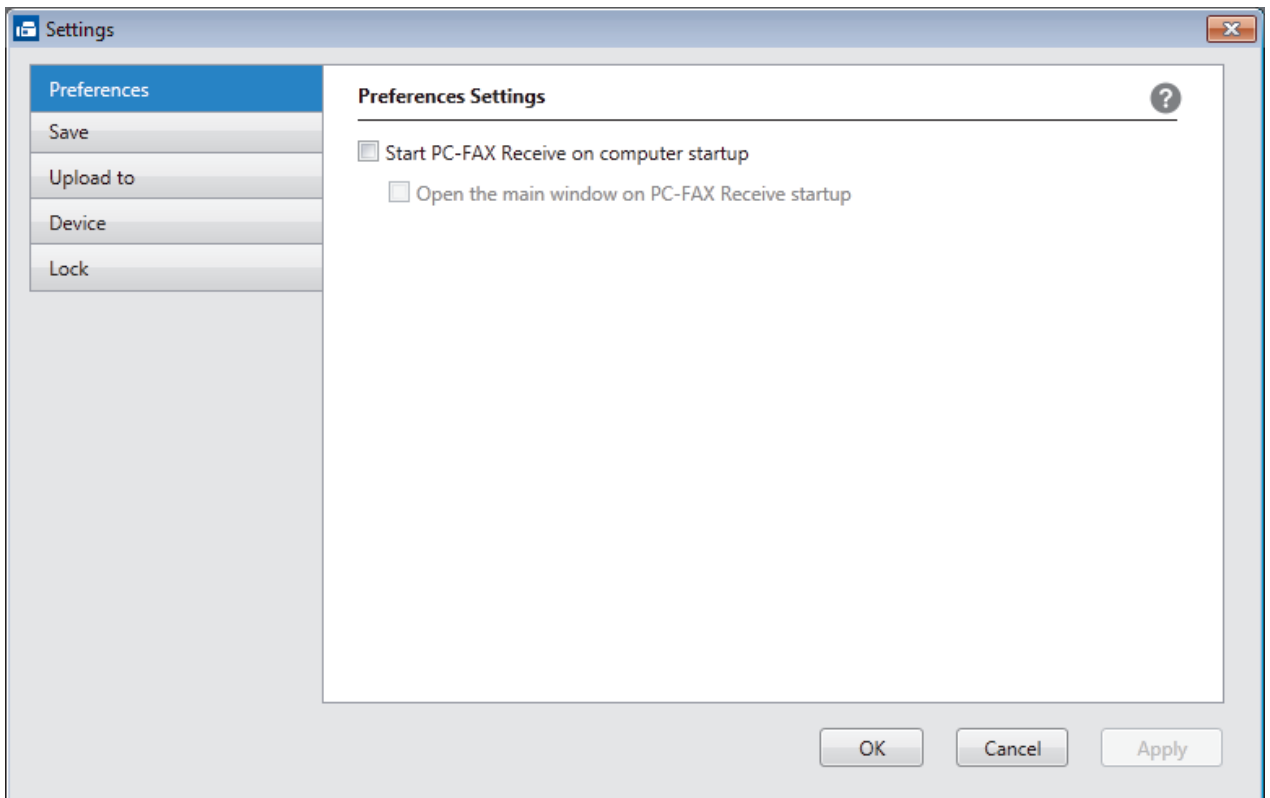
Configure the path to the SharePoint server and select the option to upload automatically or manually (available only for Administrators).

Device

Select this machine that you want to receive PC-FAX.

Lock (available only for Administrators)

Restrict users who do not have administrator privileges from configuring the settings options shown above.



4. Click **OK**.



Related Information

- [Run PC-FAX Receive on Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)

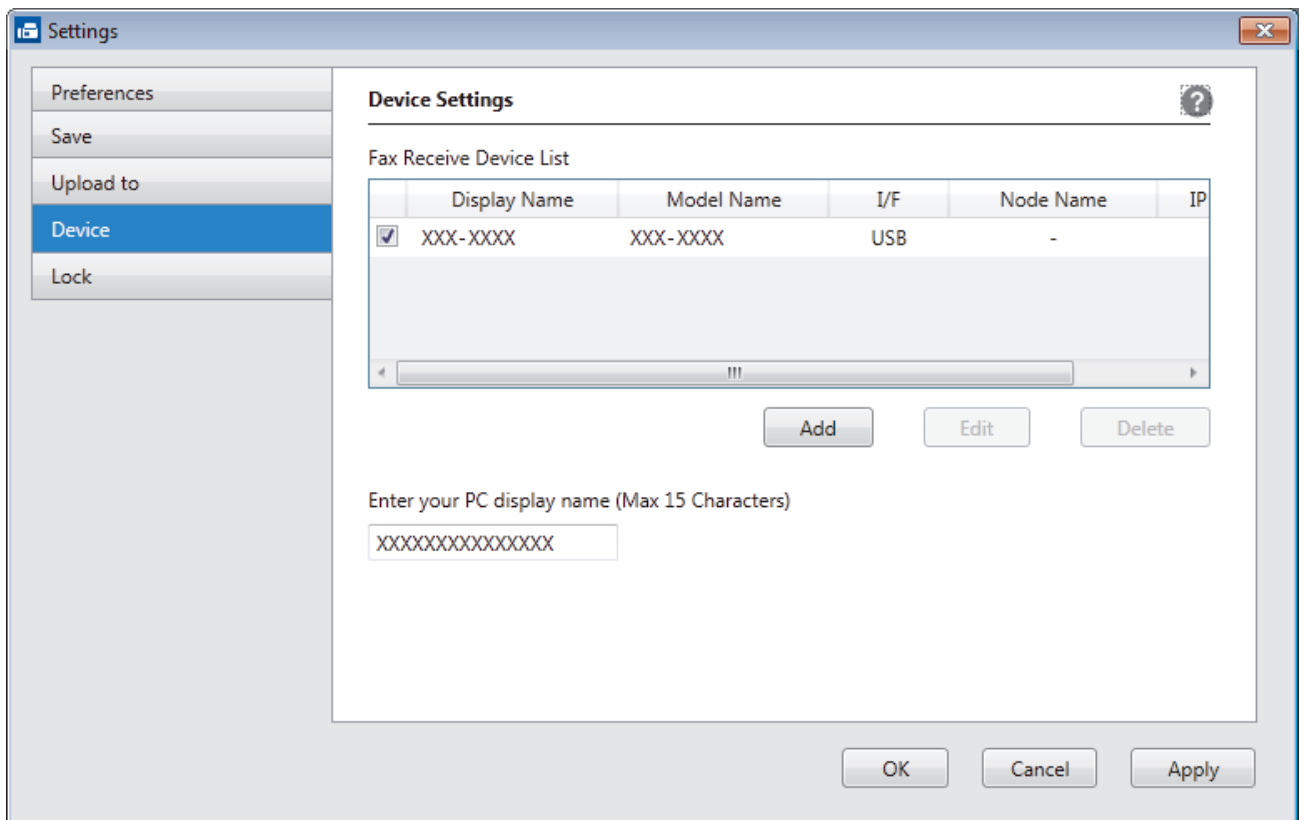
Add Your Machine to PC-FAX Receiving (Windows)

- If you installed the machine following the instructions for a network user, then the machine should already be configured for your network.

1. Double-click the  (**PC-Fax Receive (Ready)**) icon in your computer task tray.

The **PC-FAX Receive** window appears.

- Click **Settings**.
- Click **Device > Add**.



4. Select the appropriate connection method.

Select your machine from the automatic search results below.

Connected your machines will be displayed. Select a device from the list. Click **OK**.

Specify your machine by IP address

Type the machine's IP address in the **IP Address** field, and then click **OK**.

Select your machine from the automatic search results below.

Model Name	I/F	Node Name	IP Address	Location
------------	-----	-----------	------------	----------

Specify your machine by IP address

IP Address




5. To change the computer name that will appear on the machine's LCD, type the new name in the **Enter your PC display name (Max 15 Characters)** field.
6. Click **OK**.

Related Information

- [Run PC-FAX Receive on Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)

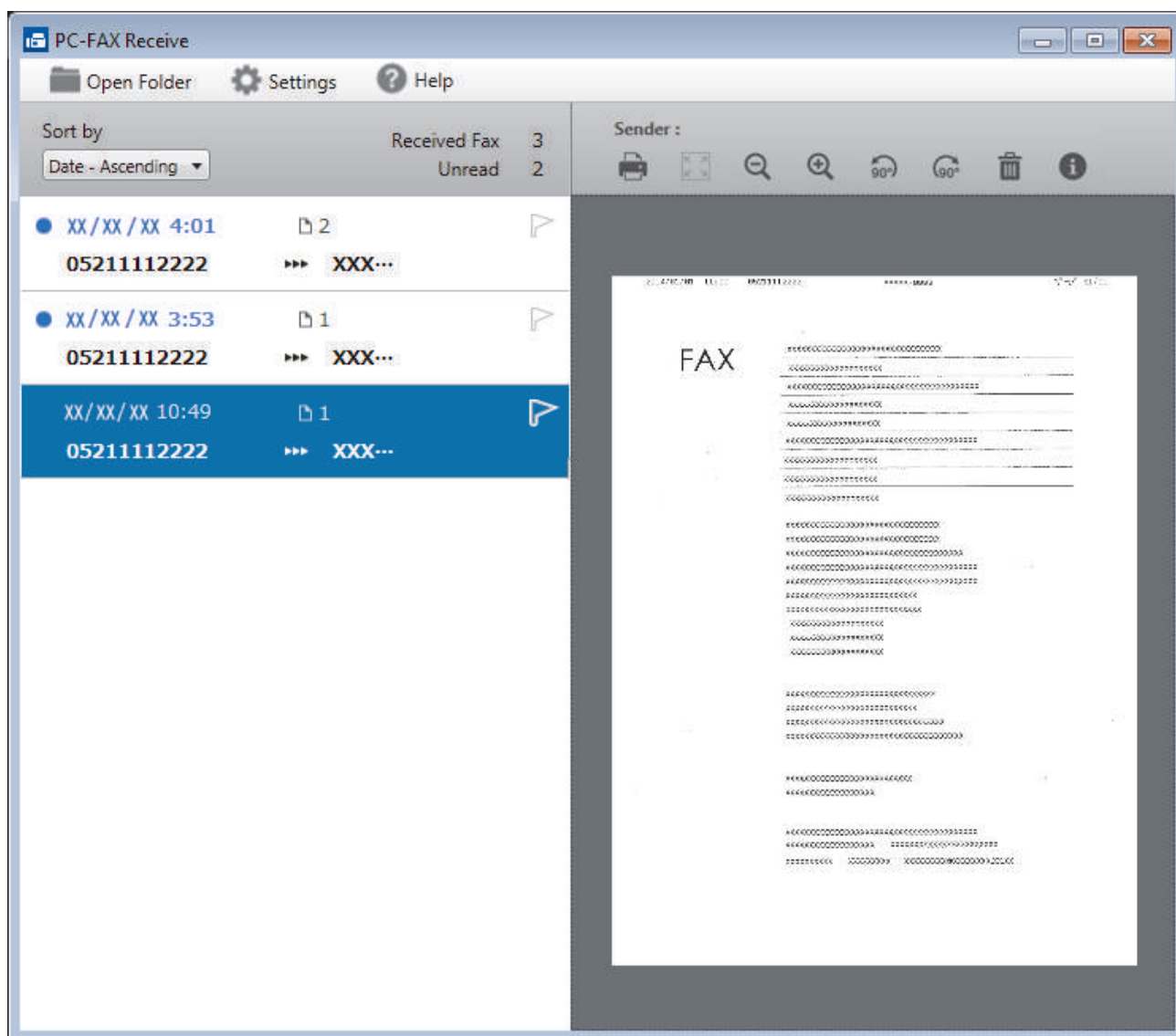
View Received Messages (Windows)


Receiving Status

Icon	Indicated Status
	Standby mode No unread messages
	Receiving messages
	Messages received Unread messages


1. Double-click the  (PC-Fax Receive (Ready)) icon in your computer task tray.

The PC-FAX Receive window appears.



2. Click any faxes in the list to view them.
3. When finished, click  in the right top corner of the window to close it.



Even after closing the window, PC-FAX Receive is active and the  (PC-Fax Receive (Ready)) icon will remain in your computer task tray. To close PC-FAX Receive, click the icon in the computer task tray and click **Close**.



Related Information

- [Receive Faxes Using PC-FAX Receive \(Windows\)](#)
-

Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive

You can print photos directly from digital camera media or a USB flash drive, or scan documents and save them directly to a USB flash drive.

Supported file types are PDF, JPEG, TIFF, XPS, and PRN.

- [Compatible USB Flash Drives](#)
- [Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive or Digital Camera Supporting Mass Storage](#)
- [Create a PRN File for Direct Printing \(Windows\)](#)

Compatible USB Flash Drives

IMPORTANT

The USB direct interface supports only USB flash drives, PictBridge-compatible cameras and digital cameras that use the USB mass storage standard. Other USB devices are not supported.

Compatible USB Flash Drives	
USB Class	USB Mass Storage Class
USB Mass Storage Sub Class	SCSI or SFF-8070i
Transfer protocol	Bulk transfer Only
Format ¹	FAT32/exFAT
Sector size	Max. 4096 Byte
Encryption	Encrypted devices are not supported.



Related Information

- [Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive](#)

¹ NTFS format is not supported.

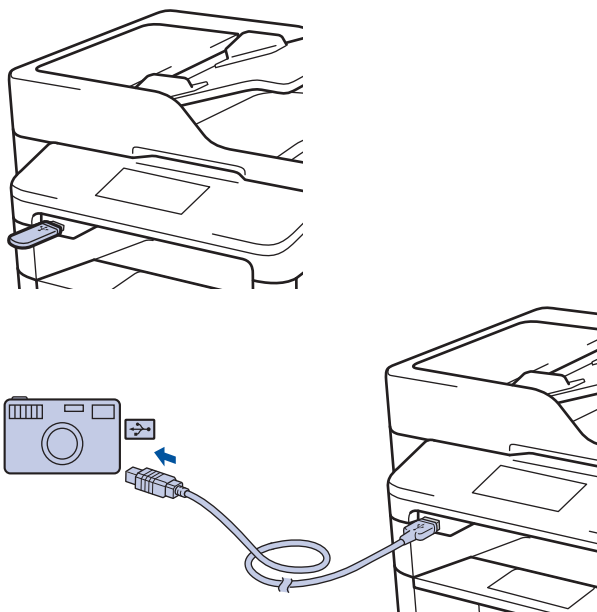
Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive or Digital Camera Supporting Mass Storage

- Make sure your digital camera is turned on.
- Your digital camera must be switched from PictBridge mode to mass storage mode.

IMPORTANT

To prevent damage to your machine, DO NOT connect any device other than a digital camera or USB flash drive to the USB direct interface.

1. Connect your USB flash drive or digital camera to the USB direct interface on the front of the machine. The touchscreen will automatically display the USB menu to confirm the USB flash drive or digital camera is correctly connected.



- If an error occurs, the USB menu will not appear on the touchscreen.
- When the machine is in Deep Sleep mode, the touchscreen does not display any information even if you connect a USB flash drive to the USB direct interface. Press the touchscreen to wake up the machine.

2. Press [Direct Print].

If your machine has been set to Secure Function Lock On, you may not be able to access Direct Print.

3. Swipe up or down, or press ▲ or ▼ to display the file you want to print, and then select the file.


To print an index of the files, press [Index Print] on the touchscreen. Press [Yes] to print the data.

4. Do one of the following:
 - To change the settings, press [Print Settings]. Go to the next step.
 - If you want to use the default settings, enter the number of copies, and then press [Start].
5. Select the print settings you want to change:
 - [Paper Type]
 - [Paper Size]

-
- [Multiple Page]
 - [Orientation]
 - [2-sided]
 - [Collate]
 - [Tray Use]
 - [Print Quality]
 - [PDF Option]

NOTE

Depending on the file type, some of these settings may not appear.

6. Press [OK].
7. Enter the number of copies you want.
8. Press [Start] to print the data.
9. Press .

IMPORTANT

DO NOT remove the USB flash drive or digital camera from the USB direct interface until the machine has finished printing.



Related Information

- [Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive](#)
-

Create a PRN File for Direct Printing (Windows)

These instructions may vary depending on your print application and operating system.

1. Select the print command in your application.
2. Select your model, and then select the print to file option.
3. Complete your print operation.
4. Enter the required information to save the file.



If the computer prompts you to enter a file name only, you can also specify the folder where you want to save the file by typing the directory name (for example: C:\Temp\FileName.prn).

If a USB flash drive is connected to your computer, you can save the file directly to the USB flash drive.



Related Information

- [Print Data Directly from a USB Flash Drive](#)

Network

- [Get Started](#)
- [Network Management Software and Utilities](#)
- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)
- [Advanced Network Features](#)
- [Technical Information for Advanced Users](#)

Get Started

We recommend setting up and connecting to your network using the Drivers & Utilities CD. This section provides more information about network connection types, introduces various methods to manage your network and explains some useful network features of your machine.

- [Supported Basic Network Features](#)

Supported Basic Network Features

The print server supports various features depending on the operating system. Use this table to see which network features and connections are supported by each operating system.

Operating Systems	Windows 7 Windows 8.1 Windows 10	Windows Server 2008/2012/ 2012 R2/2016/2019	OS X v10.10.x OS X v10.11.x macOS v10.12.x macOS v10.13.x macOS v10.14.x
Printing	Yes	Yes	Yes
Scanning	Yes		Yes
PC Fax Send	Yes		
PC Fax Receive	Yes		
Web Based Management	Yes	Yes	Yes
Remote Setup	Yes		



Related Information

- [Get Started](#)

Network Management Software and Utilities

Configure and change your machine's network settings using a management utility.

- [Learn about Network Management Software and Utilities](#)
- [Change Machine Settings from Your Computer](#)
- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Learn about Network Management Software and Utilities

Web Based Management

Web Based Management is a utility that uses a standard web browser to manage your machine using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS). Type your machine's IP address into your web browser to access and change your print server settings.

Remote Setup (Windows)

Remote Setup is a program for configuring many machine and network settings from a Windows application. When you start this application, the settings on your machine are automatically downloaded to your computer and displayed on your computer screen. If you change the settings, you can upload them directly to the machine.



This utility can be used for either a USB or a network connection.



Related Information

- [Network Management Software and Utilities](#)
-

Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network

To connect your machine to your wireless network, we recommend using the Drivers & Utilities CD.

- [Before Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode \(For IEEE 802.11b/g/n\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network](#)
- [Use Wi-Fi Direct®](#)

Before Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network

Before attempting to configure a wireless network, confirm the following:

- Before configuring wireless settings, you must know your Network name (SSID) and Network Key. If you are using an enterprise wireless network, you must know the User ID and Password.



If you do not know the security information, please consult the router manufacture, your system administrator, or your Internet provider.

- To achieve optimum results with normal everyday document printing, place this machine as close to the wireless LAN access point/router as possible with minimal obstructions. Large objects and walls between the two devices and interference from other electronic devices can affect the data transfer speed of your documents.

Due to these factors, wireless may not be the best method of connection for all types of documents and applications. If you are printing large files, such as multi-page documents with mixed text and large graphics, you may want to consider selecting wired Ethernet for faster data transfer, or USB for the fastest throughput speed.

- Although this machine can be used in both a wired and wireless network, only one connection method can be used at a time. However, a wireless network connection and Wi-Fi Direct connection, or a wired network connection and Wi-Fi Direct connection can be used at the same time.



Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)

Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network

1. Turn on your computer and put the Drivers & Utilities CD into your CD-ROM drive.
2. The opening screen appears automatically.


Choose your language, and then follow the on-screen instructions.



- (Windows7)

If the screen does not appear automatically, go to **Computer**. Double-click the CD-ROM icon, and then double-click **start.exe**.

- (Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

Click the  (**File Explorer**) icon on the taskbar, and then go to **This PC**. Double-click the CD-ROM icon, and then double-click **start.exe**.

- If the **User Account Control** screen appears, click **Yes**.

3. Choose **Wireless Network Connection (Wi-Fi)**, and then click **Next**.
4. Follow the on-screen instructions.

After you have completed the wireless setup, the installer program walks you through installing the drivers and software necessary for operating your device. Click **Next** in the installation dialog box and follow the on-screen instructions.



Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)


Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)

If your wireless access point/router supports WPS (Push Button Configuration), you can use WPS from your machine's control panel menu to configure your wireless network settings.



Routers or access points that support WPS are marked with this symbol:



1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [WPS].
2. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes].
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
3. When the touchscreen displays [Start WPS on your wireless access point/router, then press [OK].], press the WPS button on your wireless access point/router. Then press [OK] on your machine. Your machine will automatically detect your wireless access point/router and try to connect to your wireless network.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)

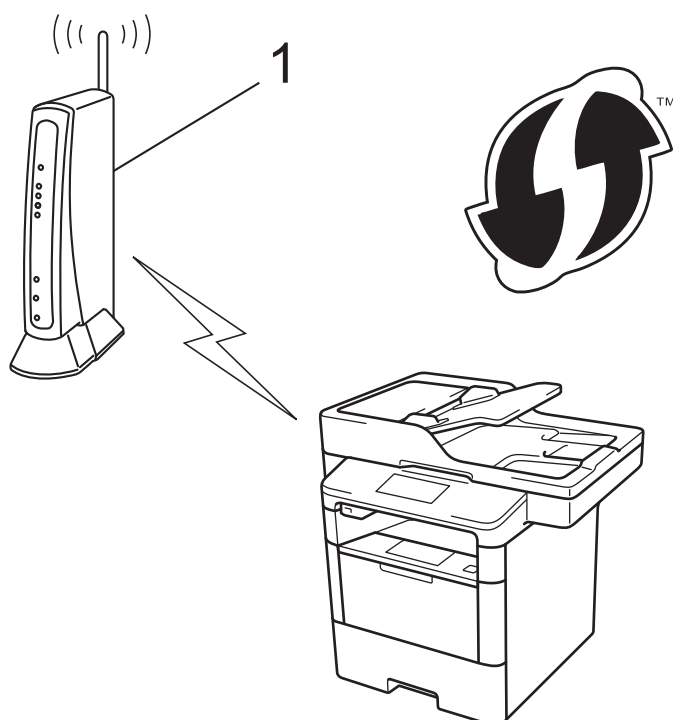
Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)

If your wireless LAN access point/router supports WPS, you can use the Personal Identification Number (PIN) Method to configure your wireless network settings.

The PIN Method is one of the connection methods developed by the Wi-Fi Alliance®. By submitting a PIN created by an Enrollee (your machine) to the Registrar (a device that manages the wireless LAN), you can set up the wireless network and security settings. For more information on how to access WPS mode, see the instructions provided with your wireless access point/router.

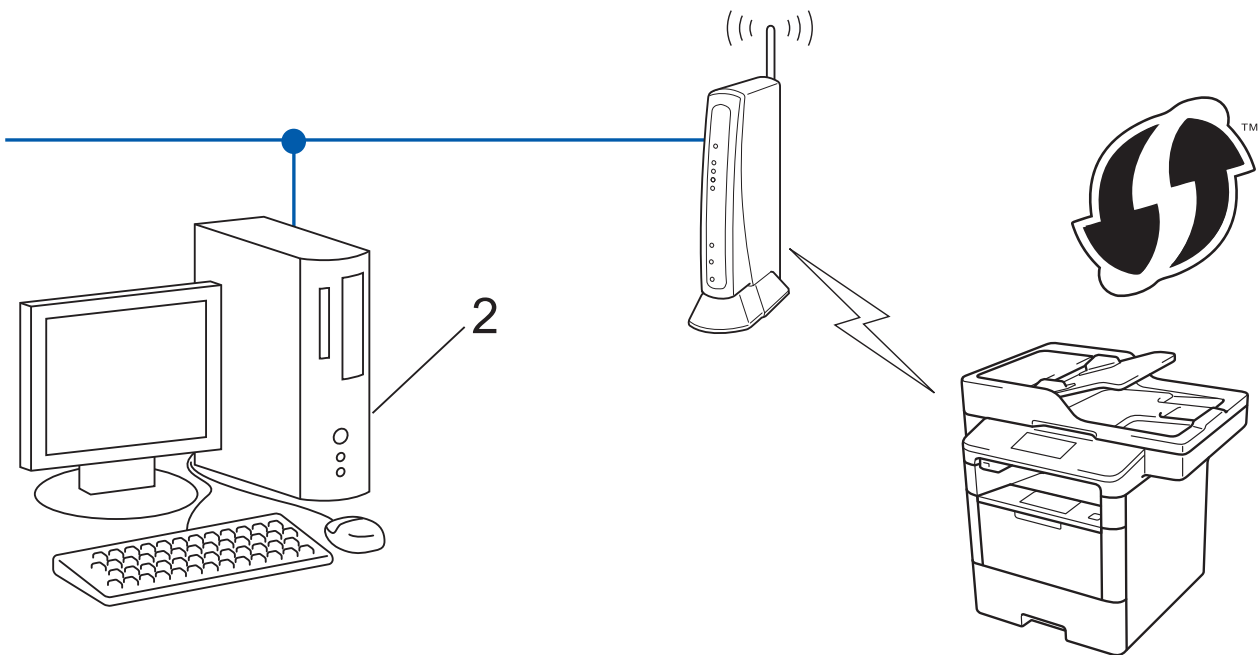
Type A


Connection when the wireless LAN access point/router (1) doubles as Registrar.




Type B


Connection when another device (2), such as a computer, is used as Registrar.





 Routers or access points that support WPS are marked with this symbol:



1. Press [] [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [WPS w/ PIN Code].
2. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes].
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
3. The LCD displays an eight-digit PIN and the machine starts searching for a wireless LAN access point/router.
4. Using a computer that is on the network, type "http://access point's IP address" in your browser (where "access point's IP address" is the IP address of the device that is being used as the Registrar).
5. Go to the WPS settings page and type the PIN, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

- 
- The Registrar is usually the wireless LAN access point/router.
 - The settings page will differ depending on the brand of wireless LAN access point/router. For more information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.

If you are using a Windows 7, Windows 8.1, or Windows 10 computer as a Registrar, complete the following steps:

6. Do one of the following:
 - (Windows 7)
Click  (Start) > **Devices and Printers > Add a device.**
 - (Windows 8.1)
Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click **Settings > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Devices and Printers > Add a device.**
 - (Windows 10)
Click  > **Windows System > Control Panel.** In the **Hardware and Sound** group, click **Add a device.**



- To use a Windows 7, Windows 8.1, or Windows 10 computer as a Registrar, you must register it to your network in advance. For more information, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router.
 - If you use Windows 7, Windows 8.1, or Windows 10 as a Registrar, you can install the printer driver after the wireless configuration by following the on-screen instructions.
-

7. Select your machine and click **Next**.
8. Type the PIN displayed on the machine's LCD, and then click **Next**.
9. Select your network, and then click **Next**.
10. Click **Close**.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)

Related Topics:


- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
-

Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode (For IEEE 802.11b/g/n)

- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using a New SSID](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using an Existing SSID](#)

Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using a New SSID

You must connect to a new SSID from your computer when it is configured for Ad-Hoc mode.

1. Press [] [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [Setup Wizard].
2. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes].
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
3. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display [<New SSID>]. Press [<New SSID>], and then press [OK].
4. Enter the SSID name, and then press [OK].
5. Press [Ad-hoc] when instructed.
6. Select the Encryption type [None] or [WEP].
7. If you selected the [WEP] option for Encryption type, select and enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].



- Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

8. The machine will attempt to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



Related Information

- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode \(For IEEE 802.11b/g/n\)](#)

Related Topics:

- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)

Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using an Existing SSID

If you are trying to pair your machine to a computer that is already in Ad-Hoc mode and has a configured SSID, use these instructions.

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings of the computer to which you are connecting.



The wireless network settings of the computer you are connecting with must be set to Ad-Hoc mode with an SSID already configured. For more information on how to configure your computer in Ad-Hoc mode, see the instructions included with your computer or contact your network administrator.

Network Name (SSID)		
Communication Mode	Encryption Mode	Network Key
Ad-Hoc	NONE	-
	WEP	

For example:

Network Name (SSID)		
HELLO		
Communication Mode	Encryption Mode	Network Key
Ad-Hoc	WEP	12345



Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

2. Press [F12] [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [Setup Wizard].
3. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes].
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
4. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. If a list of SSIDs is displayed, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the SSID to which you want to connect, and then press the SSID.
5. Press [OK].
6. Enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].



Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

7. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



Related Information

- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode \(For IEEE 802.11b/g/n\)](#)

Related Topics:

- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)

Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings of the computer to which you are connecting.

Network Name (SSID)

Network Key

For example:

Network Name (SSID)
HELLO


Network Key
12345



- Your access point/router may support the use of multiple WEP keys, however your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.
- If you need assistance during setup and want to contact customer support, make sure you have your SSID (Network Name) and Network Key ready. We cannot assist you in locating this information.
- If you do not know this information (SSID and Network Key), you cannot continue the wireless setup.

How can I find this information?

- a. Check the documentation provided with your wireless access point/router.
- b. The initial SSID could be the manufacturer's name or the model name.
- c. If you do not know the security information, please consult the router manufacturer, your system administrator, or your Internet provider.

2. On your machine's LCD, press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [Setup Wizard].
3. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes].
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
4. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs.
If a list of SSIDs is displayed, swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the SSID to which you want to connect, and then press the SSID.
5. Press [OK].
6. Do one of the following:
 - If you are using an authentication and encryption method that requires a Network Key, enter the Network Key you wrote down in the first step.
When you have entered all the characters, press [OK].
 - If your authentication method is Open System and your encryption mode is None, go to the next step.
7. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
 - [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
-

Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings.

Network Name (SSID)			
Communication Mode	Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	Network Key
Infrastructure	Open System	NONE	-
		WEP	
	Shared Key	WEP	
	WPA/WPA2-PSK	AES	
		TKIP (TKIP is supported for WPA-PSK only.)	

For example:

Network Name (SSID)			
HELLO			
Communication Mode	Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	Network Key
Infrastructure	WPA2-PSK	AES	12345678



If your router uses WEP encryption, enter the key used as the first WEP key. Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

2. Press [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [Setup Wizard].
3. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes].
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
4. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display [<New SSID>]. Press [<New SSID>], and then press [OK].
5. Enter the SSID name, and then press [OK].
6. Press [Infrastructure] when instructed.
7. Select the Authentication Method.
8. Do one of the following:
 - If you selected the [Open System] option, press the Encryption type [None] or [WEP].
If you selected the [WEP] option for Encryption type, select and enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].
 - If you selected the [Shared Key] option, select and enter the WEP key, and then press [OK].
 - If you selected the [WPA/WPA2-PSK] option, press the Encryption type [TKIP+AES] or [AES].
Enter the WPA key, and then press [OK].



- Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.

9. The machine will attempt to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration](#)
 - [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
 - [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
-

Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network

Before configuring your machine, we recommend writing down your wireless network settings. You will need this information before you continue with the configuration.

1. Check and record the current wireless network settings.

Network Name (SSID)

Communication Mode	Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	User ID	Password
Infrastructure	LEAP	CKIP		
		AES		
	EAP-FAST/NONE	TKIP		
		AES		
	EAP-FAST/MS-CHAPv2	TKIP		
		AES		
	EAP-FAST/GTC	TKIP		
		AES		
	PEAP/MS-CHAPv2	TKIP		
		AES		
	PEAP/GTC	TKIP		
		AES		
	EAP-TTLS/CHAP	TKIP		
		AES		
	EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAP	TKIP		
		AES		
	EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAPv2	TKIP		
		AES		
EAP-TTLS/PAP	TKIP			
	AES			
EAP-TLS	TKIP			-
	AES			-

For example:

Network Name (SSID)
HELLO

Communication Mode	Authentication Method	Encryption Mode	User ID	Password
Infrastructure	EAP-FAST/MS-CHAPv2	AES	User001	12345678



- If you configure your machine using EAP-TLS authentication, you must install the client certificate issued by a CA before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the client certificate. If you have installed more than one certificate, we recommend writing down the certificate name you want to use.
- If you verify your machine using the common name of the server certificate, we recommend writing down the common name before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the common name of the server certificate.

2. Press [] [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [WLAN] > [Setup Wizard].
3. When [Enable WLAN?] appears, press [Yes].
This will start the wireless setup wizard. To cancel, press [No].
4. The machine will search for your network and display a list of available SSIDs. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display [<New SSID>]. Press [<New SSID>], and then press [OK].
5. Enter the SSID name, and then press [OK].
6. Press [Infrastructure] when instructed.
7. Select the Authentication Method.
8. Do one of the following:
 - If you selected the [LEAP] option, enter the user ID, and then press [OK]. Enter the Password, and then press [OK].
 - If you selected the [EAP-FAST], [PEAP] or [EAP-TTLS] option, select the Inner Authentication method [NONE], [CHAP], [MS-CHAP], [MS-CHAPv2], [GTC] or [PAP].



Depending on your Authentication method, the Inner Authentication method selections differ.

Select the encryption type [TKIP+AES] or [AES].

Select the verification method [No Verification], [CA] or [CA + Server ID].

- If you selected the [CA + Server ID] option, enter the server ID, user ID and password (if required), and then press [OK] for each option.
- For other selections, enter the user ID and Password, and then press [OK] for each option.



If you have not imported a CA certificate into your machine, the machine displays [No Verification].

- If you selected the [EAP-TLS] option, select the encryption type [TKIP+AES] or [AES].
The machine will display a list of available Client Certificates, and then select the certificate.
Select the verification method [No Verification], [CA] or [CA + Server ID].
 - If you selected the [CA + Server ID] option, enter the server ID and user ID, and then press [OK] for each option.
 - For other selections, enter the user ID, and then press [OK].



If you have not imported a CA certificate into your machine, the machine displays [No Verification].

9. The machine attempts to connect to the wireless device you have selected.

If your wireless device is connected successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected].



Related Information

- [Additional Methods of Configuring Your Machine for a Wireless Network](#)

Related Topics:

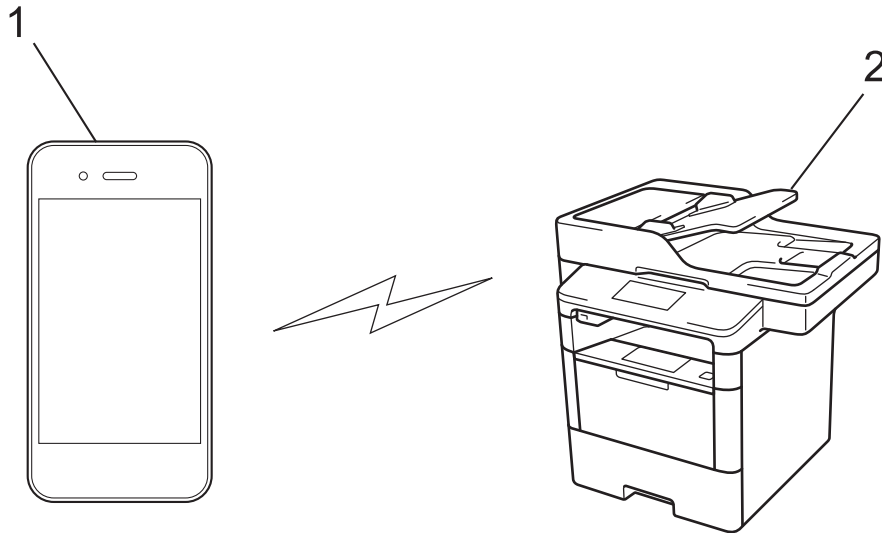
- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)

Use Wi-Fi Direct®

- [Print or Scan from Your Mobile Device Using Wi-Fi Direct](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)
- [I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration](#)

Print or Scan from Your Mobile Device Using Wi-Fi Direct

Wi-Fi Direct is one of the wireless configuration methods developed by the Wi-Fi Alliance®. It allows you to configure a secured wireless network between your machine and a mobile device, such as an Android™ device, Windows Phone device, iPhone, iPod touch, or iPad, without using an access point. Wi-Fi Direct supports wireless network configuration using the one-push or PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS). You can also configure a wireless network by manually setting an SSID and password. Your machine's Wi-Fi Direct feature supports WPA2™ security with AES encryption.



1. Mobile device
2. Your machine



- Although your machine can be used in both a wired and wireless network, only one connection method can be used at a time. However, a wireless network connection and Wi-Fi Direct connection, or a wired network connection and Wi-Fi Direct connection can be used at the same time.
- The Wi-Fi Direct-supported device can become a Group Owner (G/O). When configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, the G/O serves as an access point.
- Ad-hoc mode and Wi-Fi Direct cannot be used at the same time. Disable one function to enable the other. If you want to use Wi-Fi Direct while you are using Ad-hoc mode, set Network I/F to Wired LAN or disable Ad-hoc mode and connect your machine to the access point.



Related Information

- [Use Wi-Fi Direct®](#)

Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network

Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings from your machine's control panel.

- [Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually](#)

Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview

The following instructions offer five methods for configuring your machine in a wireless network environment. Select the method you prefer for your environment.

Check your mobile device for configuration.

1. Does your mobile device support Wi-Fi Direct?

Option	Description
Yes	Go to Step 2
No	Go to Step 3

2. Does your mobile device support one-push configuration for Wi-Fi Direct?

Option	Description
Yes	See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method.
No	See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method.

3. Does your mobile device support Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)?

Option	Description
Yes	Go to Step 4
No	See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually.

4. Does your mobile device support one-push configuration for Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)?

Option	Description
Yes	See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS).
No	See <i>Related Information</i> : Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS).

To use Konica Minolta Mobile Print functionality in a Wi-Fi Direct network configured by one-push configuration using Wi-Fi Direct or by PIN Method configuration using Wi-Fi Direct, the device you use to configure Wi-Fi Direct must be running Android™ 4.0 or greater.



Related Information

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)

Related Topics:


- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually](#)


Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method

If your mobile device supports Wi-Fi Direct, follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network.



When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will appear on the LCD. Press [OK] to connect.

1. Press [] [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Push Button].
2. Activate Wi-Fi Direct on your mobile device when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then Press [OK].] appears on the machine's LCD. Press [OK] on your machine.

This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup. To cancel, press .

3. Do one of the following:
 - When your machine is the Group Owner (G/O), connect your mobile device to the machine directly.
 - When your machine is not the G/O, it displays available device names with which to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network. Select the mobile device you want to connect to. Search for available devices again by pressing [Rescan].
4. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.



Related Information

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)

Related Topics:


- [Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview](#)


Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the One-Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)

If your mobile device supports WPS (PBC; Push Button Configuration), follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network.



When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will appear on the LCD. Press [OK] to connect.

1. Press [] [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Group Owner].
2. Press [On].
3. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to select the [Push Button] option. Press [Push Button].
4. Activate your mobile device's WPS one-push configuration method when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then Press [OK].] appears on the machine's LCD. Press [OK] on your machine.

This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup. To cancel, press .

5. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.



Related Information

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview](#)

Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method

If your mobile device supports the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Direct, follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network:



When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will appear on the LCD. Press [OK] to connect.

1. Press [] [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [PIN Code].
2. Activate Wi-Fi Direct on your mobile device when [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then Press [OK].] appears on the machine's LCD. Press [OK] on your machine.

This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup. To cancel, press .

3. Do one of the following:
 - When your machine is the Group Owner (G/O), it will wait for a connection request from your mobile device. When [PIN Code] appears, enter the PIN displayed on your mobile device in the machine. Press [OK] to complete the setup.
If the PIN is displayed on your machine, enter the PIN in your mobile device.
 - When your machine is not the G/O, it displays available device names with which to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network. Select the mobile device you want to connect to. Search for available devices again by pressing [Rescan].
4. Do one of the following:
 - Press [Display PIN Code] to display the PIN on your machine and enter the PIN in your mobile device. Go to the next step.
 - Press [Input PIN Code] to enter the PIN displayed on your mobile device in the machine, and then press [OK]. Go to the next step.
If your mobile device does not display a PIN, press on your machine. Go back to the first step and try again.
5. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.



Related Information

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview](#)

Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS)

If your mobile device supports the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ (WPS), follow these steps to configure a Wi-Fi Direct network.



When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will appear on the LCD. Press [OK] to connect.

1. Press [] [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Group Owner].
2. Press [On].
3. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to select the [PIN Code] option. Press [PIN Code].
4. When [Activate Wi-Fi Direct on other device. Then Press [OK].] appears, activate your mobile device's WPS PIN configuration method and then press [OK] on your machine.

This will start the Wi-Fi Direct setup. To cancel, press .

5. The machine will wait for a connection request from your mobile device. When [PIN Code] appears, enter the PIN displayed on your mobile device in to the machine. Press [OK].
6. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.



Related Information

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)

Related Topics:


- [Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview](#)

Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network Manually

If your mobile device does not support Wi-Fi Direct or WPS, you must configure a Wi-Fi Direct network manually.



When the machine receives the Wi-Fi Direct request from your mobile device, the message [Wi-Fi Direct connection request received. Press [OK] to connect.] will appear on the LCD. Press [OK] to connect.

1. Press [] [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Wi-Fi Direct] > [Manual].
2. The machine will display the SSID name and Password for two minutes. Go to your mobile device's wireless network settings screen, select the SSID name, and then enter the password.
3. If your mobile device connects successfully, the machine's LCD displays [Connected]. You have completed the Wi-Fi Direct network setup.



Related Information

- [Configure Your Wi-Fi Direct Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [Wi-Fi Direct Network Configuration Overview](#)

Advanced Network Features

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)
- [Configure Your Mail Server Settings Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Configure the Machine for Email or Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)
- [I-Fax Options](#)
- [Use the Send Fax to Server Feature](#)
- [Print the WLAN Report](#)
- [Configure and Operate LDAP Search](#)
- [Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management](#)

Print the Network Configuration Report

The Network Configuration Report lists the network configuration, including the network print server settings.



- **Node Name:** The Node Name appears on the current Network Configuration Report. The default Node Name is "KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx" for a wired network or "KMWxxxxxxxxxxxx" for a wireless network (where "xxxxxxxxxxxx" is your machine's MAC Address / Ethernet Address.)
- If the [IP Address] on the Network Configuration Report shows 0.0.0.0, wait for one minute and try printing it again.
- You can find your machine's settings, such as the IP address, subnet mask, node name, and MAC Address on the report, for example:
 - IP address: 192.168.0.5
 - Subnet mask: 255.255.255.0
 - Node name: KMN000ca0000499
 - MAC Address: 00-0c-a0-00-04-99

1. Press [] [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports] > [Network Configuration].
2. Press [Yes].



Related Information

- [Advanced Network Features](#)

Related Topics:

- [Where Can I Find My Machine's Network Settings?](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)
- [Access Web Based Management](#)
- [Configure the Gigabit Ethernet Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Configure Your Mail Server Settings Using Web Based Management

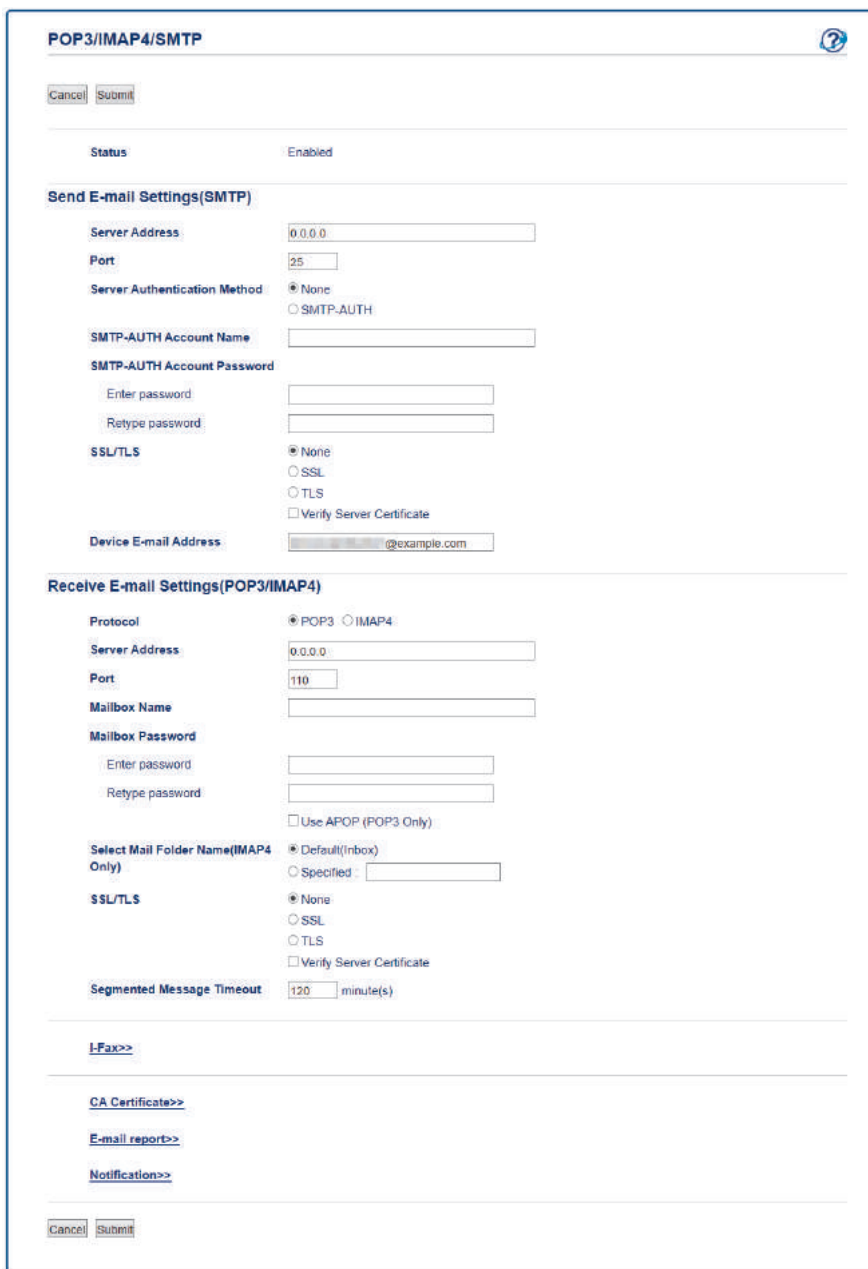
Use Web Based Management to configure your machine to connect with your mail server.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Protocol** in the left navigation bar.
6. In the **POP3/IMAP4/SMTP** field, click **Advanced Settings** and make sure the **Status** is **Enabled**.



7. Select the mail server you want to configure.
8. Enter the necessary settings for the mail server.
9. When finished, click **Submit**.

The **Test Send/Receive E-mail Configuration** dialog box appears.
10. Follow the instructions in the dialog box to test the current settings.



Related Information

- [Advanced Network Features](#)
-

Configure the Machine for Email or Internet Fax (I-Fax)

Before using I-Fax, configure your machine to communicate with your network and mail server. You can configure these items using the machine's control panel, Web Based Management or Remote setup. Make sure the following items are configured on your machine:

- IP address (If you are already using your machine on your network, the machine's IP address has been configured correctly.)
- Email address
- SMTP server address/port/Authentication method/Encryption method/Server Certificate Verification
- Mailbox name and password

If you are unsure of any of these items, contact your system administrator.



Related Information

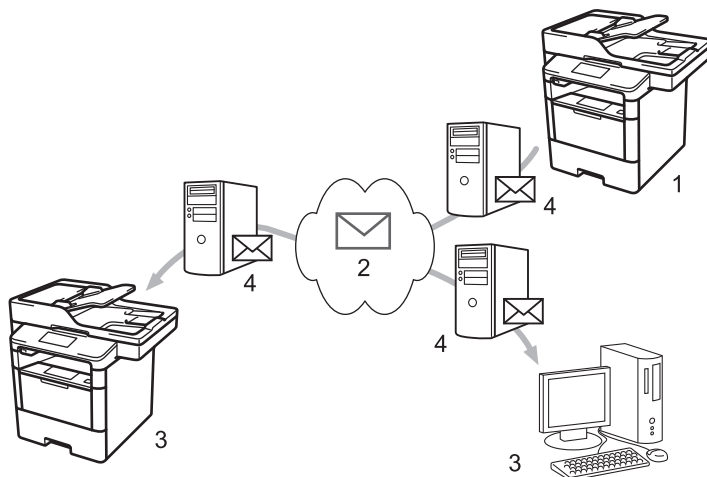
- [Advanced Network Features](#)
 - [Fax Using the Internet \(I-Fax\)](#)
 - [Initial Setup for Email or Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)
 - [Send an Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)
 - [Poll the Server Manually](#)
 - [How Your Computer Receives an I-Fax](#)
 - [Forward Received Email and Fax Messages](#)
 - [Relay Broadcast](#)

Related Topics:

- [I-Fax Options](#)

Fax Using the Internet (I-Fax)

With Internet Fax (I-Fax), you can send and receive fax documents using the Internet as the transport mechanism. Documents are transmitted in email messages as attached TIFF-F files. Your computer can send and receive documents as long as it has an application that can generate and view TIFF-F files. You can use any TIFF-F viewer application. Documents sent via the machine will be converted into a TIFF-F format automatically. If you want to send and receive messages to and from your machine, your computer's email application must support Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME).



1. Sender
2. Internet
3. Receiver
4. Email server



- I-Fax supports sending and receiving documents in Letter or A4 format and in monochrome only.



Related Information

- [Configure the Machine for Email or Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)
 - [Important Information about Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)

Related Topics:

- [Forward Received Email and Fax Messages](#)

Important Information about Internet Fax (I-Fax)

I-Fax communication on a LAN is very similar to communication via email; however, it is different from fax communication using standard phone lines. The following is important information for using I-Fax:

- Factors such as the receiver's location, structure of the LAN and how busy the circuit (such as the Internet) is may cause the system to take a longer time than usual to send an error mail.
- When sending confidential documents, we recommend using standard phone lines instead of the Internet (due to its low level of security).
- If the receiver's mail system is not MIME-compatible, you cannot use I-Fax to send documents. If possible, find out in advance, and note that some servers will not send an error reply.
- If a document is too large to send via I-Fax, it may not reach the receiver.
- You cannot change the font or size of the text in any Internet mail you receive.



Related Information

- [Fax Using the Internet \(I-Fax\)](#)

Initial Setup for Email or Internet Fax (I-Fax)

Before sending your I-Fax, use the control panel, Web Based Management, or Remote Setup to configure the following optional items:

- **E-mail Subject**
- **E-mail Message**
- **Size Limit**
- **Request Delivery Notification (Send)**

E-mail Send

E-mail Subject	<input type="text" value="Internet Fax Job"/>
E-mail Message	<input type="text" value="Image data has been attached."/>
Size Limit	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Off <input type="radio"/> On
Maximum Size	<input type="text" value="1"/> MB
Request Delivery Notification (Send)	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Off <input type="radio"/> On

[POP3/IMAP4/SMTP>>](#)

If you are unsure of any of these items, contact your system administrator.

✓ Related Information

- [Configure the Machine for Email or Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)

Related Topics:


- [Forward Received Email and Fax Messages](#)



Send an Internet Fax (I-Fax)

Sending an I-Fax is like sending a normal fax. Make sure that your recipient's information is saved in your email address book, and load the document you want to I-Fax into your machine.



- If the computer to which you want to send a document is not running Windows Server 2008/2012/2012 R2/2016/2019, Windows 7, Windows 8.1, or Windows 10, ask the computer's owner to install software that can view TIFF-F files.
- To send multiple pages, use the ADF.

1. Load your document.
2. Do one of the following:
 - If Fax Preview is set to [Off], press [Fax].
 - If Fax Preview is set to [On], press [Fax], and then press [Sending Faxes].
3. To change the fax-sending settings, press [Options].
4. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the fax settings. When the setting you want appears, press it and select your preference. When you have finished changing settings, press [OK].
5. Do one of the following:
 - Press , and then enter the email address using the touchscreen.
 - Press [Address Book], select the email address of your recipient, and then press [Apply].
6. Press [Fax Start].

The machine starts scanning. After the document is scanned, it is transmitted to the recipient via your SMTP server. You can cancel the send operation by pressing  during scanning.
7. Press .




Related Information

- [Configure the Machine for Email or Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)

Related Topics:

- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)

Poll the Server Manually

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [E-mail/IFAX] > [Manual Receive].
2. Press [Yes] to confirm.
3. The LCD displays [Receiving] and your machine will print the data from the email server.



Related Information

- [Configure the Machine for Email or Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)

How Your Computer Receives an I-Fax

When your computer receives an I-Fax, you will receive an email in your email application. The incoming I-Fax is attached to an email message that notifies you in its **Subject** line that your email server has received an I-Fax. You can either wait for your machine to poll the email server, or you can manually poll the email server to receive the incoming data.




Related Information

- [Configure the Machine for Email or Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)
-

Forward Received Email and Fax Messages

Use I-Fax feature to forward email or standard fax messages to another computer, to a fax machine, or to another I-Fax machine. Enable the Forwarding feature using your machine's control panel.

To enable forwarding using your machine's control panel :

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Setup Receive] > [Memory Receive] > [Fax Forward].
2. Enter the recipient's fax number or email address using the touchscreen.
3. Select the file type you want.
4. Do one of the following:
 - Press [Manual] to enter the forwarding fax number (up to 20 characters) using the LCD.
Press [OK].
 - Press [Address Book].
Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display to scroll until you find the fax number or email address where you want your faxes to be forwarded.
Press the fax number or email address you want.



Press [Backup Print: On] to print received faxes at your machine so you will have a copy.

5. Press .



Related Information

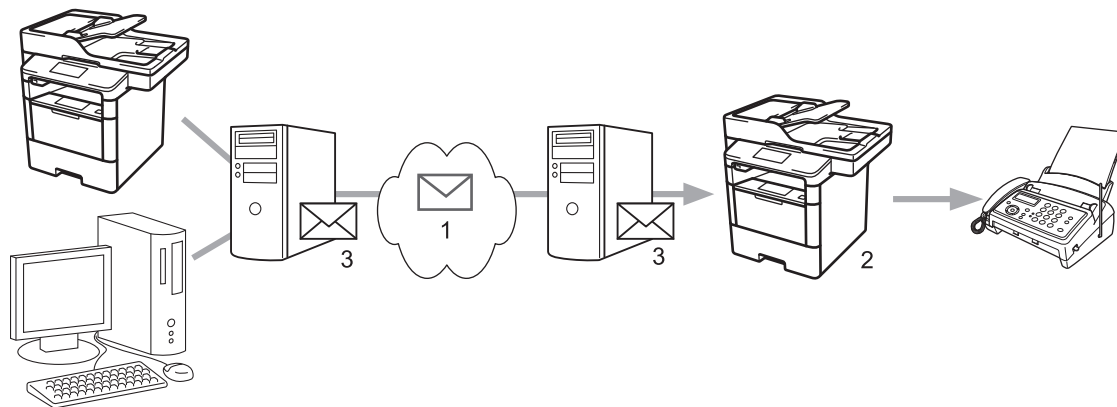
- [Configure the Machine for Email or Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)

Related Topics:

- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
- [Fax Using the Internet \(I-Fax\)](#)
- [Initial Setup for Email or Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)

Relay Broadcast

A Relay Broadcast is when your machine receives a message over the Internet and then relays it to another fax machine using conventional telephone lines. If you must fax a document over a long distance or abroad, use the Relay Broadcast Function to save the communication fee.



1. The Internet
2. Telephone line
3. Email server

Use this machine's control panel or Web Based Management to configure the following items:

- **Relay Broadcast Function**

Set the **Relay Broadcast Function** to **On**.

- **Relay Domain**

Configure your machine's domain name on the machine that will broadcast the document to the conventional fax machine. If you wish to use your machine as a relay broadcast device, you must specify the trusted domain name (the portion of the name after the "@" sign) at the machine. Use care in selecting a trusted domain: any user on a trusted domain will be able to send a relay broadcast. You can register up to ten domain names.

- **Relay Broadcast Report**

Specify whether or not you want a report to print after the machine completes the relay broadcast.

Relay Function

Relay Broadcast Function Off On

Relay Domain

Relay Broadcast Report Off On

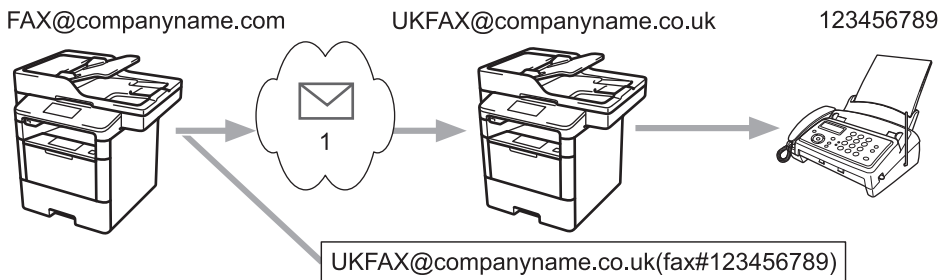


Related Information

- [Configure the Machine for Email or Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)
 - [Relay Broadcast from Your Machine](#)
 - [Relay Broadcast from Your Computer](#)
-


Relay Broadcast from Your Machine

Use the Relay Broadcast Function to send email from your machine to a conventional fax machine.



1. The Internet

In this example, your machine's email address is FAX@companyname.com and you want to send a document from your machine to a standard fax machine in England with the email address UKFAX@companyname.co.uk, and you want your machine to send the document using a conventional telephone line.

1. Load your document.
2. Do one of the following:
 - If Fax Preview is set to [Off], press [Fax].
 - If Fax Preview is set to [On], press [Fax], and then press [Sending Faxes].
3. Press [Options].
4. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Broadcasting] option.
5. Press [Broadcasting].
6. Press [Add Number].
7. You can add email addresses to the broadcast in the following ways:
 - Press [Add Number] and press , enter the email address and press [OK].
 - Press [Add from Address book]. Press the check box of the email address you want to add to the broadcast. After you have selected all the email addresses you want, press [OK].
 - Press [Search in Address book]. Enter the name and press [OK]. The search results will be displayed. Press the name and then press the email address you want to add to the broadcast.

The following is an example of how to enter the email address and phone number:

UKFAX@companyname.co.uk(fax#123456789)

email address

Fax Phone Number

The word "fax#" must be included with the phone number inside the parenthesis.

After you have entered all of the fax numbers, press [OK].

8. Press [Fax Start].



Related Information

- [Relay Broadcast](#)

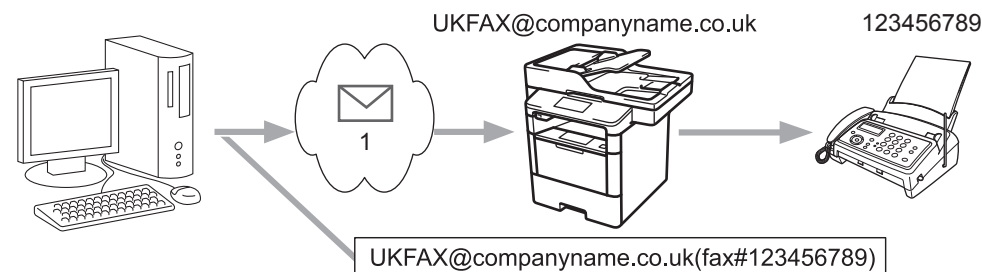
Related Topics:

- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
-

Relay Broadcast from Your Computer

Use the Relay Broadcast Function to send email from your computer to a conventional fax machine.

Some email applications do not support sending an email to multiple fax numbers. If your email application cannot support multiple fax numbers, you can relay to only one fax machine at a time.



1. The Internet

If you are sending an email to a conventional fax machine, the method of entering the fax machine's fax number will vary, depending on the mail application you are using.

1. In your email application, create a new mail message and type the email address of the relay machine and fax number of the first fax machine in the "TO" box.

The following is an example of how to enter the email address and fax number:

UKFAX@companyname.co.uk(fax#123456789)

email address Fax Phone Number

The word "fax#" must be included with the phone number inside the parenthesis.



For Microsoft Outlook, the address information must be entered into the address book as follows:

Name: fax#123456789

Email address: UKFAX@companyname.co.uk

2. Type the email address of the relay machine and fax number of the second fax machine in the "TO" box.
3. Send the email.

Related Information

- [Relay Broadcast](#)

I-Fax Options

- [Internet Fax \(I-Fax\) Verification Mail](#)
- [Error Mail](#)
- [Configure the Machine for Email or Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)

Internet Fax (I-Fax) Verification Mail

- Verification Mail for sending allows you to request notification from the receiving station where your I-Fax or email was received and processed.
- Verification Mail for receiving allows you to transmit a default report back to the sending station after successfully receiving and processing an I-Fax or email.


To use this feature, set the [Notification] options in the [Setup Mail RX] and [Setup Mail TX] options of your machine's control panel menu.



Related Information

- [I-Fax Options](#)
 - [Enable Send Notifications for TX Verification Mail](#)
 - [Enable Receive Notification for TX Verification Mail](#)

Enable Send Notifications for TX Verification Mail


1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [E-mail/IFAX] > [Setup Mail TX] > [Notification].

2. Select [On] or [Off] to enable or disable the Send Notification feature.

When Send Notification is On, the fax includes an additional field, named Message Disposition Notification (MDN), that contains message delivery information. By default, Send Notification is set to Off.



Your fax recipient's machine must support the MDN field in order to send a notification report.


3. Press .



Related Information

- [Internet Fax \(I-Fax\) Verification Mail](#)


Enable Receive Notification for TX Verification Mail

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [E-mail/IFAX] > [Setup Mail RX] > [Notification].
2. Press one of the three possible settings:

Option	Description
Receive Notification On	When Receive Notification is On, a template is sent back to the sender to indicate successful reception and processing of the message. These templates depend on the operation requested by the sender. Example: SUCCESS: Received From <Mail Address>
Receive Notification MDN	When Receive Notification is MDN, a report to indicate successful reception and processing is sent back to the sender if the originating station sent a request confirmation to the MDN (Message Disposition Notification) field.
Receive Notification Off	When Receive Notification is Off, all forms of receive notification are disabled and no message is sent back to the sender regardless of the request.



- To send TX Verification Mail, the Sender must configure these settings:
 - Switch [Notification] in [Setup Mail TX] to [On].
 - Switch [Header] in [Setup Mail RX] to [All] or [Subject+From+To].
- To receive TX Verification Mail, the Receiver must configure these settings:
 - Switch [Notification] in [Setup Mail RX] to [On].

3. Press .



Related Information

- [Internet Fax \(I-Fax\) Verification Mail](#)

Error Mail

If there is a delivery error while sending an I-Fax, the mail server will send an error message back to this machine and the error message will be printed.

If there is an error while receiving an I-Fax, an error message will be printed, for example, "The message being sent to the machine was not in a TIFF-F format."

To receive the error mail and have it print on your machine, in [Setup Mail RX], switch the [Header] option to [All] or to [Subject+From+To].



Related Information

- [I-Fax Options](#)

Use the Send Fax to Server Feature

The Fax to Server feature allows the machine to scan a document and send it over the network to a separate fax server. The document will then be sent from the server as fax data to the destination fax number over standard phone lines. When the Fax to Server feature is set to On, all automatic fax transmissions from the machine will be sent to the fax server for fax transmission.

You can send a fax directly from the machine using the manual fax feature when the Send to Server feature is on.





Related Information

- [Advanced Network Features](#)
 - [Before Sending a Fax to the Fax Server](#)
 - [Enable Fax to Server](#)
 - [Operate Fax to Server](#)
-

Enable Fax to Server

- Store the prefix/suffix address for the fax server in your machine.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Fax to Server].
2. Press [Fax to Server].
3. Press [On].
4. Press [Prefix].
5. Enter the prefix using the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
6. Press [Suffix].
7. Enter the suffix using the touchscreen, and then press [OK].
8. Press .



Related Information

- [Use the Send Fax to Server Feature](#)

Operate Fax to Server

1. Place the document in the ADF or on the scanner glass.
2. Enter the fax number.
3. Press [Fax Start].

The machine will send the message over a TCP/IP network to the fax server.





Related Information

- [Use the Send Fax to Server Feature](#)
-

Print the WLAN Report

The WLAN Report reflects your machine's wireless status. If the wireless connection fails, check the error code on the printed report.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports] > [WLAN Report].
2. Press [Yes].
The machine will print the WLAN Report.
3. Press .

If the WLAN Report does not print, check your machine for errors. If there are no visible errors, wait for one minute and then try to print the report again.



Related Information

- [Advanced Network Features](#)
 - [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)

Related Topics:

- [My Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)

Wireless LAN Report Error Codes

If the Wireless LAN Report shows that the connection failed, check the error code on the printed report and see the corresponding instructions in the table:

Error Code	Problem and Recommended Solutions
TS-01	<p>The wireless setting is not activated, change the wireless setting to ON.</p> <p>If a network cable is connected to your machine, disconnect it and change the wireless setting of your machine to ON.</p>
TS-02	<p>The wireless access point/router cannot be detected.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Check the following two points:<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Unplug the power to your wireless access point/router, wait for 10 seconds, and then plug it back in.• If your WLAN access point/router is using MAC address filtering, confirm that the MAC address of this machine is allowed in the filter.2. If you manually entered the SSID and security information (SSID/authentication method/encryption method/Network Key), the information may be incorrect. Reconfirm the SSID and security information and re-enter the correct information as necessary. How to confirm wireless security information (SSID/authentication method/encryption method/Network Key)<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. The Default security settings may be provided on a label attached to the WLAN access point/router. Or the manufacturer's name or model no. of the WLAN access point/router may be used as the default security settings.b. See the documentation provided with your WLAN access point/router for information on how to find the security settings.<ul style="list-style-type: none">• If WLAN access point/router is set to not broadcast the SSID, the SSID will not automatically be detected. You will have to manually enter the SSID name.• The Network key may also be described as the Password, Security Key or Encryption Key.<p>This device does not support a 5GHz SSID/ESSID and you must select a 2.4 GHz SSID/ESSID. Make sure the access point/router is set to 2.4 GHz or 2.4 GHz/5 GHz mixed mode.</p><p>If you do not know the SSID and wireless security settings of your WLAN access point/router or how to change the configuration, see the documentation provided with your WLAN access point/router, ask the manufacturer of your access point/router or ask to your Internet provider or network administrator.</p>
TS-03	<p>The wireless network and security setting you entered may be incorrect. Reconfirm the wireless network settings.</p> <p>If you do not know this information, ask your network administrator.</p>

Error Code	Problem and Recommended Solutions
TS-04	<p>The Authentication/Encryption methods used by the selected wireless access point/router are not supported by your machine.</p> <p>For infrastructure mode, change the authentication and encryption methods of the wireless access point/router. Your machine supports the following authentication methods:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • WPA-Personal TKIP or AES • WPA2-Personal AES • Open WEP or None (without encryption) • Shared key WEP <p>If your problem is not solved, the SSID or network settings you entered may be incorrect. Confirm the wireless network settings.</p> <p>For Ad-Hoc Mode, change the authentication and encryption methods of your computer for the wireless setting. Your machine supports Open authentication only, with optional WEP encryption.</p>
TS-05	<p>The security information (SSID/Network Key) is incorrect.</p> <p>Confirm the SSID and Network Key. If your router uses WEP encryption, enter the key used as the first WEP key. Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.</p>
TS-06	<p>The wireless security information (Authentication method/Encryption method/Network Key) is incorrect.</p> <p>Confirm the wireless security information (Authentication method/Encryption method/Network Key) listed in TS-04. If your router uses WEP encryption, enter the key used as the first WEP key. Your machine supports the use of the first WEP key only.</p>
TS-07	<p>The machine cannot detect a WLAN access point/router that has WPS enabled.</p> <p>If you would like to connect with WPS, you must operate both your machine and the WLAN access point/router. Confirm the connection method for WPS on WLAN access point/router and try starting again.</p> <p>If you do not know how to operate your WLAN access point/router using WPS, see the documentation provided with your WLAN access point/router, ask the manufacturer of your WLAN access point/router or ask your network administrator.</p>
TS-08	<p>Two or more WLAN access points that have WPS enabled are detected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Confirm that only one WLAN access point/router within range has the WPS method active and try again. • Try starting again after few minutes in order to avoid effects from other access points.



Related Information

- [Print the WLAN Report](#)

Related Topics:

- [My Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the One Push Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ \(WPS\)](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using an Existing SSID](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using a New SSID](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for an Enterprise Wireless Network](#)

Configure and Operate LDAP Search

The LDAP feature allows you to search for information, such as fax numbers and email addresses, on your server. When you use the Fax, I-Fax, or Scan to Email server feature, you can use the LDAP search to find fax numbers or email addresses.



- The LDAP feature does not support simplified Chinese, traditional Chinese, or Korean.
- The LDAP feature supports LDAPv3.
- The LDAP feature does not support SSL/TLS.




Related Information

- [Advanced Network Features](#)
 - [Change LDAP Configuration Using Web Based Management](#)
 - [Perform an LDAP Search Using Your Machine's Control Panel](#)

Change LDAP Configuration Using Web Based Management

Use Web Based Management to configure your LDAP settings in a web browser.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).
For example:
http://192.168.1.2
3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click **Network** on the machine's web page.
5. Click **Protocol** in the left navigation bar.
6. Select the **LDAP** check box, and then click **Submit**.
7. Restart your machine to activate the configuration.
8. On your computer, in Web Based Management's **Address Book** tab, select **LDAP** in the left navigation bar.
 - **LDAP Search**
 - **LDAP Server Address**
 - **Port** (The default port number is 389.)
 - **Search Root**
 - **Authentication**
 - **Username**
This selection will be available depending on the authentication method used.
 - **Password**
This selection will be available depending on the authentication method used.



- If the LDAP server supports Kerberos authentication, we recommend selecting Kerberos for the Authentication settings. It provides strong authentication between the LDAP server and your machine.
- You must configure the SNTP protocol (network time server), or you must set the date, time and time zone correctly on the control panel for Kerberos authentication.

- **Kerberos Server Address**
This selection will be available depending on the authentication method used.
 - **Timeout for LDAP**
 - **Attribute of Name (Search Key)**
 - **Attribute of E-mail**
 - **Attribute of Fax Number**
9. When finished, click **Submit**. Make sure the **Status** field reads **OK**.



Related Information

- [Configure and Operate LDAP Search](#)

Related Topics:

- [Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management](#)


Perform an LDAP Search Using Your Machine's Control Panel

After you configure LDAP settings, you can use the LDAP search feature to find fax numbers or email addresses to use for:

- Sending a Fax
- Sending an Internet Fax (I-Fax)
- Scanning to Email Server



- The LDAP feature supports LDAPv3.
- The LDAP feature does not support SSL/TLS.
- You may need to use Kerberos Authentication or Simple Authentication to connect to your LDAP server, depending on the security policy set by your network administrator.
- You must configure the SNTP protocol (network time server), or you must set the date, time and time zone correctly on the control panel for Kerberos authentication.

1. Press  to search.
2. Enter the initial characters for your search using the LCD.
3. Press [OK].

The LDAP search result will be shown on the LCD; the  icon appears before the email (local) address book search results.

- If there is no match on the server or the email (local) address book, the LCD displays [Results cannot be found.] for about 60 seconds.
4. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the name you want.
 5. Press the name.
To view the details of the name, press [Detail].
 6. If the result includes more than one fax number or email address, the machine will prompt you to select just one. Press [Apply]. Do one of the following:
 - If you are sending a fax or an I-Fax, press [Send a fax].
 - If you are scanning to the Email Server, load your document, press [OK], and then press [Start].



Related Information

- [Configure and Operate LDAP Search](#)

Related Topics:

- [Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management](#)

Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management

The Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) is used to synchronize the time used by the machine for authentication with the SNTP time server. (This is not the time displayed on the machine's LCD.) You can automatically or manually synchronize the machine's time with the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) provided by the SNTP time server.

- [Configure Date and Time Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Configure the SNTP Protocol Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Configure the Store Print Log to Network Settings Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Change LDAP Configuration Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Perform an LDAP Search Using Your Machine's Control Panel](#)

Configure Date and Time Using Web Based Management


Configure date and time to synchronize the time used by the machine with the SNTP time server.

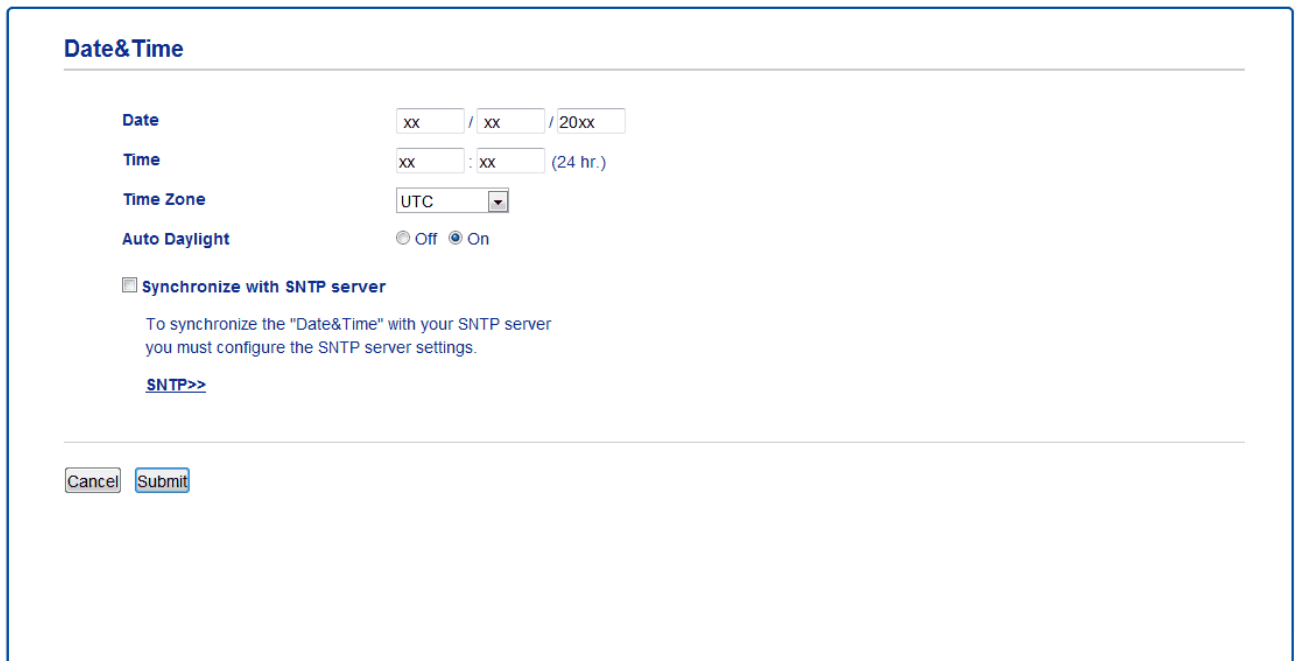
This feature is not available in some countries.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Administrator** tab.
5. Click **Date&Time** in the left navigation bar.



Select the time difference between your location and UTC from the **Time Zone** drop-down list. For example, the time zone for Eastern Time in the USA and Canada is UTC-05:00.

6. Verify the **Time Zone** settings.
7. Select the **Synchronize with SNTP server** check box.
8. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management](#)


Configure the SNTP Protocol Using Web Based Management

Configure the SNTP protocol to synchronize the time the machine uses for authentication with the time kept by the SNTP time server.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Protocol** in the left navigation bar.
6. Select the **SNTP** check box to activate the settings.
7. Restart your machine to activate the configuration.
8. Next to the SNTP check box, click **Advanced Settings** and follow the instructions below:

SNTP

Status Enabled

Synchronization Status Succeeded

SNTP Server Method

Primary SNTP Server Address

Primary SNTP Server Port

Secondary SNTP Server Address

Secondary SNTP Server Port

Synchronization Interval hour(s)

Option	Description
Status	Displays whether the SNTP protocol is enabled or disabled.
Synchronization Status	Confirm the latest synchronization status.
SNTP Server Method	Select AUTO or STATIC . <ul style="list-style-type: none">• AUTO If you have a DHCP server in your network, the SNTP server will obtain the address from that server automatically.• STATIC Type the address you want to use.

Option	Description
Primary SNTP Server Address	Type the server address (up to 64 characters).
Secondary SNTP Server Address	The secondary SNTP server address is used as a backup to the primary SNTP server address. If the primary server is unavailable, the machine will contact the secondary SNTP server.
Primary SNTP Server Port	Type the port number (1-65535).
Secondary SNTP Server Port	The secondary SNTP server port is used as a backup to the primary SNTP server port. If the primary port is unavailable, the machine will contact the secondary SNTP port.
Synchronization Interval	Type the number of hours between server synchronization attempts (1-168 hours).

9. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management](#)

Related Topics:

- [Configure the Store Print Log to Network Settings Using Web Based Management](#)
-

Technical Information for Advanced Users

- [Gigabit Ethernet \(Wired Network Only\)](#)
- [Reset the Network Settings to the Factory Settings](#)

Gigabit Ethernet (Wired Network Only)

Related Models: bizhub 5020i

Your machine supports 1000BASE-T Gigabit Ethernet. To connect to a 1000BASE-T Gigabit Ethernet Network, you must set the machine's Ethernet link mode to Auto from the machine's control panel or Web Based Management (web browser).



- Use a straight-through Category 5 (or greater) twisted-pair cable for 10BASE-T, 100BASE-TX Fast Ethernet Network, or 1000BASE-T Gigabit Ethernet Network. When you connect the machine to a Gigabit Ethernet Network, use the network devices complying with 1000BASE-T.




Related Information

- [Technical Information for Advanced Users](#)
 - [Configure the Gigabit Ethernet Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Configure the Gigabit Ethernet Settings Using Web Based Management

Related Models: bizhub 5020i

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).
For example:
http://192.168.1.2
3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Wired**.
6. Click **Ethernet** in the left navigation bar.
7. Select **Auto** from the **Ethernet Mode** drop-down list.
8. Click **Submit**.
9. To enable the settings, restart your machine.

You can confirm your settings by printing the Network Configuration Report.



Related Information

- [Gigabit Ethernet \(Wired Network Only\)](#)

Related Topics:


- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)

Reset the Network Settings to the Factory Settings

You can use your machine's control panel to reset the print server to its default factory settings. This resets all information, such as the password and IP address.



- This feature restores all wired and wireless network settings to the factory settings.
- You can also reset the print server to its factory settings using Web Based Management.

1. Press [] [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Network Reset].
2. [Machine will reboot after resetting. Press [OK] for 2 seconds to confirm.] appears. Press [OK] for two seconds to confirm.

The machine will restart.



Related Information

- [Technical Information for Advanced Users](#)

Security

- [Lock the Machine Settings](#)
- [Network Security Features](#)

Lock the Machine Settings

Before turning on the machine's Access Lock, make a careful note of your password. If you forget the password, you must reset all passwords stored in the machine by contacting your administrator or customer support.

- [About Using Setting Lock](#)



About Using Setting Lock

Use the Setting Lock feature to block unauthorised access to machine settings.

When Setting Lock is set to [On], you cannot access the machine settings without entering the password.

- [Set the Setting Lock Password](#)
- [Change the Setting Lock Password](#)
- [Turn Setting Lock On](#)

Set the Setting Lock Password



1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Setting Lock].
2. Enter a four-digit number for the password.
3. Press [OK].
4. When the LCD displays [Verify:], re-enter the password.
5. Press [OK].
6. Press .



Related Information

- [About Using Setting Lock](#)

Change the Setting Lock Password


1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Setting Lock] > [Set Password].
2. Enter the current four-digit password.
3. Press [OK].
4. Enter a new four-digit password.
5. Press [OK].
6. When the LCD displays [Verify:], re-enter the password.
7. Press [OK].
8. Press .




Related Information

- [About Using Setting Lock](#)

Turn Setting Lock On

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Setting Lock] > [Lock Off⇒On].
2. Enter the current four-digit password.
3. Press [OK].



To turn Setting Lock [Off], press  on the LCD, enter the current four-digit password, and then press [OK].



Related Information

- [About Using Setting Lock](#)

Network Security Features

- [Before Using Network Security Features](#)
- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
- [Use Active Directory Authentication](#)
- [Use LDAP Authentication](#)
- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)
- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec](#)
- [Send or Receive an Email Securely](#)
- [Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network](#)
- [Store Print Log to Network](#)

Before Using Network Security Features

Your machine employs some of the latest network security and encryption protocols available today. These network features can be integrated into your overall network security plan to help protect your data and prevent unauthorised access to the machine.



We recommend disabling the Telnet, FTP server and TFTP protocols. Accessing the machine using these protocols is not secure.



Related Information

- [Network Security Features](#)
-

Secure Function Lock 3.0

Secure Function Lock 3.0 increases security by restricting the functions available on your machine.

- [Before Using Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
- [Configure Secure Function Lock 3.0 Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Scan Using Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
- [Configure Public Mode for Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
- [Additional Secure Function Lock 3.0 Features](#)
- [Register a new ID Card Using Machine's Control Panel](#)

Before Using Secure Function Lock 3.0

Use Secure Function Lock to configure passwords, set specific user page limits, and grant access to some or all of the functions listed here.

You can configure and change the following Secure Function Lock 3.0 settings using Web Based Management:

- **Print**

Print includes print jobs sent via Google Cloud Print™ and iPrint&Scan for Mac.

If you register users' login names in advance, the users will not need to enter their passwords when they use the print function.

- **Copy**

- **Scan**

Scan includes scan jobs sent via iPrint&Scan for Mac.

- **Send**

- **Receive**

- USB Direct Print

- Scan to USB

- **Page Limits**

- **Page Counters**

- **Card ID** (supported models only)


If you register users' Card IDs in advance, a registered user can activate the machine by touching his registered card to the machine's ID card logo.



Related Information

- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

Configure Secure Function Lock 3.0 Using Web Based Management

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).
For example:
http://192.168.1.2
3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Administrator** tab.
5. Click the **User Restriction Function** menu in the left navigation bar.
6. Select **Secure Function Lock**.
7. Click **Submit**.
8. Click the **Restricted Functions** menu in the left navigation bar.
9. In the **User List / Restricted Functions** field, type a group name or user name (alphanumeric, up to 15 digits).
10. In the **Print** and the other columns, select a check box to allow or clear a check box to restrict the function listed.
11. To configure the maximum page count, select the **On** check box in the **Page Limits** column, and then type the maximum number in the **Max. Pages** field.
12. Click **Submit**.
13. Click the **User List** menu in the left navigation bar.
14. In the **User List** field, type the user name.
15. In the **PIN Number** field, type a four-digit password.
16. In the **E-mail Address** field, type the user's email address.
17. To register the user's Card ID, type the card number in the **Card ID** field (Available only for certain models).
18. Select **User List / Restricted Functions** from the drop-down list for each user.
19. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

Scan Using Secure Function Lock 3.0

Setting Scan restrictions (for administrators)

Secure Function Lock 3.0 allows an administrator to restrict which users are allowed to scan. When the Scan feature is set to Off for the public user setting, only users who have the **Scan** check box selected will be able to scan.

Using the Scan feature (for restricted users)

- To scan using the machine's control panel:
Restricted users must enter their PINs on the machine's control panel to access Scan mode.
- To scan from a computer:
Restricted users must enter their PINs on the machine's control panel before scanning from their computers. If the PIN is not entered on the machine's control panel, an error message will appear on the user's computer.



Related Information


- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

Configure Public Mode for Secure Function Lock 3.0

Use the Secure Function Lock screen to set up Public Mode, which limits the functions available to public users. Public users will not need to enter a password to access the features made available through Public Mode settings.



Public Mode includes print jobs sent via Google Cloud Print™ and iPrint&Scan for Mac.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).
For example:
http://192.168.1.2
3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Administrator** tab.
5. Click the **User Restriction Function** menu in the left navigation bar.
6. Select **Secure Function Lock**.
7. Click **Submit**.
8. Click the **Restricted Functions** menu.
9. In the **Public Mode** row, select a check box to allow or clear a check box to restrict the function listed.
10. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

Additional Secure Function Lock 3.0 Features

Configure the following features in the Secure Function Lock screen:

All Counter Reset

Click **All Counter Reset**, in the **Page Counters** column, to reset the page counter.

Export to CSV file

Click **Export to CSV file**, to export the current page counter including **User List / Restricted Functions** information as a CSV file.

Card ID (supported models only)

Click the **User List** menu, and then type a users' Card ID in the **Card ID** field. You can use your ID card for authentication.

Last Counter Record

Click **Last Counter Record** if you want the machine to retain the page count after the counter has been reset.

Counter Auto Reset

Click **Counter Auto Reset** to configure the time interval you want between page counter reset. Choose a daily, weekly, or monthly interval.



Related Information

- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

Register a new ID Card Using Machine's Control Panel

Related Models: bizhub 5020i

1. Touch the ID card logo on the machine's control panel with a registered ID Card.
2. Press [Register Card].
3. Touch a new ID Card to the ID card logo.

The new ID Card's number is registered to the machine.



For the supported ID Card types, see the following.

MIFARE Standard(Classic), MIFARE Plus, MIFARE UltraLight, MIFARE UltraLight C, MIFARE DESfire, myd move, Tag-it, FeliCa, FeliCa Lite, FeliCa Lite-S

4. Press [OK].



Related Information

- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

Use Active Directory Authentication

- [Introduction to Active Directory Authentication](#)
- [Configure Active Directory Authentication Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Log On to Change the Machine Settings Using the Machine's Control Panel \(Active Directory Authentication\)](#)

Introduction to Active Directory Authentication

Active Directory Authentication restricts the use of your machine. If Active Directory Authentication is enabled, the machine's control panel will be locked. You cannot change the machine's settings until you enter a User ID and password.

Active Directory Authentication offers the following features:

- Stores incoming print data
- Stores incoming fax data
- Obtains the email address from the LDAP server based on your User ID, when sending scanned data to an email server.

To use this feature, select the **On** option for the **Get Mail Address** setting and **LDAP + kerberos** authentication method. Your email address will be set as the sender when the machine sends scanned data to an email server. If the machine cannot locate your email address, the machine's email address will be set as the sender.

When Active Directory Authentication is enabled, your machine stores all incoming fax data. After you log on, the machine prints the stored fax data.

You can change the Active Directory Authentication settings using Web Based Management.




Related Information

- [Use Active Directory Authentication](#)

Configure Active Directory Authentication Using Web Based Management

Active Directory authentication supports Kerberos authentication and NTLMv2 authentication. You must configure the SNTP protocol (network time server) and DNS server configuration for authentication.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).
For example:
http://192.168.1.2
3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Administrator** tab.
5. Click the **User Restriction Function** menu in the left navigation bar.
6. Select **Active Directory Authentication**.
7. Click **Submit**.
8. Select **Active Directory Authentication** in the left navigation bar.
9. Configure the following settings:

Option	Description
Storage PC Print Data	Select this option to store incoming print data. After you log on to the machine, your PC print jobs will be printed automatically. This feature is available only for print data created by your printer driver.
Storage Fax RX Data	Select this option to store incoming fax data. You can print all incoming fax data after you log on to the machine.
Remember User ID	Select this option to save your User ID.
Active Directory Server Address	Type the IP address or the server name (for example: ad.example.com) of the Active Directory Server.
Active Directory Domain Name	Type the Active Directory domain name.
Protocol & Authentication Method	Select the protocol and authentication method.
Get Mail Address	Select this option to obtain logged on user's email address from the LDAP server. (available only for LDAP + kerberos authentication method)
Get User's Home Directory	Select this option to obtain your home directory as the Scan to Network destination. (available only for LDAP + kerberos authentication method)
LDAP Server Port	Type the LDAP server port number (available only for LDAP + kerberos authentication method).
LDAP Search Root	Type the LDAP search root (available only for LDAP + kerberos authentication method).

10. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Use Active Directory Authentication](#)
-

Log On to Change the Machine Settings Using the Machine's Control Panel (Active Directory Authentication)

When Active Directory Authentication is enabled, the machine's control panel will be locked until you enter your User ID and password on the machine's control panel.

1. On the machine's control panel, use the touchscreen to enter your User ID and Password.
2. Press [OK].
3. When authentication is successful, the machine's control panel will be unlocked.



Related Information

- [Use Active Directory Authentication](#)

Use LDAP Authentication

- [Introduction to LDAP Authentication](#)
- [Configure LDAP Authentication Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Log On to Change the Machine Settings Using the Machine's Control Panel \(LDAP Authentication\)](#)

Introduction to LDAP Authentication

LDAP Authentication restricts the use of your machine. If LDAP Authentication is enabled, the machine's control panel will be locked. You cannot change the machine's settings until you enter a User ID and password.

LDAP Authentication offers the following features:

- Stores incoming print data
- Stores incoming fax data
- Obtains the email address from the LDAP server based on your User ID, when sending scanned data to an email server.

To use this feature, select the **On** option for the **Get Mail Address** setting. Your email address will be set as the sender when the machine sends scanned data to an email server. If the machine cannot locate your email address, the machine's email address will be set as the sender.

When LDAP Authentication is enabled, your machine stores all incoming fax data. After you log on, the machine prints the stored fax data.

You can change the LDAP Authentication settings using Web Based Management.



Related Information


- [Use LDAP Authentication](#)

Configure LDAP Authentication Using Web Based Management

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Administrator** tab.
5. Click the **User Restriction Function** menu in the left navigation bar.
6. Select **LDAP Authentication**.
7. Click **Submit**.
8. Click **LDAP Authentication** in the left navigation bar.
9. Configure the following settings:

Option	Description
Storage PC Print Data	Select this option to store incoming print data. After you log on to the machine, your PC print jobs will be printed automatically. This feature is available only for print data created by your printer driver.
Storage Fax RX Data	Select this option to store incoming fax data. You can print all incoming fax data after you log on to the machine.
Remember User ID	Select this option to save your User ID.
LDAP Server Address	Type the IP address or the server name (for example: ad.example.com) of the LDAP server.
Get Mail Address	Select this option to obtain logged on user's email address from the LDAP server.
Get User's Home Directory	Select this option to obtain your home directory as the Scan to Network destination.
LDAP Server Port	Type the LDAP server port number.
LDAP Search Root	Type the LDAP search root directory.
Attribute of Name (Search Key)	Type the attribute you want to use as a search key.

10. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Use LDAP Authentication](#)

Log On to Change the Machine Settings Using the Machine's Control Panel (LDAP Authentication)

When LDAP Authentication is enabled, the machine's control panel will be locked until you enter your User ID and password on the machine's control panel.

1. On the machine's control panel, use the touchscreen to enter your User ID and Password.
2. Press [OK].
3. When authentication is successful, the machine's control panel will be unlocked.



Related Information

- [Use LDAP Authentication](#)

Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS

- [Introduction to SSL/TLS](#)
- [Certificates and Web Based Management](#)
- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Print Documents Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)

Introduction to SSL/TLS

Secure Socket Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS) is an effective method of protecting data sent over a local or wide area network (LAN or WAN). It works by encrypting data, such as a print job, sent over a network, so anyone trying to capture it will not be able to read it.

SSL/TLS can be configured on both wired and wireless networks and will work with other forms of security such as WPA keys and firewalls.



Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)
 - [Brief History of SSL/TLS](#)
 - [Benefits of Using SSL/TLS](#)
-

Brief History of SSL/TLS

SSL/TLS was originally created to secure web traffic information, particularly data sent between web browsers and servers. For example, when you use Internet Explorer for Internet Banking and you see https:// and the little padlock icon in the web browser, you are using SSL. SSL grew to work with additional applications, such as Telnet, printer, and FTP software, in order to become a universal solution for online security. Its original design intentions are still being used today by many online retailers and banks to secure sensitive data, such as credit card numbers, customer records, etc.

SSL/TLS uses extremely high levels of encryption and is trusted by banks all over the world.



Related Information

- [Introduction to SSL/TLS](#)

Benefits of Using SSL/TLS

The primary benefit of using SSL/TLS on your machines is to guarantee secure printing over an IP network by restricting unauthorised users from reading data sent to the machine. SSL's key selling point is that it can be used to print confidential data securely. For example, an HR department in a large company may be printing wage slips on a regular basis. Without encryption, the data contained on these wages slips can be read by other network users. However, with SSL/TLS, anyone trying to capture the data will see a confusing page of code and not the actual wage slip.



Related Information

- [Introduction to SSL/TLS](#)
-

Certificates and Web Based Management

You must configure a certificate to manage your machine securely using SSL/TLS. You must use Web Based Management to configure a certificate.

- [Supported Security Certificate Features](#)
- [Create and Install a Certificate](#)
- [Manage Multiple Certificates](#)

Supported Security Certificate Features

Your machine supports the use of multiple security certificates, which allows secure management, authentication, and communication with the machine. The following security certificate features can be used with the machine:

- SSL/TLS communication
- SSL communication for SMTP (only available for certain models)
- IEEE 802.1x authentication
- IPsec

This machine supports the following:

- Pre-installed certificate

Your machine has a pre-installed self-signed certificate. This certificate enables you to use SSL/TLS communication without creating or installing a different certificate.



The pre-installed self-signed certificate cannot protect your communication from being compromised. We recommend using a certificate that is issued by a trusted organization for better security.

- Self-signed certificate

This print server issues its own certificate. Using this certificate, you can easily use the SSL/TLS communication without creating or installing a different certificate from a CA.

- Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA)

There are two methods for installing a certificate from a CA. If you already have a certificate from a CA or if you want to use a certificate from an external trusted CA:

- When using a Certificates Signing Request (CSR) from this print server.
- When importing a certificate and a private key.

- Certificate Authority (CA) Certificate

To use a CA certificate that identifies the CA and owns its private key, you must import that CA certificate from the CA before configuring the security features of the Network.



- If you are going to use SSL/TLS communication, we recommend contacting your system administrator first.
 - When you reset the print server back to its default factory settings, the certificate and the private key that are installed will be deleted. If you want to keep the same certificate and the private key after resetting the print server, export them before resetting, and then reinstall them.
-



Related Information

- [Certificates and Web Based Management](#)
-

Create and Install a Certificate

- [Step by Step Guide for Creating and Installing a Certificate](#)
- [Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate](#)
- [Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority \(CA\)](#)
- [Import and Export a CA Certificate](#)

Step by Step Guide for Creating and Installing a Certificate

There are two options when choosing a security certificate: use a self-signed certificate or use a certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA).

These are a brief summary of the actions required, based on the option you choose.

Option 1

Self-Signed Certificate

1. Create a self-signed certificate using Web Based Management.
2. Install the self-signed certificate on your computer.

Option 2

Certificate from a CA

1. Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR) using Web Based Management.
2. Install the certificate issued by the CA on your machine using Web Based Management.
3. Install the certificate on your computer.



Related Information

- [Create and Install a Certificate](#)

Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate

- [Create a Self-signed Certificate](#)
- [Install the Self-signed Certificate for Windows users with Administrator Rights](#)
- [Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Machine](#)

Create a Self-signed Certificate

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Create Self-Signed Certificate**.
8. Enter a **Common Name** and a **Valid Date**.
 - The length of the **Common Name** is less than 64 bytes. Enter an identifier, such as an IP address, node name, or domain name to use when accessing this machine through SSL/TLS communication. The node name is displayed by default.
 - A warning will appear if you use the IPPS or HTTPS protocol and enter a different name in the URL than the **Common Name** that was used for the self-signed certificate.
9. Select your setting from the **Public Key Algorithm** drop-down list. The default setting is **RSA(2048bit)**.
10. Select your setting from the **Digest Algorithm** drop-down list. The default setting is **SHA256**.
11. Click **Submit**.
12. Click **Network**.
13. Click **Protocol**.
14. Click **HTTP Server Settings**.
15. Select the certificate you want to configure from the **Select the Certificate** drop-down list.
16. Click **Submit**.

The following screen appears.

HTTP Server Settings

The setting for high security in communication was done.

To activate your new settings, this Device needs to restart.

Note: Any jobs in progress will be aborted.

To activate other protocols that have secure settings after restarting, check the box below.

Activate other protocols that have secure settings.

Would you like to restart immediately?

Yes

No

17. Click **Yes** to restart your print server.

The self-signed certificate is created and saved in your machine's memory.

To use SSL/TLS communication, the self-signed certificate must be installed on your computer.



Related Information


- [Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate](#)

Install the Self-signed Certificate for Windows users with Administrator Rights

The following steps are for Microsoft Internet Explorer. If you use another web browser, consult the documentation for your web browser to get help with installing certificates.

1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7 and Windows Server 2008)

Click  (**Start**) > **All Programs**.



- (Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2019)

Right-click the  (**Internet Explorer**) icon on the taskbar.

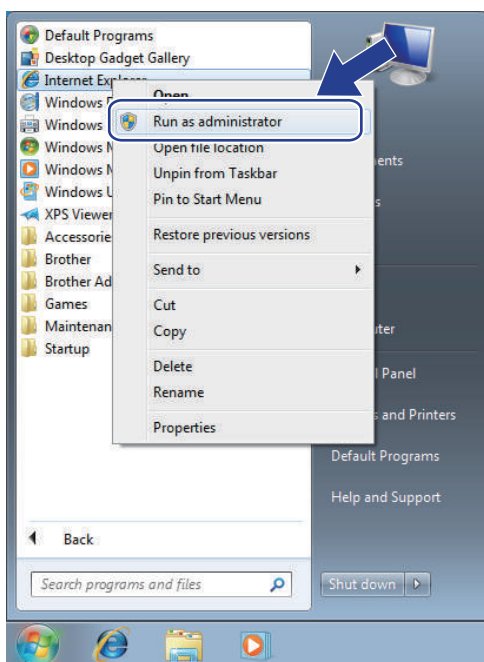
- (Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016)

Click  > **Windows Accessories**.

- (Windows Server 2012 and Windows Server 2012 R2)

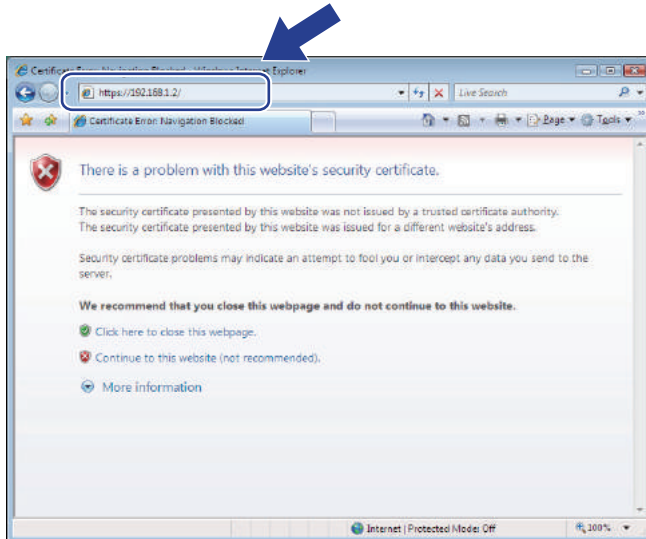
Click  (**Internet Explorer**), and then right-click the  (**Internet Explorer**) icon that appears on the taskbar.

2. Right-click **Internet Explorer**, and then click **Run as administrator**.

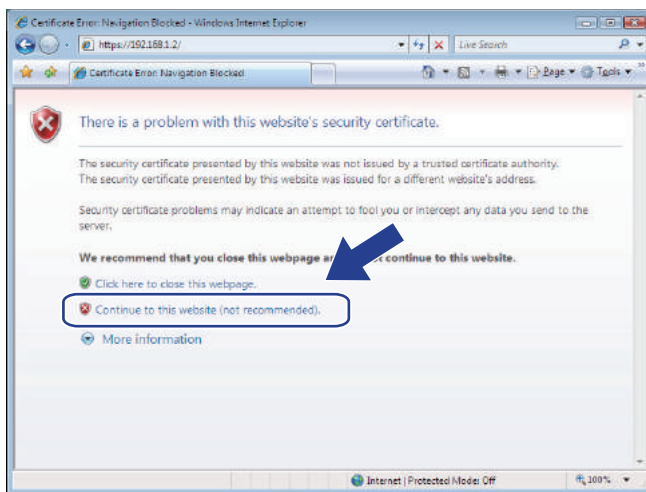


If the **User Account Control** screen appears, click **Yes**.

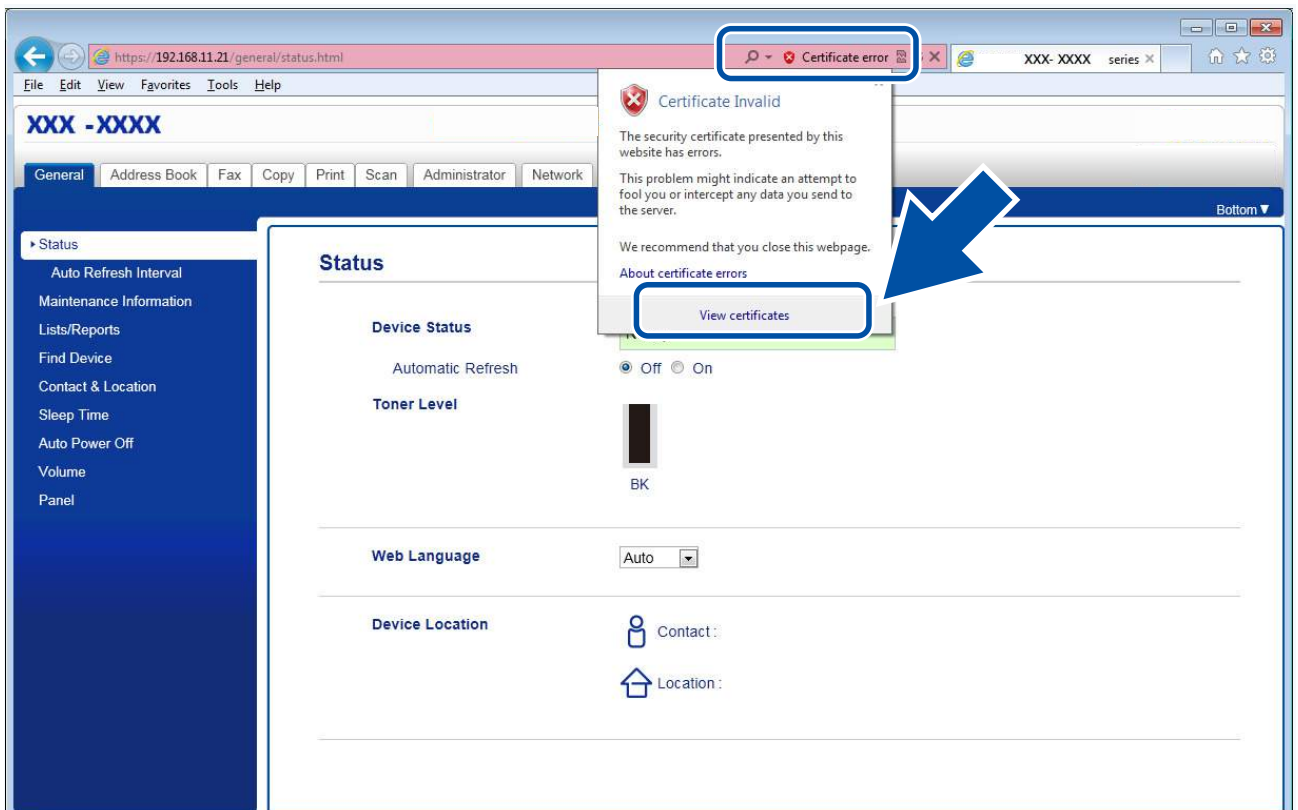
3. Type "https://machine's IP address/" in your browser's address bar to access your machine (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address or the node name that you assigned for the certificate).



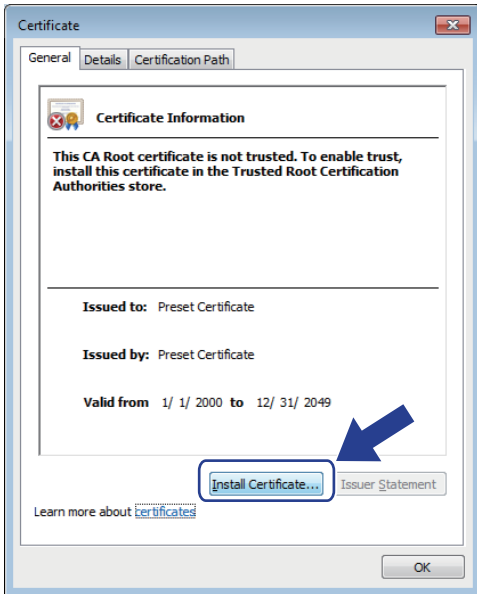
4. Click **Continue to this website (not recommended)**.



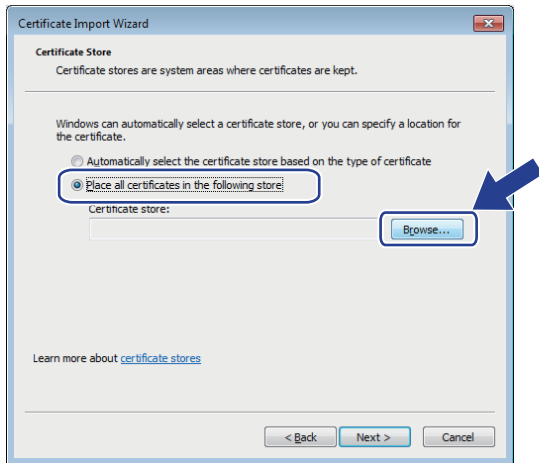
5. Click **Certificate Error**, and then click **View certificates**.



6. Click **Install Certificate...**



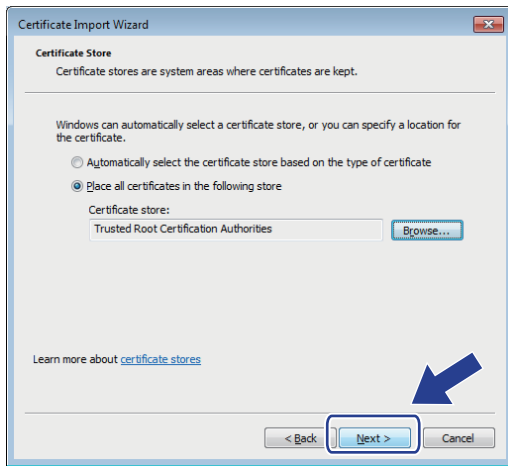
7. When the **Certificate Import Wizard** appears, click **Next**.
8. Select **Place all certificates in the following store**, and then click **Browse...**.



9. Select **Trusted Root Certification Authorities**, and then click **OK**.

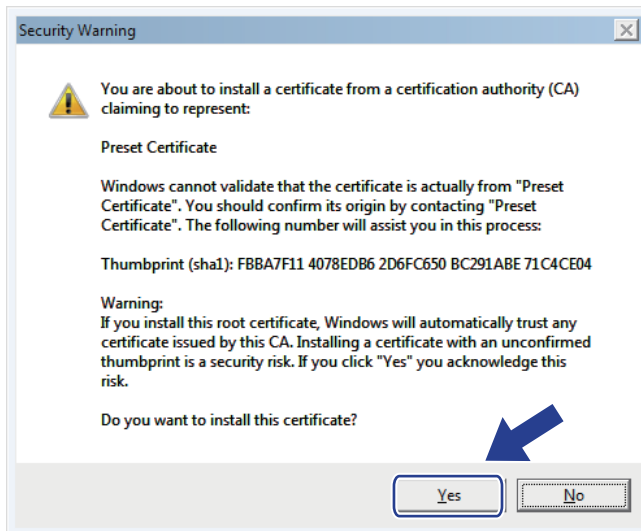


10. Click **Next**.



11. Click **Finish**.

12. Click **Yes**, if the fingerprint (thumbprint) is correct.



The fingerprint (thumbprint) is printed on the Network Configuration Report.

13. Click **OK**.

The self-signed certificate is now installed on your computer, and SSL/TLS communication is available.



Related Information

- [Create and Install a Self-signed Certificate](#)

Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Machine

You can store the self-signed certificates on your machine and manage them by importing and exporting.

- [Import the Self-signed Certificate](#)
- [Export the Self-signed Certificate](#)

Import the Self-signed Certificate

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Import Certificate and Private Key**.
8. Browse to the file you want to import.
9. Type the password if the file is encrypted, and then click **Submit**.

The self-signed certificate is imported to your machine.

To use SSL/TLS communication, the self-signed certificate must also be installed on your computer. Contact your network administrator.



Related Information

- [Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Machine](#)

Export the Self-signed Certificate

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Export** shown with **Certificate List**.
8. If you want to encrypt the file, type a password in the **Enter password** field.
If the **Enter password** field is blank, your output file will not be encrypted.
9. Type the password again in the **Retype password** field, and then click **Submit**.
10. Click **Save**.
11. Specify the location where you want to save the file.

The self-signed certificate is exported to your computer.

You can also import the self-signed certificate to your computer.



Related Information

- [Import and Export the Self-signed Certificate on your Machine](#)

Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority (CA)

If you already have a certificate from an external trusted CA, you can store the certificate and private key on the machine and manage them by importing and exporting. If you do not have a certificate from an external trusted CA, create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR), send it to a CA for authentication, and install the returned certificate on your machine.

- [Create a Certificate Signing Request \(CSR\)](#)
- [Install a Certificate on Your Machine](#)
- [Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key](#)

Create a Certificate Signing Request (CSR)

A Certificate Signing Request (CSR) is a request sent to a Certificate Authority (CA) to authenticate the credentials contained within the certificate.

We recommend installing a Root Certificate from the CA on your computer before creating the CSR.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Create CSR**.
8. Type a **Common Name** (required) and add other information about your **Organization** (optional).



- Your company details are required so that a CA can confirm your identity and verify it to the outside world.
- The length of the **Common Name** must be less than 64 bytes. Enter an identifier, such as an IP address, node name, or domain name to use when accessing this printer through SSL/TLS communication. The node name is displayed by default. The **Common Name** is required.
- A warning will appear if you type a different name in the URL than the Common Name that was used for the certificate.
- The length of the **Organization**, the **Organization Unit**, the **City/Locality** and the **State/Province** must be less than 64 bytes.
- The **Country/Region** should be a two character ISO 3166 country code.
- If you are configuring an X.509v3 certificate extension, select the **Configure extended partition** check box, and then select **Auto (Register IPv4)** or **Manual**.

9. Select your setting from the **Public Key Algorithm** drop-down list. The default setting is **RSA(2048bit)**.
10. Select your setting from the **Digest Algorithm** drop-down list. The default setting is **SHA256**.
11. Click **Submit**.

The CSR appears on your screen. Save the CSR as a file or copy and paste it into an online CSR form offered by a Certificate Authority.

12. Click **Save**.



- Follow your CA's policy regarding the method to send a CSR to your CA.
 - If you are using the Enterprise root CA of Windows Server 2008/2012/2012 R2/2016/2019, we recommend using the Web Server for the certificate template to securely create the Client Certificate. If you are creating a Client Certificate for an IEEE 802.1x environment with EAP-TLS authentication, we recommend using User for the certificate template.
-



Related Information

- [Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority \(CA\)](#)
-

Install a Certificate on Your Machine

When you receive a certificate from a CA, follow the steps below to install it into the print server:

Only a certificate issued with your machine's CSR can be installed onto the machine. When you want to create another CSR, make sure that the certificate is installed before creating another CSR. Create another CSR only after installing the certificate on the machine. If you do not, the CSR you create before installing will be invalid.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Install Certificate**.
8. Browse to the file that contains the certificate issued by the CA, and then click **Submit**.

The certificate has been created successfully and saved in your machine's memory successfully.

To use SSL/TLS communication, the Root Certificate from the CA must be installed on your computer. Contact your network administrator.



Related Information

- [Create and Install a Certificate from a Certificate Authority \(CA\)](#)

Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key

Store the certificate and private key on your machine and manage them by importing and exporting them.

- [Import a Certificate and Private Key](#)
- [Export the Certificate and Private Key](#)

Import a Certificate and Private Key

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Import Certificate and Private Key**.
8. Browse to the file you want to import.
9. Type the password if the file is encrypted, and then click **Submit**.

The certificate and private key are imported to your machine.

To use SSL/TLS communication, the Root Certificate from the CA must also be installed on your computer. Contact your network administrator.



Related Information

- [Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key](#)

Export the Certificate and Private Key

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click **Certificate**.
7. Click **Export** shown with **Certificate List**.
8. Enter the password if you want to encrypt the file.
If a blank password is used, the output is not encrypted.
9. Enter the password again for confirmation, and then click **Submit**.
10. Click **Save**.
11. Specify the location where you want to save the file.

The certificate and private key are exported to your computer.

You can also import the certificate to your computer.



Related Information

- [Import and Export the Certificate and Private Key](#)

Import and Export a CA Certificate

You can import, export and store CA certificates on your machine.

- [Import a CA Certificate](#)
- [Export a CA Certificate](#)

Import a CA Certificate

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click **CA Certificate**.
7. Click **Import CA Certificate**.
8. Browse to the file you want to import.
9. Click **Submit**.



Related Information

- [Import and Export a CA Certificate](#)

Export a CA Certificate

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click **CA Certificate**.
7. Select the certificate you want to export and click **Export**.
8. Click **Submit**.
9. Click **Save**.
10. Specify where on your computer you want to save the exported certificate, and save it.



Related Information

- [Import and Export a CA Certificate](#)

Manage Multiple Certificates

The multiple certificate feature allows you to use Web Based Management to manage each certificate installed on your machine. In Web Based Management, navigate to the **Certificate** or **CA Certificate** screen to view certificate content, delete, or export your certificates.

	Maximum Number of Certificates Stored UP on This Machine
Self-signed Certificate or Certificate Issued by a CA	6
CA Certificate	9

We recommend storing one less certificate than allowed, reserving an empty spot in case of certificate expiration. When a certificate expires, import a new certificate into the reserved spot, and then delete the expired certificate. This ensures that you avoid configuration failure.



- When you use HTTPS/IPPS, IEEE 802.1x, or Signed PDF, you must select which certificate you are using.
- When you use SSL for SMTP communications (only available for certain models), you do not have to choose the certificate. The necessary certificate will be chosen automatically.



Related Information

- [Certificates and Web Based Management](#)


Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using Web Based Management

To manage your network machine securely, you must use management utilities with security protocols.

We recommend using the HTTPS protocol for secure management. To use this protocol, HTTPS must be enabled on your machine.



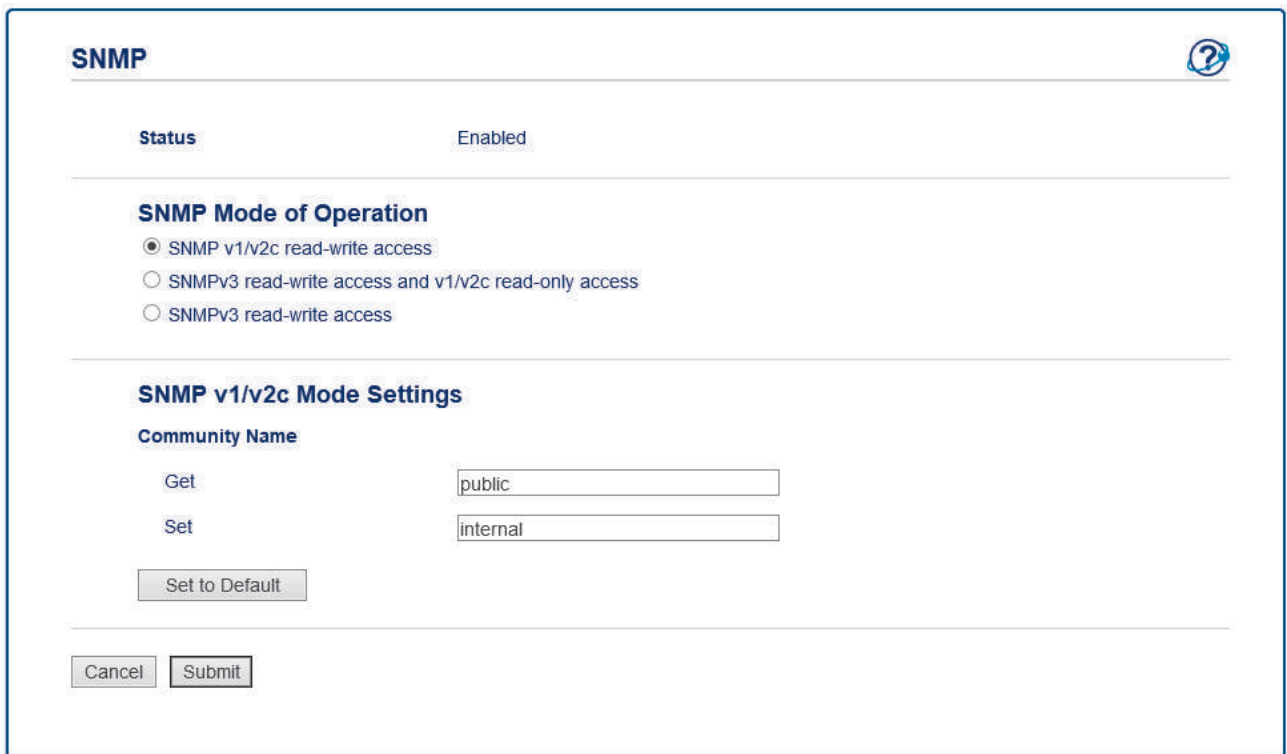
- The HTTPS protocol is enabled by default.
- You can change the HTTPS protocol settings using the Web Based Management screen.
 1. Click the **Network** tab.
 2. Click the **Protocol** menu in the left navigation bar.
 3. Click **HTTP Server Settings**.


1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "https://Common Name" in your browser's address bar (where "Common Name" is the Common Name that you assigned to the certificate; this could be your IP address, node name, or domain name).
3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. You can now access the machine using HTTPS.



- If you use the SNMPv3 protocol, follow the steps below.

5. Click the **Network** tab.
6. Click **Protocol**.
7. Make sure the **SNMP** setting is enabled, and then click **Advanced Settings**.
8. Configure the SNMP settings.



SNMP 

Status Enabled

SNMP Mode of Operation

- SNMP v1/v2c read-write access
- SNMPv3 read-write access and v1/v2c read-only access
- SNMPv3 read-write access

SNMP v1/v2c Mode Settings

Community Name

Get

Set

There are three options for **SNMP Mode of Operation**.

- **SNMP v1/v2c read-write access**

In this mode, the print server uses version 1 and version 2c of the SNMP protocol. You can use all applications in this mode. However, it is not secure since it will not authenticate the user, and data will not be encrypted.

- **SNMPv3 read-write access and v1/v2c read-only access**

In this mode, the print server uses the read-write access of version 3 and the read-only access of version 1 and version 2c of the SNMP protocol.

- **SNMPv3 read-write access**

In this mode, the print server uses version 3 of the SNMP protocol. If you want to manage the print server securely, use this mode.



Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)
-

Print Documents Securely Using SSL/TLS

To print documents securely with IPP protocol, use the IPPS protocol.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Protocol**. Make sure the **IPP** check box is selected.



If the **IPP** check box is not selected, select the **IPP** check box, and then click **Submit**.

Restart your machine to activate the configuration.

After the machine restarts, return to the machine's web page, click the **Network** tab, and then click **Protocol**.

6. Click **HTTP Server Settings**.
7. Select the **HTTPS(Port443)** check box in the **IPP**, and then click **Submit**.
8. Restart your machine to activate the configuration.

Communication using IPPS cannot prevent unauthorised access to the print server.



Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using SSL/TLS](#)

Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec

- [Introduction to IPsec](#)
- [Configure IPsec Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Configure an IPsec Address Template Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Configure an IPsec Template Using Web Based Management](#)

Introduction to IPsec

IPsec (Internet Protocol Security) is a security protocol that uses an optional Internet Protocol function to prevent manipulation and ensure the confidentiality of data transmitted as IP packets. IPsec encrypts data carried over the network, such as print data sent from computers to a printer. Because the data is encrypted at the network layer, applications that employ a higher-level protocol use IPsec even if the user is not aware of its use.

IPsec supports the following functions:

- IPsec transmissions

According to the IPsec setting conditions, the network-connected computer sends data to and receives data from the specified device using IPsec. When the devices start communicating using IPsec, keys are exchanged using Internet Key Exchange (IKE) first, and then the encrypted data is transmitted using the keys.

In addition, IPsec has two operation modes: the Transport mode and Tunnel mode. The Transport mode is used mainly for communication between devices and the Tunnel mode is used in environments such as a Virtual Private Network (VPN).



For IPsec transmissions, the following conditions are necessary:

- A computer that can communicate using IPsec is connected to the network.
 - Your machine is configured for IPsec communication.
 - The computer connected to your machine is configured for IPsec connections.
-

- IPsec settings

The settings that are necessary for connections using IPsec. These settings can be configured using Web Based Management.



To configure the IPsec settings, you must use the browser on a computer that is connected to the network.



Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec](#)
-


Configure IPsec Using Web Based Management

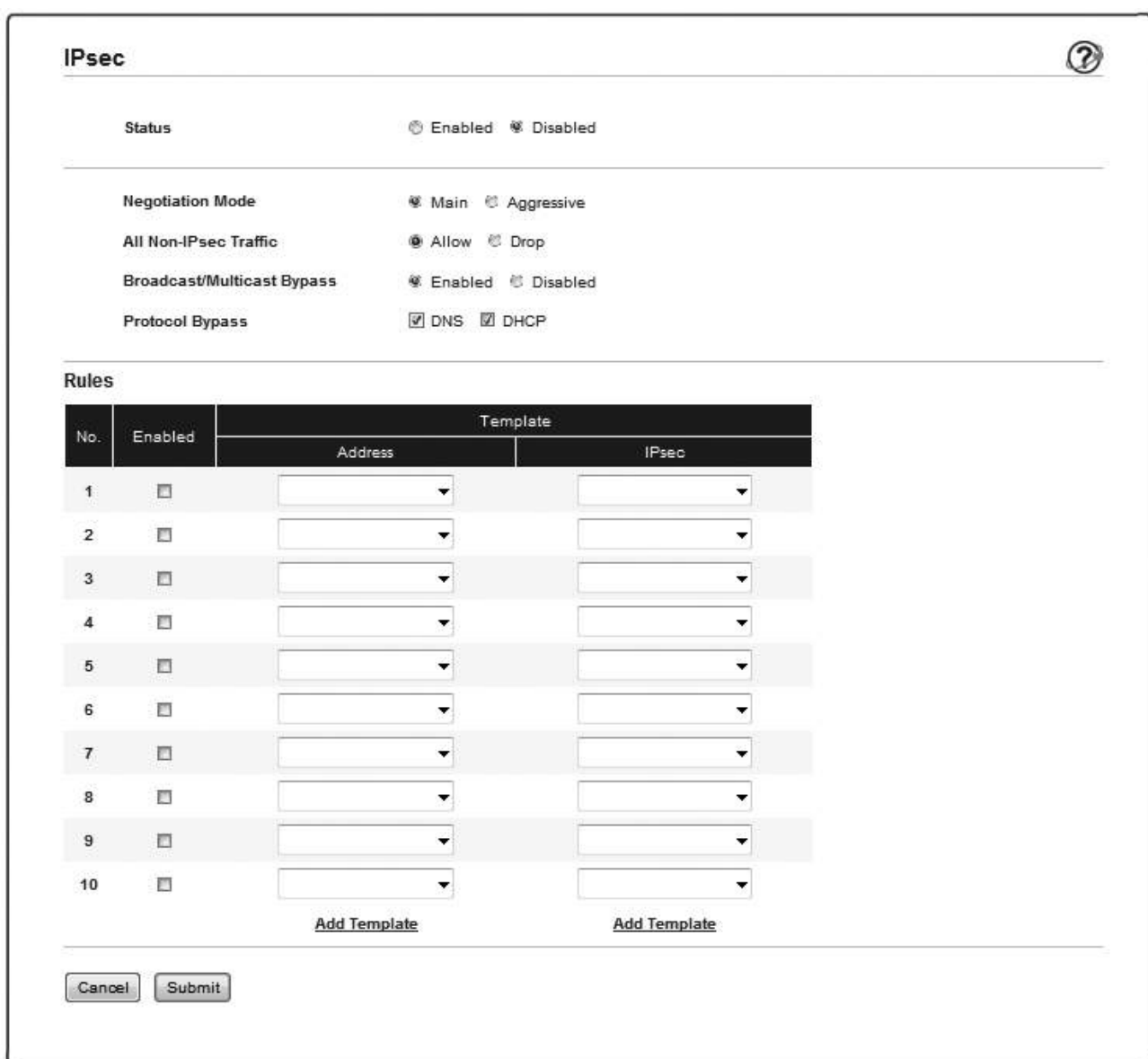
The IPsec connection conditions are comprised of two **Template** types: **Address** and **IPsec**. You can configure up to 10 connection conditions.


1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click the **IPsec** menu in the left navigation bar.



IPsec 

Status Enabled Disabled

Negotiation Mode Main Aggressive

All Non-IPsec Traffic Allow Drop

Broadcast/Multicast Bypass Enabled Disabled

Protocol Bypass DNS DHCP

Rules

No.	Enabled	Template	
		Address	IPsec
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
10	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

[Add Template](#) [Add Template](#)

7. In the **Status** field, enable or disable IPsec.
8. Select **Negotiation Mode** for IKE Phase 1.

IKE is a protocol that is used to exchange encryption keys in order to carry out encrypted communication using IPsec.

In **Main** mode, the processing speed is slow, but the security is high. In **Aggressive** mode, the processing speed is faster than **Main** mode, but the security is lower.

9. In the **All Non-IPsec Traffic** field, select the action to be taken for non-IPsec packets.

When using Web Services, you must select **Allow** for **All Non-IPsec Traffic**. If you select **Drop**, Web Services cannot be used.

10. In the **Broadcast/Multicast Bypass** field, select **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

11. In the **Protocol Bypass** field, select the check box for the option or options you want.

12. In the **Rules** table, select the **Enabled** check box to activate the template.

When you select multiple check boxes, the lower numbered check boxes have priority if the settings for the selected check boxes conflict.

13. Click on the corresponding drop-down list to select the **Address Template** that is used for the IPsec connection conditions.

To add an **Address Template**, click **Add Template**.

14. Click on the corresponding drop-down list to select the **IPsec Template** that is used for the IPsec connection conditions.

To add an **IPsec Template**, click **Add Template**.

15. Click **Submit**.

If the machine must be restarted to register the new settings, the restart confirmation screen will appear.

If there is a blank item in the template you enabled in the **Rules** table, an error message appears. Confirm your choices and submit again.



Related Information


- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec](#)
-

Configure an IPsec Address Template Using Web Based Management

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

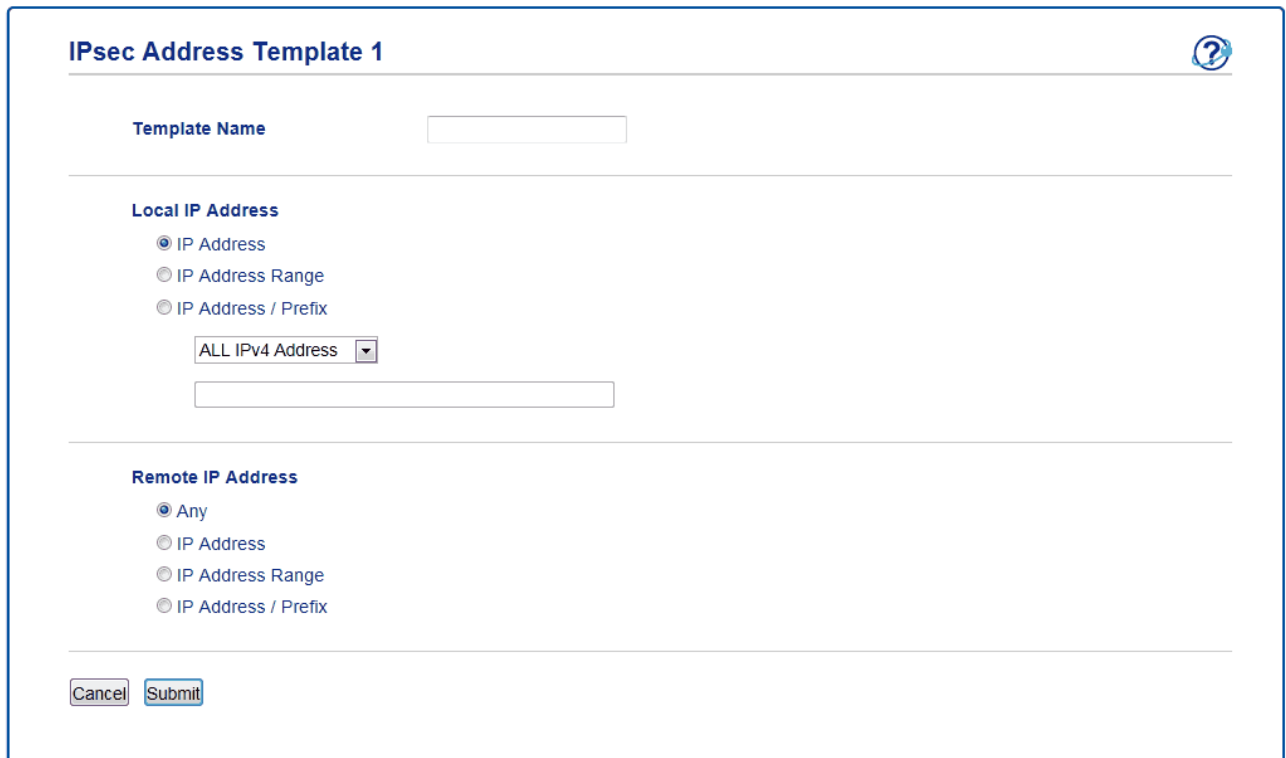
http://192.168.1.2

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click the **IPsec Address Template** menu in the left navigation bar.

The Template List appears, displaying 10 Address Templates.

Click the **Delete** button to delete an **Address Template**. When an **Address Template** is in use, it cannot be deleted.

7. Click the **Address Template** that you want to create. The **IPsec Address Template** appears.



The screenshot shows a web form titled "IPsec Address Template 1" with a help icon in the top right. The form is divided into sections:

- Template Name:** A text input field.
- Local IP Address:** A section with three radio button options: "IP Address" (selected), "IP Address Range", and "IP Address / Prefix". Below these is a dropdown menu currently set to "ALL IPv4 Address" and a text input field.
- Remote IP Address:** A section with four radio button options: "Any" (selected), "IP Address", "IP Address Range", and "IP Address / Prefix".

At the bottom of the form are "Cancel" and "Submit" buttons.

8. In the **Template Name** field, type a name for the template (up to 16 characters).
9. Select a **Local IP Address** option to specify the IP address conditions for the sender:
 - **IP Address**
Specify the IP address. Select **ALL IPv4 Address**, **ALL IPv6 Address**, **ALL Link Local IPv6**, or **Custom** from the drop-down list.
If you select **Custom** from the drop-down list, type the IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) in the text box.
 - **IP Address Range**
Type the starting and ending IP addresses for the IP address range in the text boxes. If the starting and ending IP addresses are not standardized to IPv4 or IPv6, or the ending IP address is smaller than the starting address, an error will occur.
 - **IP Address / Prefix**
Specify the IP address using CIDR notation.

For example: 192.168.1.1/24

Because the prefix is specified in the form of a 24-bit subnet mask (255.255.255.0) for 192.168.1.1, the addresses 192.168.1.xxx are valid.

10. Select a **Remote IP Address** option to specify the IP address conditions for the recipient:

- **Any**

If you select **Any**, all IP addresses are enabled.

- **IP Address**

Type the specified IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) in the text box.

- **IP Address Range**

Type the starting and ending IP addresses for the IP address range. If the starting and ending IP addresses are not standardized to IPv4 or IPv6, or the ending IP address is smaller than the starting address, an error will occur.

- **IP Address / Prefix**

Specify the IP address using CIDR notation.

For example: 192.168.1.1/24

Because the prefix is specified in the form of a 24-bit subnet mask (255.255.255.0) for 192.168.1.1, the addresses 192.168.1.xxx are valid.

11. Click **Submit**.




When you change the settings for the template currently in use, restart your machine to active the configuration.



Related Information

- [Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec](#)
-

Configure an IPsec Template Using Web Based Management

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).
For example:
http://192.168.1.2
3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click the **Security** tab.
6. Click **IPsec Template** in the left navigation bar.
The Template List appears, displaying 10 IPsec Templates.
Click the **Delete** button to delete an **IPsec Template**. When an **IPsec Template** is in use, it cannot be deleted.
7. Click **IPsec Template** that you want to create. The **IPsec Template** screen appears. The configuration fields differ based on the **Use Prefixed Template** and **Internet Key Exchange (IKE)** you select.
8. In the **Template Name** field, type a name for the template (up to 16 characters).
9. If you selected **Custom** in the **Use Prefixed Template** drop-down list, select the **Internet Key Exchange (IKE)** options, and then change the settings if needed.
10. Click **Submit**.

IPsec Template 1



Template Name
Use Prefixed Template

Internet Key Exchange (IKE) IKEv1

Authentication Type

Diffie-Hellman Group
Group14
Encryption
AES-CBC 256
Hash
SHA256
SHA512
SA Lifetime
(240 – 63072000)

(10 – 2097152)

Encapsulating Security

Protocol
Encryption
AES-CBC 256
Hash
SHA256
SHA512
SA Lifetime
(240 – 63072000)

(10 – 2097152)
Encapsulation Mode Transport Tunnel
Remote Router IP-Address

Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) Enabled Disabled

Authentication Method Pre-Shared Key
 Certificates

Pre-Shared Key

Local

ID Type
ID

Remote

ID Type
ID

[Certificate>>](#)



Related Information

- Manage Your Network Machine Securely Using IPsec
 - IKEv1 Settings for an IPsec Template
 - IKEv2 Settings for an IPsec Template
 - Manual Settings for an IPsec Template

IKEv1 Settings for an IPsec Template

IPsec Template 1 ?

Template Name

Use Prefixed Template

Internet Key Exchange (IKE) IKEv1 IKEv2 Manual

Authentication Type

Diffie-Hellman Group

Encryption

Hash

SA Lifetime second(s)
(240 – 63072000)

KByte
(10 – 2097152)

Encapsulating Security

Protocol ESP AH AH+ESP

Encryption

Hash

SA Lifetime second(s)
(120 – 4233600)

KByte
(10 – 4194304)

Encapsulation Mode Transport Tunnel

Remote Router IP-Address

Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) Enabled Disabled

Authentication Method Pre-Shared Key Certificates

Pre-Shared Key

Local

ID Type

ID

Remote

ID Type

ID

[Certificate>>](#)

Template Name

Type a name for the template (up to 16 characters).

Use Prefixed Template

Select **Custom**, **IKEv1 High Security** or **IKEv1 Medium Security**. The setting items are different depending on the selected template.



The default template differs depending on whether you chose **Main** or **Aggressive** for **Negotiation Mode** on the **IPsec** configuration screen.

Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

IKE is a communication protocol that is used to exchange encryption keys in order to carry out encrypted communication using IPsec. To carry out encrypted communication for that time only, the encryption algorithm that is necessary for IPsec is determined and the encryption keys are shared. For IKE, the encryption keys are exchanged using the Diffie-Hellman key exchange method, and encrypted communication that is limited to IKE is carried out.

If you selected **Custom** in **Use Prefixed Template**, select **IKEv1**.

Authentication Type

Configure the IKE authentication and encryption.

- **Diffie-Hellman Group**

This key exchange method allows secret keys to be securely exchanged over an unprotected network. The Diffie-Hellman key exchange method uses a discrete logarithm problem, not the secret key, to send and receive open information that was generated using a random number and the secret key.

Select **Group1**, **Group2**, **Group5**, or **Group14**.

- **Encryption**

Select **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-CBC 128**, or **AES-CBC 256**.

- **Hash**

Select **MD5**, **SHA1**, **SHA256**, **SHA384** or **SHA512**.

- **SA Lifetime**

Specify the IKE SA lifetime.

Type the time (seconds) and number of kilobytes (KByte).

Encapsulating Security

- **Protocol**

Select **ESP**, **AH** or **AH+ESP**.



- ESP is a protocol for carrying out encrypted communication using IPsec. ESP encrypts the payload (communicated contents) and adds additional information. The IP packet is comprised of the header and the encrypted payload, which follows the header. In addition to the encrypted data, the IP packet also includes information regarding the encryption method and encryption key, the authentication data, and so on.

- AH is part of the IPsec protocol that authenticates the sender and prevents manipulation (ensures the completeness) of the data. In the IP packet, the data is inserted immediately after the header. In addition, the packets include hash values, which are calculated using an equation from the communicated contents, secret key, and so on, in order to prevent the falsification of the sender and manipulation of the data. Unlike ESP, the communicated contents are not encrypted, and the data is sent and received as plain text.

- **Encryption**

Select **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-CBC 128**, or **AES-CBC 256**. The encryption can be selected only when **ESP** is selected in **Protocol**.

- **Hash**

Select **None**, **MD5**, **SHA1**, **SHA256**, **SHA384**, or **SHA512**.

When **AH+ESP** is selected in **Protocol**, select each protocol for **Hash(ESP)** and **Hash(AH)**.

- **SA Lifetime**

Specify the IPsec SA lifetime.

Type the time (seconds) and number of kilobytes (KByte) before the IPsec SA will expire.

- **Encapsulation Mode**

Select **Transport** or **Tunnel**.

- **Remote Router IP-Address**

Type the IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the remote router. Enter this information only when the **Tunnel** mode is selected.



SA (Security Association) is an encrypted communication method using IPsec or IPv6 that exchanges and shares information, such as the encryption method and encryption key, in order to establish a secure communication channel before communication begins. SA may also refer to a virtual encrypted communication channel that has been established. The SA used for IPsec establishes the encryption method, exchanges the keys, and carries out mutual authentication according to the IKE (Internet Key Exchange) standard procedure. In addition, the SA is updated periodically.

Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)

PFS does not derive keys from previous keys that were used to encrypt messages. In addition, if a key that is used to encrypt a message was derived from a parent key, that parent key is not used to derive other keys. Therefore, even if a key is compromised, the damage will be limited only to the messages that were encrypted using that key.

Select **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

Authentication Method

Select the authentication method. Select **Pre-Shared Key** or **Certificates**.

Pre-Shared Key

When encrypting communication, the encryption key is exchanged and shared beforehand using another channel.

If you selected **Pre-Shared Key** for the **Authentication Method**, type the **Pre-Shared Key** (up to 32 characters).

- **Local/ID Type/ID**

Select the sender's ID type, and then type the ID.

Select **IPv4 Address**, **IPv6 Address**, **FQDN**, **E-mail Address**, or **Certificate** for the type.

If you select **Certificate**, type the common name of the certificate in the **ID** field.

- **Remote/ID Type/ID**

Select the recipient's ID type, and then type the ID.

Select **IPv4 Address**, **IPv6 Address**, **FQDN**, **E-mail Address**, or **Certificate** for the type.

If you select **Certificate**, type the common name of the certificate in the **ID** field.

Certificate

If you selected **Certificates** for **Authentication Method**, select the certificate.



You can select only the certificates that were created using the **Certificate** page of Web Based Management's Security configuration screen.



Related Information

- [Configure an IPsec Template Using Web Based Management](#)
-

IKEv2 Settings for an IPsec Template

IPsec Template 1 ?

Template Name

Use Prefixed Template

Internet Key Exchange (IKE) IKEv1 IKEv2 Manual

Authentication Type

Diffie-Hellman Group Group1 Group2 Group5 Group14

Encryption DES 3DES AES-CBC 128
 AES-CBC 256

Hash MD5 SHA1 SHA256 SHA384
 SHA512

SA Lifetime second(s)
(240 – 63072000)

KByte
(10 – 2097152)

Encapsulating Security

Protocol ESP

Encryption DES 3DES AES-CBC 128
 AES-CBC 256

Hash MD5 SHA1 SHA256 SHA384
 SHA512

SA Lifetime second(s)
(120 – 4233600)

KByte
(10 – 4194304)

Encapsulation Mode Transport Tunnel

Remote Router IP-Address

Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS) Enabled Disabled

Authentication Method Pre-Shared Key
 Certificates
 EAP - MD5
 EAP - MS-CHAPv2

Pre-Shared Key

Local

ID Type

ID

Remote

ID Type

ID

[Certificate>>](#)

Template Name
Type a name for the template (up to 16 characters).

Use Prefixed Template

Select **Custom**, **IKEv2 High Security**, or **IKEv2 Medium Security**. The setting items are different depending on the selected template.

Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

IKE is a communication protocol that is used to exchange encryption keys in order to carry out encrypted communication using IPsec. To carry out encrypted communication for that time only, the encryption algorithm that is necessary for IPsec is determined and the encryption keys are shared. For IKE, the encryption keys are exchanged using the Diffie-Hellman key exchange method, and encrypted communication that is limited to IKE is carried out.

If you selected **Custom** in **Use Prefixed Template**, select **IKEv2**.

Authentication Type

Configure the IKE authentication and encryption.

- **Diffie-Hellman Group**

This key exchange method allows secret keys to be securely exchanged over an unprotected network. The Diffie-Hellman key exchange method uses a discrete logarithm problem, not the secret key, to send and receive open information that was generated using a random number and the secret key.

Select **Group1**, **Group2**, **Group5**, or **Group14**.

- **Encryption**

Select **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-CBC 128**, or **AES-CBC 256**.

- **Hash**

Select **MD5**, **SHA1**, **SHA256**, **SHA384** or **SHA512**.

- **SA Lifetime**

Specify the IKE SA lifetime.

Type the time (seconds) and number of kilobytes (KByte).

Encapsulating Security

- **Protocol**

Select **ESP**.



ESP is a protocol for carrying out encrypted communication using IPsec. ESP encrypts the payload (communicated contents) and adds additional information. The IP packet is comprised of the header and the encrypted payload, which follows the header. In addition to the encrypted data, the IP packet also includes information regarding the encryption method and encryption key, the authentication data, and so on.

- **Encryption**

Select **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-CBC 128**, or **AES-CBC 256**.

- **Hash**

Select **MD5**, **SHA1**, **SHA256**, **SHA384**, or **SHA512**.

- **SA Lifetime**

Specify the IPsec SA lifetime.

Type the time (seconds) and number of kilobytes (KByte) before the IPsec SA will expire.

- **Encapsulation Mode**

Select **Transport** or **Tunnel**.

- **Remote Router IP-Address**

Type the IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the remote router. Enter this information only when the **Tunnel** mode is selected.



SA (Security Association) is an encrypted communication method using IPsec or IPv6 that exchanges and shares information, such as the encryption method and encryption key, in order to establish a secure communication channel before communication begins. SA may also refer to a virtual encrypted communication channel that has been established. The SA used for IPsec establishes the encryption method, exchanges the keys, and carries out mutual authentication according to the IKE (Internet Key Exchange) standard procedure. In addition, the SA is updated periodically.

Perfect Forward Secrecy (PFS)

PFS does not derive keys from previous keys that were used to encrypt messages. In addition, if a key that is used to encrypt a message was derived from a parent key, that parent key is not used to derive other keys. Therefore, even if a key is compromised, the damage will be limited only to the messages that were encrypted using that key.

Select **Enabled** or **Disabled**.

Authentication Method

Select the authentication method. Select **Pre-Shared Key**, **Certificates**, **EAP - MD5**, or **EAP - MS-CHAPv2**.

Pre-Shared Key

When encrypting communication, the encryption key is exchanged and shared beforehand using another channel.

If you selected **Pre-Shared Key** for the **Authentication Method**, type the **Pre-Shared Key** (up to 32 characters).

- **Local/ID Type/ID**

Select the sender's ID type, and then type the ID.

Select **IPv4 Address**, **IPv6 Address**, **FQDN**, **E-mail Address**, or **Certificate** for the type.

If you select **Certificate**, type the common name of the certificate in the **ID** field.

- **Remote/ID Type/ID**

Select the recipient's ID type, and then type the ID.

Select **IPv4 Address**, **IPv6 Address**, **FQDN**, **E-mail Address**, or **Certificate** for the type.

If you select **Certificate**, type the common name of the certificate in the **ID** field.

Certificate

If you selected **Certificates** for **Authentication Method**, select the certificate.



You can select only the certificates that were created using the **Certificate** page of Web Based Management's Security configuration screen.

EAP

EAP is an authentication protocol that is an extension of PPP. By using EAP with IEEE802.1x, a different key is used for user authentication during each session.

The following settings are necessary only when **EAP - MD5** or **EAP - MS-CHAPv2** is selected in **Authentication Method**:

- **Mode**

Select **Server-Mode** or **Client-Mode**.

- **Certificate**

Select the certificate.

- **User Name**

Type the user name (up to 32 characters).

- **Password**

Type the password (up to 32 characters). The password must be entered two times for confirmation.



Related Information

- [Configure an IPsec Template Using Web Based Management](#)
-

Manual Settings for an IPsec Template

IPsec Template 1 ?

Template Name	<input type="text"/>
Use Prefixed Template	<input type="text" value="Custom"/>

Internet Key Exchange (IKE) IKEv1 IKEv2 Manual

Authentication Key (ESP, AH)

In	<input type="text"/>
Out	<input type="text"/>

Code key (ESP)

In	<input type="text"/>
Out	<input type="text"/>

SPI

In	<input type="text" value="256"/>
Out	<input type="text" value="256"/>

Encapsulating Security

Protocol	<input checked="" type="radio"/> ESP <input type="radio"/> AH
Encryption	<input type="text" value="DES"/>
Hash	<input type="text" value="MD5"/>
SA Lifetime	<input type="text" value="43200"/> second(s) <small>(120 – 4233600)</small>
	<input type="text" value="65536"/> KByte <small>(10 – 4194304)</small>
Encapsulation Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Transport <input type="radio"/> Tunnel
Remote Router IP-Address	<input type="text"/>

[Certificate](#)

Template Name

Type a name for the template (up to 16 characters).

Use Prefixed Template

Select **Custom**.

Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

IKE is a communication protocol that is used to exchange encryption keys in order to carry out encrypted communication using IPsec. To carry out encrypted communication for that time only, the encryption algorithm that is necessary for IPsec is determined and the encryption keys are shared. For IKE, the encryption keys are exchanged using the Diffie-Hellman key exchange method, and encrypted communication that is limited to IKE is carried out.

Select **Manual**.

Authentication Key (ESP,AH)

Specify the key to use for authentication. Type the **In/Out** values.

These settings are necessary when **Custom** is selected for **Use Prefixed Template**, **Manual** is selected for **Internet Key Exchange (IKE)**, and a setting other than **None** is selected for **Hash** for **Encapsulating Security** section.



The number of characters you can set differs depending on the setting you chose for **Hash** in the **Encapsulating Security** section.

If the length of the specified authentication key is different than the selected hash algorithm, an error will occur.

- **MD5**: 128 bits (16 bytes)
- **SHA1**: 160 bits (20 bytes)
- **SHA256**: 256 bits (32 bytes)
- **SHA384**: 384 bits (48 bytes)
- **SHA512**: 512 bits (64 bytes)

When you specify the key in ASCII Code, enclose the characters in double quotation marks ("").

Code key (ESP)

Specify the key to use for encryption. Type the **In/Out** values.

These settings are necessary when **Custom** is selected in **Use Prefixed Template**, **Manual** is selected in **Internet Key Exchange (IKE)**, and **ESP** is selected in **Protocol** in **Encapsulating Security**.



The number of characters you can set differs depending on the setting you chose for **Encryption** in the **Encapsulating Security** section.

If the length of the specified code key is different than the selected encryption algorithm, an error will occur.

- **DES**: 64 bits (8 bytes)
- **3DES**: 192 bits (24 bytes)
- **AES-CBC 128**: 128 bits (16 bytes)
- **AES-CBC 256**: 256 bits (32 bytes)

When you specify the key in ASCII Code, enclose the characters in double quotation marks ("").

SPI

These parameters are used to identify security information. Generally, a host has multiple Security Associations (SAs) for several types of IPsec communication. Therefore, it is necessary to identify the applicable SA when an IPsec packet is received. The SPI parameter, which identifies the SA, is included in the Authentication Header (AH) and Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) header.

These settings are necessary when **Custom** is selected for **Use Prefixed Template**, and **Manual** is selected for **Internet Key Exchange (IKE)**.

Enter the **In/Out** values. (3-10 characters)

Encapsulating Security

- **Protocol**
Select **ESP** or **AH**.



- ESP is a protocol for carrying out encrypted communication using IPsec. ESP encrypts the payload (communicated contents) and adds additional information. The IP packet is comprised of the header and the encrypted payload, which follows the header. In addition to the encrypted data, the IP packet also includes information regarding the encryption method and encryption key, the authentication data, and so on.
- AH is part of the IPsec protocol that authenticates the sender and prevents manipulation of the data (ensures the completeness of the data). In the IP packet, the data is inserted immediately after the header. In addition, the packets include hash values, which are calculated using an equation from the communicated contents, secret key, and so on, in order to prevent the falsification of the sender and manipulation of the data. Unlike ESP, the communicated contents are not encrypted, and the data is sent and received as plain text.

- **Encryption**

Select **DES**, **3DES**, **AES-CBC 128**, or **AES-CBC 256**. The encryption can be selected only when **ESP** is selected in **Protocol**.

- **Hash**

Select **None**, **MD5**, **SHA1**, **SHA256**, **SHA384**, or **SHA512**. **None** can be selected only when **ESP** is selected in **Protocol**.

- **SA Lifetime**

Specify the IKE SA lifetime.

Type the time (seconds) and number of kilobytes (KByte) before the IPsec SA will expire.

- **Encapsulation Mode**

Select **Transport** or **Tunnel**.

- **Remote Router IP-Address**

Specify the IP address (IPv4 or IPv6) of the connection destination. Enter this information only when the **Tunnel** mode is selected.



SA (Security Association) is an encrypted communication method using IPsec or IPv6 that exchanges and shares information, such as the encryption method and encryption key, in order to establish a secure communication channel before communication begins. SA may also refer to a virtual encrypted communication channel that has been established. The SA used for IPsec establishes the encryption method, exchanges the keys, and carries out mutual authentication according to the IKE (Internet Key Exchange) standard procedure. In addition, the SA is updated periodically.



Related Information

- [Configure an IPsec Template Using Web Based Management](#)
-

Send or Receive an Email Securely

- [Configure Email Sending or Receiving Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Send an Email with User Authentication](#)
- [Send or Receive an Email Securely Using SSL TLS](#)

Configure Email Sending or Receiving Using Web Based Management

We recommend using Web Based Management to configure secured email sending with user authentication, or email sending and receiving using SSL/TLS.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Click **Protocol** in the left navigation bar.
6. In the **POP3/IMAP4/SMTP** field, click **Advanced Settings** and make sure the status of **POP3/IMAP4/SMTP** is **Enabled**.
7. Configure the **POP3/IMAP4/SMTP** settings.
 - Confirm that the email settings are correct after configuration by sending a test email.
 - If you do not know the POP3/IMAP4/SMTP server settings, contact your network administrator or Internet Service Provider (ISP).
8. When finished, click **Submit**.
The **Test Send/Receive E-mail Configuration** dialog box appears.
9. Follow the instructions in the dialog box to test the current settings.



Related Information

- [Send or Receive an Email Securely](#)

Send an Email with User Authentication

Your machine supports the SMTP-AUTH method to send email via an email server that requires user authentication. This method prevents unauthorised users from accessing the email server.

You can use SMTP-AUTH for email notification, email reports and I-Fax.



We recommend using Web Based Management to configure the SMTP authentication.

Email Server Settings

You must configure your machine's SMTP authentication method to match the method used by your email server. For details about your email server settings, contact your network administrator or Internet Service Provider (ISP).



To enable SMTP server authentication: in the Web Based Management **POP3/IMAP4/SMTP** screen, under **Server Authentication Method**, you must select **SMTP-AUTH**.



Related Information

- [Send or Receive an Email Securely](#)

Send or Receive an Email Securely Using SSL/TLS

Your machine supports SSL/TLS methods to send or receive an email via an email server that requires secure SSL/TLS communication. To send or receive email via an email server that is using SSL/TLS communication, you must configure SMTP over SSL/TLS, POP3 over SSL/TLS, or IMAP4 over SSL/TLS.



We recommend using Web Based Management to configure SSL/TLS.

Verify Server Certificate

Under **SSL/TLS**, if you choose **SSL** or **TLS**, the **Verify Server Certificate** check box will be selected automatically.

POP3/IMAP4/SMTP

Cancel Submit

Status Enabled

Send E-mail Settings(SMTP)

Server Address: 0.0.0.0

Port: 25

Server Authentication Method: None
 SMTP-AUTH

SMTP-AUTH Account Name:

SMTP-AUTH Account Password:

Enter password:

Retype password:

SSL/TLS: None
 SSL
 TLS
 Verify Server Certificate

Device E-mail Address:

Receive E-mail Settings(POP3/IMAP4)

Protocol: POP3 IMAP4

Server Address: 0.0.0.0

Port: 110

Mailbox Name:

Mailbox Password:

Enter password:

Retype password:

Use APOP (POP3 Only)

Select Mail Folder Name(IMAP4 Only): Default((inbox)
 Specified:

SSL/TLS: None
 SSL
 TLS
 Verify Server Certificate

Segmented Message Timeout: 120 minute(s)

[I-Fax>>](#)

[CA Certificate>>](#)

[E-mail report>>](#)

[Notification>>](#)

Cancel Submit



- Before you verify the server certificate, you must import the CA certificate issued by the CA that signed the server certificate. Contact your network administrator or your Internet Service Provider (ISP) to confirm if importing a CA certificate is necessary.
- If you do not need to verify the server certificate, clear the **Verify Server Certificate** check box.



Related Information

- [Send or Receive an Email Securely](#)

Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network

- [What Is IEEE 802.1x Authentication?](#)
- [Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network Using Web Based Management \(Web Browser\)](#)
- [IEEE 802.1x Authentication Methods](#)

What Is IEEE 802.1x Authentication?

IEEE 802.1x is an IEEE standard for wired and wireless networks that limits access from unauthorised network devices. Your machine (supplicant) sends an authentication request to a RADIUS server (Authentication server) through your access point or HUB. After your request has been verified by the RADIUS server, your machine can access the network.



Related Information

- [Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network](#)
-

Configure IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network Using Web Based Management (Web Browser)

- If you configure your machine using EAP-TLS authentication, you must install the client certificate issued by a CA before you start configuration. Contact your network administrator about the client certificate. If you have installed more than one certificate, we recommend writing down the certificate name you want to use.
- Before you verify the server certificate, you must import the CA certificate that has been issued by the CA that signed the server certificate. Contact your network administrator or your Internet Service Provider (ISP) to confirm whether a CA certificate import is necessary.



You can also configure IEEE 802.1x authentication using:

- Wireless setup wizard from the control panel (Wireless network)
- Wireless setup wizard on the Drivers & Utilities CD (Wireless network)

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Network** tab.
5. Do one of the following:

Option	Description
Wired network	Click the Wired tab in the left navigation bar, and then select Wired 802.1x Authentication .
Wireless network	Click the Wireless tab in the left navigation bar, and then select Wireless (Enterprise) .

6. Configure the IEEE 802.1x authentication settings.



- To enable IEEE 802.1x authentication for wired networks, select **Enabled** for **Wired 802.1x status** on the **Wired 802.1x Authentication** page.
- If you are using **EAP-TLS** authentication, you must select the client certificate that has been installed (shown with certificate name) for verification from the **Client Certificate** drop-down list.
- If you select **EAP-FAST**, **PEAP**, **EAP-TTLS**, or **EAP-TLS** authentication, select the verification method from the **Server Certificate Verification** drop-down list. Verify the server certificate using the CA certificate, imported to the machine in advance, that has been issued by the CA that signed the server certificate.

Select one of the following verification methods from the **Server Certificate Verification** drop-down list:

Option	Description
No Verification	The server certificate can always be trusted. The verification is not performed.
CA Cert.	The verification method to check the CA reliability of the server certificate, using the CA certificate that has been issued by the CA that signed the server certificate.
CA Cert. + ServerID	The verification method to check the common name ¹ value of the server certificate, in addition to the CA reliability of the server certificate.

7. When finished with configuration, click **Submit**.

For wired networks: After configuring, connect your machine to the IEEE 802.1x supported network. After a few minutes, print the Network Configuration Report to check the **<Wired IEEE 802.1x>** Status.

Option	Description
Success	The wired IEEE 802.1x function is enabled and the authentication was successful.
Failed	The wired IEEE 802.1x function is enabled; however, the authentication failed.
Off	The wired IEEE 802.1x function is not available.



Related Information

- [Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network](#)

¹ The common name verification compares the common name of the server certificate to the character string configured for the **Server ID**. Before you use this method, contact your system administrator about the server certificate's common name and then configure **Server ID**.

IEEE 802.1x Authentication Methods

LEAP (Wireless network)

Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol (LEAP) is a proprietary EAP method developed by Cisco Systems, Inc., which uses a user ID and password for authentication.

EAP-FAST

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Flexible Authentication via Secured Tunneling (EAP-FAST) has been developed by Cisco Systems, Inc., which uses a user ID and password for authentication, and symmetric key algorithms to achieve a tunnelled authentication process.

This machine supports the following inner authentication methods:

- EAP-FAST/NONE
- EAP-FAST/MS-CHAPv2
- EAP-FAST/GTC

EAP-MD5 (Wired network)

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Message Digest Algorithm 5 (EAP-MD5) uses a user ID and password for challenge-response authentication.

PEAP

Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol (PEAP) is a version of EAP method developed by Cisco Systems, Inc., Microsoft Corporation and RSA Security. PEAP creates an encrypted Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)/Transport Layer Security (TLS) tunnel between a client and an authentication server, for sending a user ID and password. PEAP provides mutual authentication between the server and the client.

This machine supports the following inner authentications:

- PEAP/MS-CHAPv2
- PEAP/GTC

EAP-TTLS

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Tunneled Transport Layer Security (EAP-TTLS) has been developed by Funk Software and Certicom. EAP-TTLS creates a similar encrypted SSL tunnel to PEAP, between a client and an authentication server, for sending a user ID and password. EAP-TTLS provides mutual authentication between the server and the client.

This machine supports the following inner authentications:

- EAP-TTLS/CHAP
- EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAP
- EAP-TTLS/MS-CHAPv2
- EAP-TTLS/PAP

EAP-TLS

Extensible Authentication Protocol-Transport Layer Security (EAP-TLS) requires digital certificate authentication both at a client and an authentication server.



Related Information

- [Use IEEE 802.1x Authentication for a Wired or a Wireless Network](#)

Store Print Log to Network

- [Store Log to Network Overview](#)
- [Configure the Store Print Log to Network Settings Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Use the Store Print Log to Network's Error Detection Setting](#)
- [Use Store Print Log to Network with Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)

Store Log to Network Overview

The Store Print Log to Network feature allows you to save the print log file from your machine to a network server using the Common Internet File System (CIFS) protocol. You can record the ID, type of print job, job name, user name, date, time and the number of printed pages for every print job. CIFS is a protocol that runs over TCP/IP, allowing computers on a network to share files over an intranet or the Internet.

The following print functions are recorded in the print log:

- Print jobs from your computer
- USB Direct Print
- Copy
- Received Fax




- The Store Print Log to Network feature supports Kerberos authentication and NTLMv2 authentication. You must configure the SNTP protocol (network time server), or you must set the date, time and time zone correctly on the control panel for authentication.
- You can set the file type to TXT or CSV when storing a file to the server.





Related Information

- [Store Print Log to Network](#)

Configure the Store Print Log to Network Settings Using Web Based Management

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).
For example:
http://192.168.1.2
3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Administrator** tab.
5. Click the **Store Print Log to Network** menu.
6. In the **Print Log** field, click **On**.
7. Configure the following settings:

Option	Description
Network Folder Path	Type the destination folder where your log will be stored on the CIFS server (for example: share\abc).
File Name	Type the file name you want to use for the print log (up to 32 characters).
File Type	Select the TXT or CSV option for the Print Log file type.
Auth. Method	<p>Select the authentication method required for access to the CIFS server: Auto, Kerberos, or NTLMv2. Kerberos is an authentication protocol which allows devices or individuals to securely prove their identity to network servers using a single sign-on. NTLMv2 is the authentication method used by Windows to log into servers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Auto: If you select Auto, NTLMv2 will be used to the authentication method.• Kerberos: Select the Kerberos option to use Kerberos authentication only.• NTLMv2: Select the NTLMv2 option to use NTLMv2 authentication only. <p> For the Kerberos and NTLMv2 authentication, you must also configure the Date&Time settings or the SNTP protocol (network time server) and DNS server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• You can also configure the <code>Date & Time</code> settings from the machine's control panel.
Username	Type the user name for the authentication (up to 96 characters).  If the user name is part of a domain, enter the user name in one of the following styles: <code>user@domain</code> or <code>domain\user</code> .
Password	Type the password for the authentication (up to 32 characters).
Kerberos Server Address (if needed)	Type the KDC host address (for example: kerberos.example.com; up to 64 characters) or the IP address (for example: 192.168.56.189).
Error Detection Setting	Choose what action should be taken when the Print Log cannot be stored to the server due to a network error.

8. In the **Connection Status** field, confirm the last log status.



You can also confirm the error status on the LCD of your machine.

9. Click **Submit** to display the **Test Print Log to Network** page.
To test your settings, click **Yes** and then go to the next step.
To skip the test, click **No**. Your settings will be submitted automatically.
10. The machine will test your settings.
11. If your settings are accepted, **Test OK** appears on the screen.
If **Test Error** appears, check all settings, and then click **Submit** to display the Test page again.



Related Information

- [Store Print Log to Network](#)

Related Topics:

- [Synchronize Time with the SNTP Server Using Web Based Management](#)
 - [Configure the SNTP Protocol Using Web Based Management](#)
-


Use the Store Print Log to Network's Error Detection Setting


Use Error Detection Settings to determine the action that is taken when the print log cannot be stored to the server due to a network error.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click the **Administrator** tab.
5. Click the **Store Print Log to Network** menu in the left navigation bar.
6. In the **Error Detection Setting** section, select the **Cancel Print** or **Ignore Log & Print** option.

Option	Description
Cancel Print	If you select the Cancel Print option, the print jobs are cancelled when the print log cannot be stored to the server.  Even if you select the Cancel Print option, your machine will print a received fax.

Ignore Log & Print If you select the **Ignore Log & Print** option, the machine prints the documentation even if the print log cannot be stored to the server.

When the store print log function has recovered, the print log is recorded as follows:

```
Id, Type, Job Name, User Name, Date, Time, Print Pages
```

```
1, Print(xxxxxxx), "Document01.doc", "user01", 03/03/20xx, 14:01:32, 52
```

```
2, Print(xxxxxxx), "Document02.doc", "user01", 03/03/20xx, 14:45:30, ?
```

```
3, <ERROR>, ?, ?, ?, ?, ?
```

```
4, Print(xxxxxxx), "Report01.xls", "user02", 03/03/20xx, 19:30:40, 4
```

- a. If the log cannot be stored at the end of printing, the print log except the number of printed pages will be recorded.
- b. If the print log cannot be stored at the beginning and the end of printing, the print log of the job will not be recorded. When the function has recovered, the error is reflected in the log.

7. Click **Submit** to display the **Test Print Log to Network** page.
To test your settings, click **Yes** and then go to the next step.
To skip the test, click **No**. Your settings will be submitted automatically.
8. The machine will test your settings.
9. If your settings are accepted, **Test OK** appears on the screen.
If **Test Error** appears, check all settings, and then click **Submit** to display the Test page again.



Related Information

- [Store Print Log to Network](#)

Use Store Print Log to Network with Secure Function Lock 3.0

When Secure Function Lock 3.0 is active, the names of the registered users for copy, Fax RX and USB Direct Print (if available) are recorded in the Store Print Log to Network report. When the Active Directory Authentication is enabled, logged on user name will be recorded in the Store Print Log to Network report:

```
Id, Type, Job Name, User Name, Date, Time, Print Pages
1, Copy, -, -, 04/04/20xx, 09:05:12, 3
2, Fax, -, -, 04/04/20xx, 09:45:30, 5
3, Copy, -, "BOB", 04/04/20xx, 10:20:30, 4
4, Fax, -, "BOB", 04/04/20xx, 10:35:12, 3
5, USB Direct, -, "JOHN", 04/04/20xx, 11:15:43, 6
```



Related Information

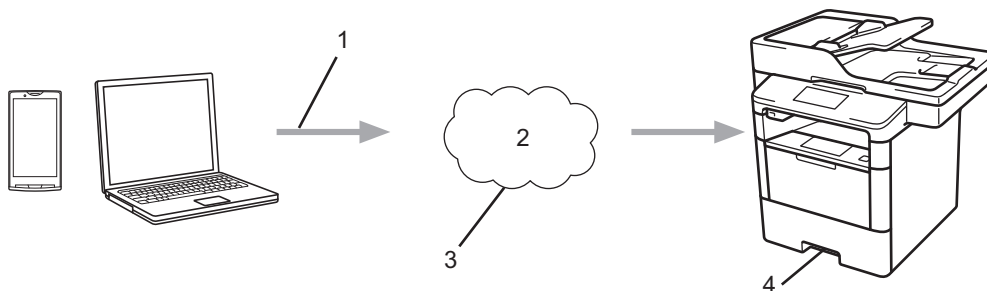
- [Store Print Log to Network](#)

Mobile/Web Connect

- [Print with Google Cloud Print™](#)
- [Print with Mopria™](#)
- [Print from a Mobile Device](#)

Print with Google Cloud Print™

Google Cloud Print™ is a Google-provided service that allows you to print to a printer registered to your Google account using a network-compatible device (such as a mobile phone or computer) without installing the printer driver on the device.



1. Print request
2. Internet
3. Google Cloud Print™
4. Printing

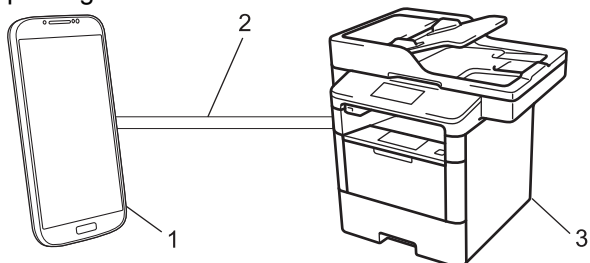


Related Information

- [Mobile/Web Connect](#)

Print with Mopria™

Mopria™ Print Service is a print feature on Android™ mobile devices (Android™ version 4.4 or later) developed by the Mopria™ Alliance. With this service, you can connect to the same network as your machine and print without additional setup. Many native Android™ apps, including Google Chrome™, Gmail, and Gallery, support printing.



1. Android™ 4.4 or later
2. Wi-Fi® Connection
3. Your machine

You must download the Mopria™ Print Service from the Google Play™ Store and install it on your Android™ device. Be sure to turn the service on before using this feature.



Related Information

- [Mobile/Web Connect](#)

Print from a Mobile Device

Use Konica Minolta Mobile Print to print from various mobile devices.

- For Android™ Devices

Konica Minolta Mobile Print allows you to use features of your machine directly from your Android™ device, without using a computer.

Download and install Konica Minolta Mobile Print from the Google Play™ Store.

- For iOS Devices

Konica Minolta Mobile Print allows you to use features of your machine directly from your iPhone, iPod touch, iPad, and iPad mini.

Download and install Konica Minolta Mobile Print from the App Store.

- For Windows Phone Devices

Konica Minolta Mobile Print allows you to use features of your machine directly from your Windows Phone, without using a computer.

Download and install Konica Minolta Mobile Print from the Windows Phone Store (Windows Phone Marketplace).

For more detailed information, see help for Konica Minolta Mobile Print.



Related Information

- [Mobile/Web Connect](#)

ControlCenter

Use ControlCenter software utility to quickly access your frequently-used applications. Using ControlCenter gives you direct access to specific applications.

- [ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)

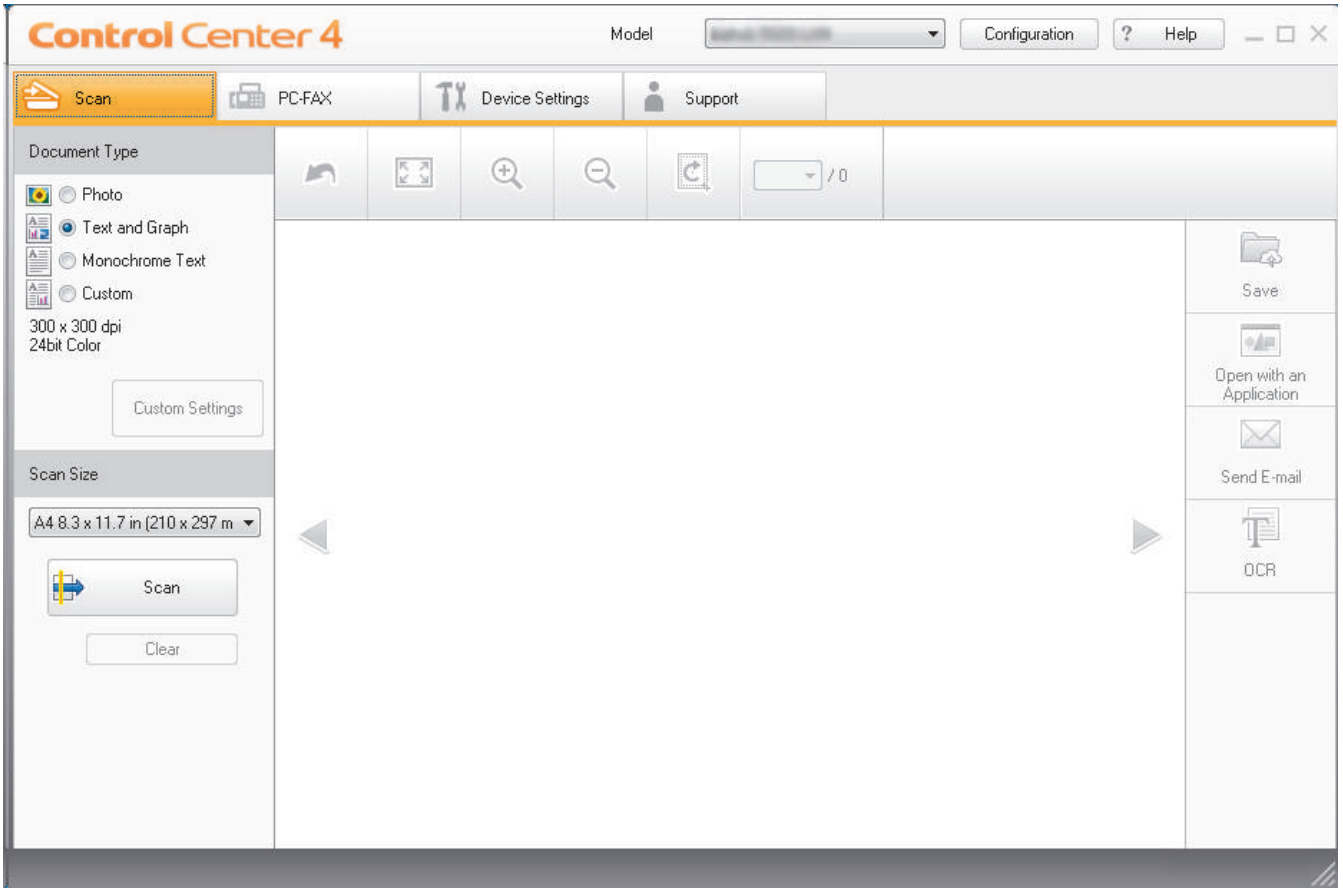
ControlCenter4 (Windows)

- [Change the Operation Mode in ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Set Up This Machine Using ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)
- [Create a Custom Tab Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)

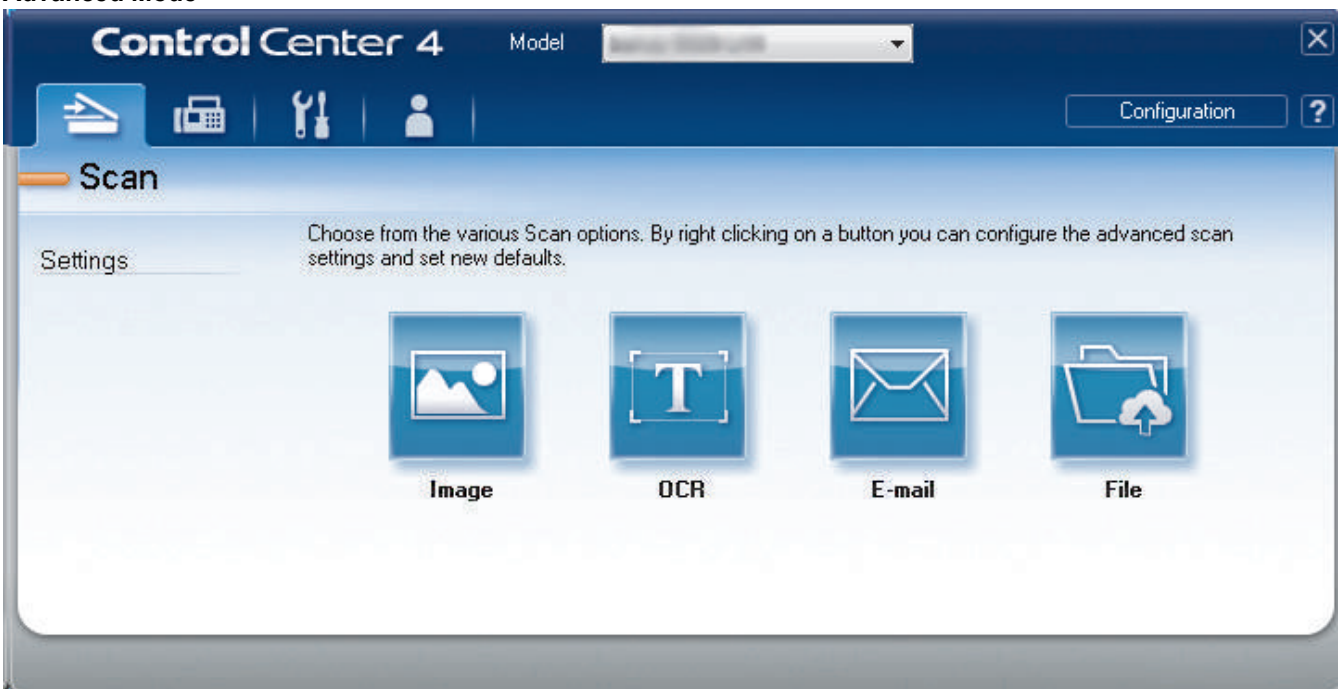
Change the Operation Mode in ControlCenter4 (Windows)

ControlCenter4 has two operation modes: **Home Mode** and **Advanced Mode**. You can change modes at any time.

Home Mode




Advanced Mode

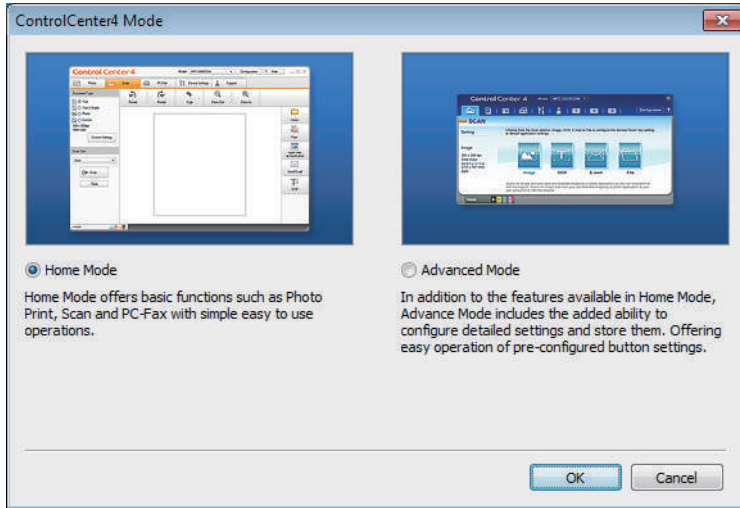


- **Home Mode**
ControlCenter4 Home Mode lets you access your machine's main features easily.
- **Advanced Mode**

ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode gives you more control over the details of your machine's features and allows you to customise one-button scan actions.

To change operation mode:

1. Click the  (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then select **Open**.
2. Click the **Configuration** button, and then select **Mode Select**.
3. The mode selection dialog box appears. Select either the **Home Mode** or **Advanced Mode** option.



4. Click **OK**.



Related Information

- [ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)
-

Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode (Windows)

Use ControlCenter4 Home Mode to access your machine's main features.

- [Scan Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Home Mode \(Windows\)](#)

Scan Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)


ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode gives you more control over the details of your machine's features and allows you to customise one-button scan actions.

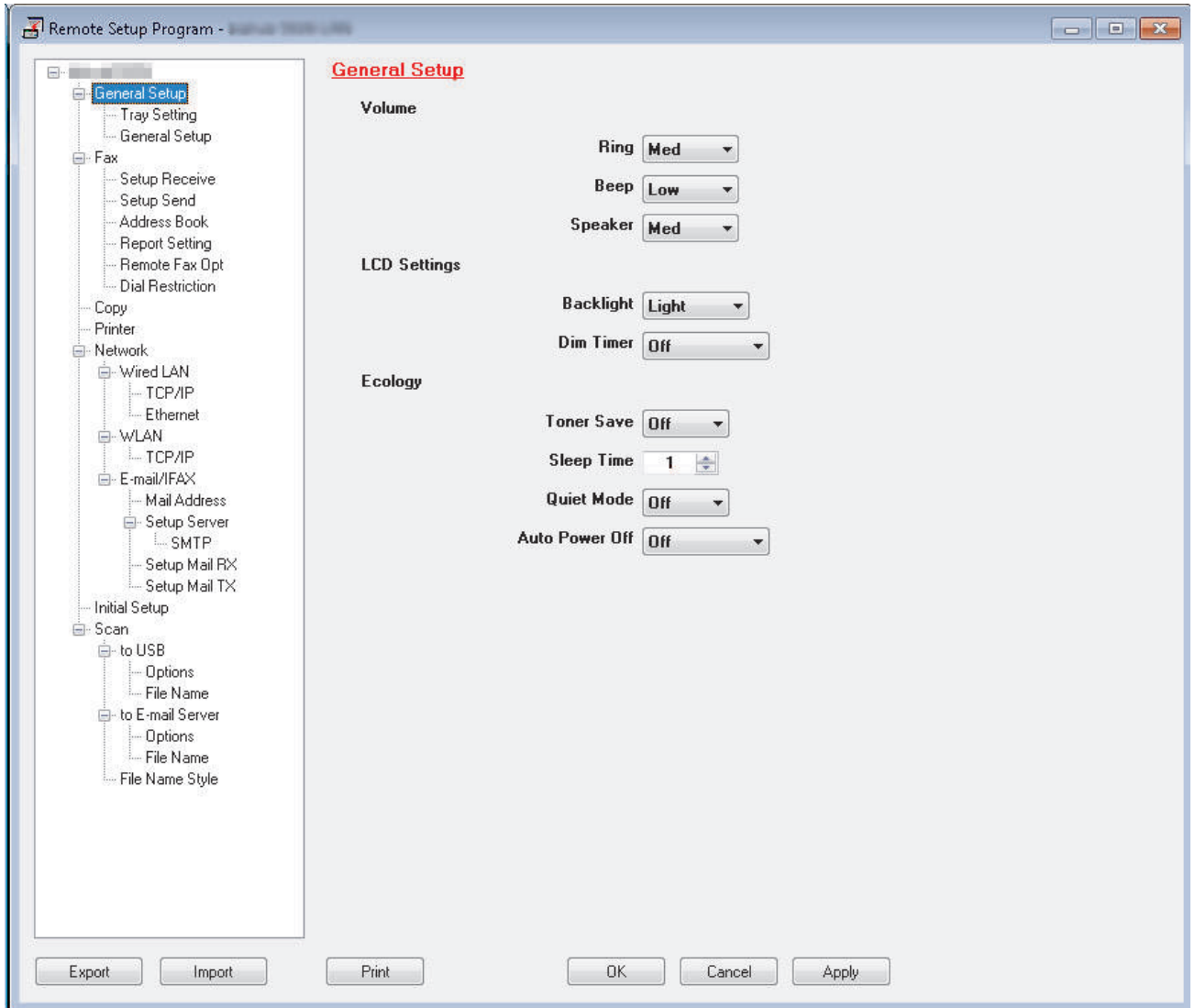
- [Scan Photos and Graphics Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Save Scanned Data to a Folder as a PDF File Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Both Sides of a Document Automatically Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Both Sides of an ID Card Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan to Email Attachment Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan to an Editable Text File \(OCR\) Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)
- [Scan Settings for ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode \(Windows\)](#)

Set Up This Machine Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)



If Secure Function Lock is set to On, you cannot use Remote Setup.

1. Click the  (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
2. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
3. Click the **Remote Setup** button.
4. Configure the settings as needed.



Export

Click to save the current configuration settings to a file.



Click **Export** to save your address book or all settings for your machine.

Import

Click to import a file and read its settings.

Print

Click to print the selected items on the machine. You cannot print the data until it is uploaded to the machine. Click **Apply** to upload the new data to the machine, and then click **Print**.

OK

Click to start uploading data to the machine, and then exit the Remote Setup Program. If an error message appears, confirm that your data is correct, and then click **OK**.

Cancel

Click to exit the Remote Setup Program without uploading data to the machine.

Apply

Click to upload data to the machine without exiting the Remote Setup Program.

5. Click **OK**.

- If your computer is protected by a firewall and is unable to use Remote Setup, you may need to configure the firewall settings to allow communication through port numbers 137 and 161.
- If you are using Windows Firewall and you installed the software and drivers from the Drivers & Utilities CD, the necessary firewall settings have already been set.


**Related Information**

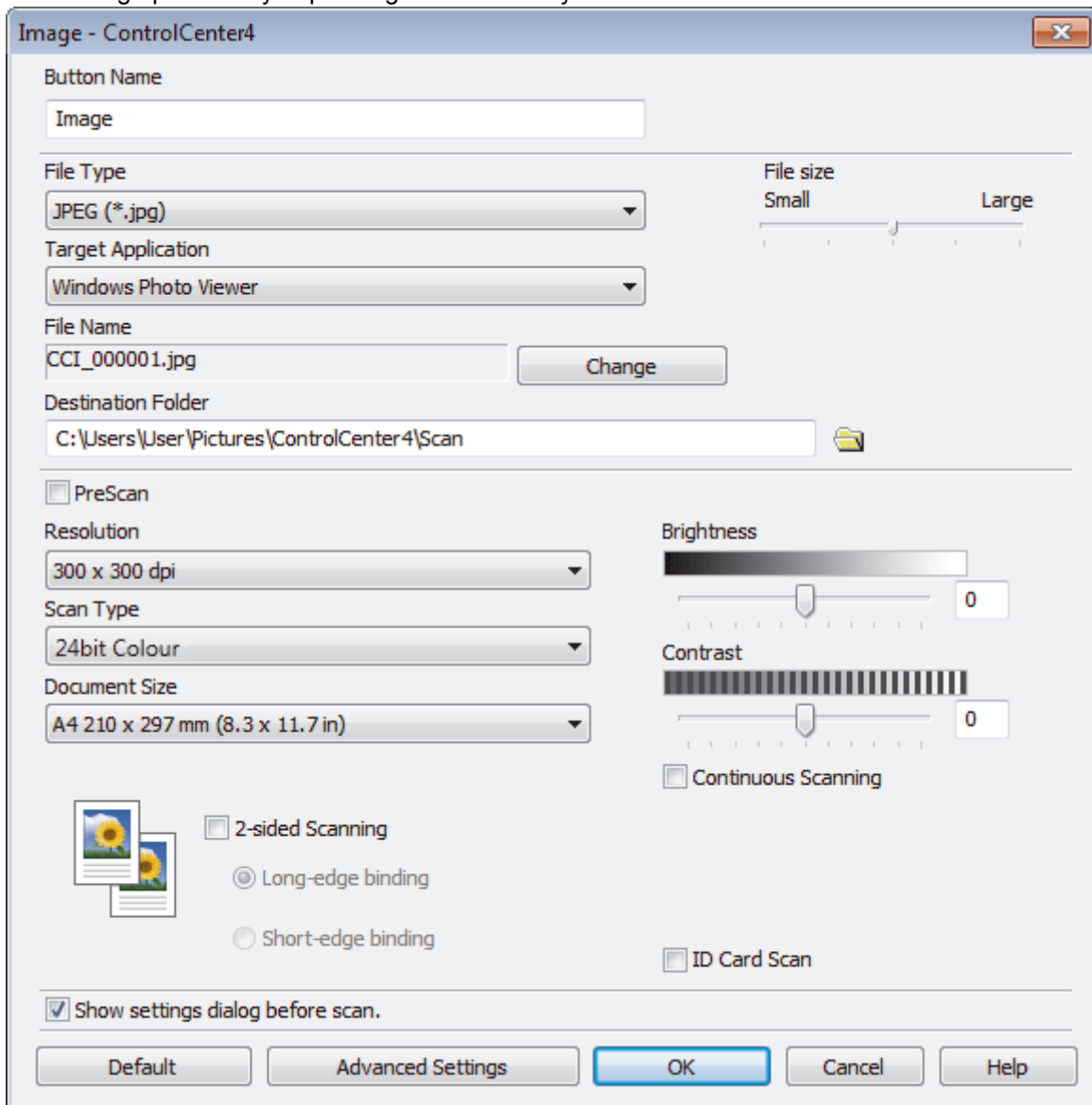
- [ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)
- [Remote Setup \(Windows\)](#)


Create a Custom Tab Using ControlCenter4 Advanced Mode (Windows)

You can create up to three customised tabs, each including up to five customised buttons, with your preferred settings.

Select **Advanced Mode** as the mode setting for ControlCenter4.

1. Click the  (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
2. Click the **Configuration** button, and then select **Create custom tab**.
A custom tab is created.
3. To change the name of a custom tab, right-click the custom tab, and then select **Rename custom tab**.
4. Click the **Configuration** button, select **Create custom button**, and then select the button you want to create.
The settings dialog box appears.
5. Type the button name, and then change the settings, if needed. Click **OK**.
The setting options vary depending on the button you select.



 You can change or remove the created tab, button, or settings. Click the **Configuration** button, and then follow the menu.



Related Information

- [ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)
-

Troubleshooting

Use this section to resolve typical problems you may encounter when using your machine. You can correct most problems yourself.

IMPORTANT

For technical help, you must call customer service or your local dealer.

Using non-genuine supplies may affect the print quality, hardware performance, and machine reliability.

First, check the following:

- The machine's power cord is connected correctly and the machine's power is on.
- All of the protective materials have been removed.
- Paper is loaded correctly in the paper tray.
- The interface cables are securely connected to the machine and the computer, or the wireless connection is set up on both the machine and your computer.
- Error and maintenance messages

If you did not solve the problem with the checks, identify the problem and then see *Related Information*.



Related Information


- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)
- [Document Jams](#)
- [Paper Jams](#)
- [Printing Problems](#)
- [Improve the Print Quality](#)
- [Telephone and Fax Problems](#)
- [Network Problems](#)
- [Other Problems](#)
- [Check the Machine Information](#)
- [Reset Your Machine](#)


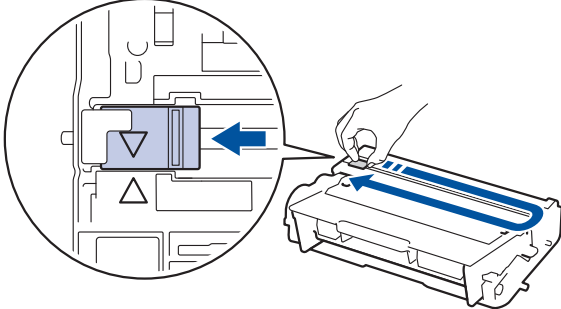
Error and Maintenance Messages


As with any sophisticated office product, errors may occur and supply items may have to be replaced. If this happens, your machine identifies the error or required routine maintenance and shows the appropriate message. The most common error and maintenance messages are shown in the table.







Follow the instructions in the **Action** column to solve the error and remove the message.




You can correct most errors and perform routine maintenance by yourself. If you need more tips: Contact customer support.

Error Message	Cause	Action
2-sided Disabled	The back cover of the machine is not closed completely.	Close the back cover of the machine until it locks in the closed position.
	The 2-sided tray is not installed completely.	Install the 2-sided tray firmly in the machine.
Access Denied	The function you want to use is restricted by Secure Function Lock 3.0.	Call your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock Settings.
BT Call Sign On (For U.K.)	The BT Call Sign setting is on. You cannot change the Receive Mode from Manual to another mode.	Set the BT Call Sign setting to off.
Cartridge Error	The toner cartridge is not installed correctly.	Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly. Take out the toner cartridge, and put it back in the imaging unit again. Reinstall the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly in the machine. If the problem continues, contact customer support.
Comm.Error	Poor telephone line quality caused a communication error.	Send the fax again or connect the machine to another telephone line. If the problem continues, contact the telephone company and ask them to check your telephone line.
Cooling Down	The temperature of the inside of the machine is too hot. The machine will pause its current print job and go into cooling down mode.	Make sure you can hear the fan in the machine spinning and that the exhaust outlet is not blocked. If the fan is spinning, remove any obstacles that surround the exhaust outlet, and then leave the machine turned on but do not use it for several minutes. If the fan is not spinning, disconnect the machine from the power for several minutes, then reconnect it.
Cover is Open	The front cover is not completely closed.	Open and then firmly close the front cover of the machine.
Cover is Open.	The fuser cover is not completely closed or paper was jammed in the back of the machine when you turned on the power.	Close the fuser cover located inside the back cover of the machine. Make sure paper is not jammed inside the back of the machine, and then close the fuser cover.
Cover is Open.	The ADF cover is not completely closed.	Close the ADF cover. If the error message remains, press  .

Error Message	Cause	Action
Disconnected	The other person or other person's fax machine stopped the call.	Try to send or receive again. If calls are stopped repeatedly and you are using a VoIP (Voice over IP) system, try changing the Compatibility to Basic (for VoIP).
Document Jam	The document was not inserted or fed correctly, or the document scanned from the ADF was too long.	Remove the jammed paper from the ADF unit. Clear any debris or scraps of paper from the ADF unit paper path. Press  .
Drum !	The corona wire on the imaging unit must be cleaned.	Clean the corona wire on the imaging unit.  <i>See Related Information: Clean the Corona Wire.</i> If the problem continues, replace the imaging unit with a new one.
	The imaging unit or the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly is not installed correctly.	Remove the imaging unit, remove the toner cartridge from the imaging unit, and put the toner cartridge back into the imaging unit. Reinstall the imaging unit in the machine.
Jam 2-sided	The paper is jammed in the 2-sided tray or inside the back cover.	Remove the 2-sided tray and open the back cover to pull out all jammed paper.
Jam Inside	The paper is jammed inside the machine.	Open the front cover, remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly, and pull out all jammed paper. Close the front cover.
Jam MP Tray	The paper is jammed in the MP tray.	Remove all jammed paper from in and around the MP tray. Press <i>Retry</i> .
Jam Rear	The paper is jammed in the back of the machine.	Open the fuser cover and remove all jammed paper. Close the fuser cover.
Jam Tray 1 Jam Tray 2 Jam Tray 3	The paper is jammed in the indicated paper tray.	Pull out the paper tray and remove all jammed paper as shown in the animation on the LCD.
Limit Exceeded	The print limit set in Secure Function Lock 3.0 was reached.	Call your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock Settings.
Media Type Mismatch	The media type specified in the printer driver differs from the paper type specified in the machine's menu.	Load the correct type of paper in the tray indicated on the LCD, and then select the correct media type in the Paper Type setting on the machine.
No Drum Unit	The imaging unit is not installed correctly.	Reinstall the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly.
No HUB Support	A USB hub device is connected to the USB direct interface.	Disconnect the USB hub device from the USB direct interface.

Error Message	Cause	Action
No Paper	The machine is out of paper, or paper is not loaded correctly in the paper tray.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refill paper in the paper tray. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size. • If paper is in the tray, remove it and load it again. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.
No Paper Fed T1 No Paper Fed T2 No Paper Fed T3	The machine failed to feed paper from the indicated paper tray.	Pull out the paper tray indicated on the LCD and remove all jammed paper.
No Paper MP	The MP tray is out of paper, or paper is not loaded correctly in the MP tray.	Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refill paper in the MP tray. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size. • If paper is in the tray, remove it and load it again. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.
No Paper No Paper T1 No Paper T2 No Paper T3	The machine failed to feed paper from the indicated paper tray.	Do one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Refill paper in the paper tray indicated on the LCD. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size. • If paper is in the tray, remove it and load it again. Make sure the paper guides are set to the correct size.
No Response/Busy	The number you dialed does not answer or is busy.	Verify the number and try again.
No Toner	The toner cartridge or the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly is not installed correctly.	Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly. Remove the toner cartridge from the imaging unit, and reinstall the toner cartridge back in the imaging unit. Reinstall the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly back in the machine. If the problem continues, replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
No Tray T1 No Tray T2 No Tray T3	The paper tray is not installed or not installed correctly.	Reinstall the paper tray indicated on the LCD.
Out of Fax Memory	The machine's fax memory is full.	If you are using Fax Preview function, delete unwanted received fax data. If you are using Memory Receive function and are not using fax preview function, print received fax data. To print fax data, press  Settings > All Settings > Fax > Print Document.

Error Message	Cause	Action
Out of Memory	The machine's memory is full.	<p>If a fax-sending or copy operation is in process</p> <p>Do one of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press Send Now to send the pages scanned so far. • Press Partial Print to copy the pages scanned so far. • Press Quit or  and wait until the other operations that are in progress finish, and then try again. <p>If a scan operation is in process</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Split the document into multiple parts. • Reduce the Resolution. • Reduce the File Size. • Select the high compression PDF file type. • Clear faxes from the memory. <p>If a print operation is in process</p> <p>Press  and reduce the print resolution.</p>
Output Tray Full	The output paper tray is full.	Remove printed paper from output tray indicated on the LCD.
Paper Low Paper Low T1 Paper Low T2 Paper Low T3	The paper tray is nearly empty.	Refill the paper in the paper tray indicated on the LCD.
Print Data Full	The machine's memory is full.	Press  and delete the previously stored secure print data.
Print Unable ###	The machine has a mechanical problem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press and hold  to turn the machine off, wait a few minutes, and then turn it on again. • If the problem continues, contact customer support.
Received Fax ###	An unprinted received fax is waiting to print on the correct size paper.	To print the received fax, load the correct size of paper in the tray indicated on the LCD. Paper sizes available for fax printing are A4, Letter, Legal, Folio, Mexico Legal and India Legal.
Replace Toner	The toner cartridge is at the end of its life. The machine stops all print operations. While memory is available, faxes are stored in the memory.	Replace the toner cartridge with a new one.
Scan Unable	The document is too long for 2-sided scanning.	Press  . For 2-sided scanning, use A4 size paper. Other paper must be within the following size: Length: 150 to 357.6 mm Width: 146 to 218 mm
Scan Unable ###	The machine has a mechanical problem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press and hold  to turn the machine off, and then turn it on again. • If the problem continues, contact customer support.

Error Message	Cause	Action
Self-Diagnostic	The temperature of the fuser unit does not rise to a specified temperature within the specified time.	Press and hold  to turn the machine off, wait a few seconds, and then turn it on again. Leave the machine idle for 15 minutes with the power on.
	The fuser unit is too hot.	
Service Error ##	Machine's firmware has a problem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Contact customer support.
Size Error	The paper size defined in the printer driver is not supported by the defined tray.	Choose a paper size supported by the defined tray.
Size Error 2-sided	The paper size specified in the machine's paper size setting is not available for automatic 2-sided printing.	Press  (if required). Load the correct size of paper in the tray and set the tray for that paper size.
	The paper in the tray is not the correct size and is not available for automatic 2-sided printing.	Choose a paper size supported by 2-sided printing. Paper size available for automatic 2-sided printing is A4.
Size Mismatch	The paper in the tray is not the correct size.	Load the correct size of paper in the tray indicated on the LCD and set the size of paper for the tray.
Supplies Drum End Soon	The imaging unit is near the end of its life.	Order a new imaging unit before the LCD displays <i>Replace Drum</i> .
Supplies Replace Drum	It is time to replace the imaging unit.	Replace the imaging unit with a new one.
	The imaging unit counter was not reset when a new imaging unit was installed.	Reset the imaging unit counter. See the instructions included with the new imaging unit.
Supplies Toner Low	If the LCD displays this message, you can still print. The toner cartridge is near the end of its life.	Order a new toner cartridge now so a replacement toner cartridge is available when the LCD displays <i>Replace Toner</i> .
Too Many Trays	The number of installed Optional Trays exceeds the maximum number.	Reduce the number of Optional Trays.
Touchscreen Initialisation Failed	The touchscreen was pressed before the power on initialisation was completed.	Make sure nothing is touching the touchscreen.
	Debris may be stuck between the lower part of the touchscreen and its frame.	Insert a piece of stiff paper between the lower part of the touchscreen and its frame and slide it back and forth to push out any debris.
Unusable Device	A USB device or USB Flash memory drive that is encrypted or not supported has been connected to the USB direct interface.	Unplug the device from the USB direct interface.
Unusable Device Remove the Device. Turn the power off and back on again.	A defective USB device or a high power consumption USB device has been connected to the USB direct interface.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unplug the device from the USB direct interface. Press and hold  to turn the machine off, and then turn it on again.

Error Message	Cause	Action
Wrong Paper Size MP Wrong Paper Size T1 Wrong Paper Size T2 Wrong Paper Size T3	The specified tray ran out of paper during copying and the machine could not feed the same size paper from the next priority tray.	Refill the paper in the paper tray.



Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report](#)

Related Topics:

- [Replace Supplies](#)
 - [Load and Print Using the Paper Tray](#)
 - [Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray \(MP Tray\)](#)
 - [Clean the Corona Wire](#)
-

Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report

If the LCD displays:

- [Print Unable] ##
- [Scan Unable] ##

We recommend transferring your faxes to another fax machine or to your computer.

You can also transfer the Fax Journal report to see if there are any faxes you must transfer.



If there is an error message on the LCD after you transfer the faxes, disconnect your machine from the power source for several minutes, and then reconnect it.




Related Information

- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)
 - [Transfer Faxes to Another Fax Machine](#)
 - [Transfer Faxes to Your Computer](#)
 - [Transfer the Fax Journal Report to Another Fax Machine](#)
-

Transfer Faxes to Another Fax Machine

If you have not set up your Station ID, you cannot enter Fax Transfer mode.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Service] > [Data Transfer] > [Fax Transfer].
2. Do one of the following:
 - If the LCD displays [No Data], there are no faxes left in the machine's memory. Press [Close].
 - Enter the fax number to which faxes will be forwarded.
3. Press [Fax Start].



Related Information

- [Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report](#)

Related Topics:


- [Set Your Station ID](#)

Transfer Faxes to Your Computer

1. Make sure you have installed the software and drivers on your computer, and then turn on **PC-FAX Receive** on the computer.


DO one of the following:

- (Windows 7)

From the  (**Start**) menu, select **All Programs > KONICA MINOLTA > KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Receive**.

- (Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)


Launch  (**KONICA MINOLTA Utilities**), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **PC-FAX** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Receive**.

2. Make sure you have set [PC Fax Receive] on the machine.

If faxes are in the machine's memory when you set up PC-Fax Receive, the LCD displays [Send Fax to PC?].

3. Do one of the following:

- To transfer all faxes to your computer, press [Yes].
- To exit and leave the faxes in the memory, press [No].

4. Press .



Related Information


- [Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report](#)

Related Topics:

- [Use PC-Fax Receive to Transfer Received Faxes to Your Computer \(Windows only\)](#)
- [Configure PC-FAX \(Windows\)](#)

Transfer the Fax Journal Report to Another Fax Machine

If you have not set up your Station ID, you cannot enter fax transfer mode.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Service] > [Data Transfer] > [Report Transfer].
2. Enter the fax number to which the Fax Journal will be forwarded.
3. Press [Fax Start].



Related Information

- [Transfer Your Faxes or Fax Journal Report](#)

Related Topics:

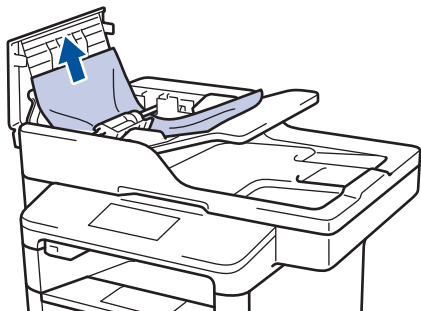
- [Set Your Station ID](#)


Document Jams

- [Document is Jammed in the Top of the ADF Unit](#)
- [Document is Jammed under the Document Cover](#)
- [Remove Small Scraps of Paper Jammed in the ADF](#)

Document is Jammed in the Top of the ADF Unit

1. Remove any paper from the ADF that is not jammed.
2. Open the ADF cover.
3. Pull the jammed document out to the left. If the document rips or tears, be sure you remove any debris or scraps to prevent future jams.



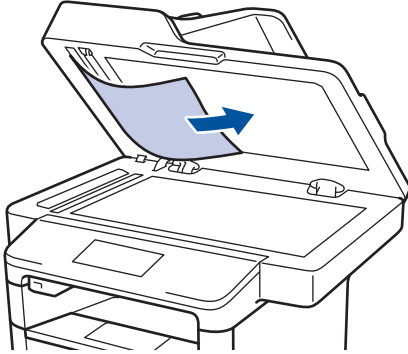
4. Close the ADF cover.
5. Press .


Related Information

- [Document Jams](#)

Document is Jammed under the Document Cover

1. Remove any paper from the ADF that is not jammed.
2. Lift the document cover.
3. Pull the jammed document out to the right. If the document rips or tears, be sure you remove any debris or scraps to prevent future jams.



4. Close the document cover.
5. Press .

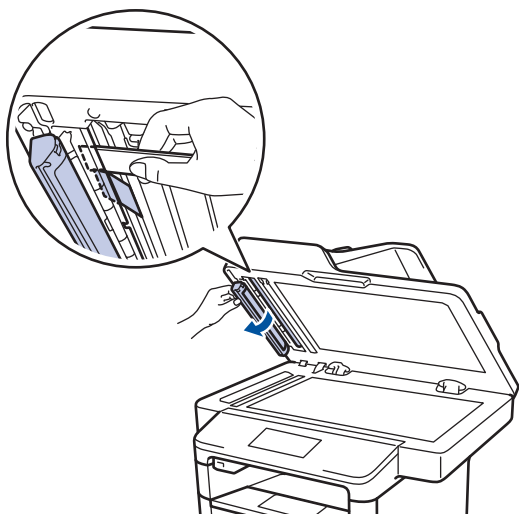
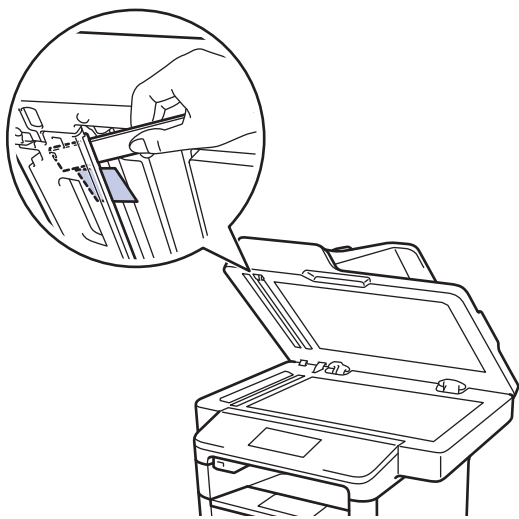



Related Information

- [Document Jams](#)

Remove Small Scraps of Paper Jammed in the ADF

1. Lift the document cover.
2. Insert a piece of stiff paper, such as cardstock, into the ADF to push any small paper scraps through.



3. Close the document cover.
4. Press .

Related Information

- [Document Jams](#)

Paper Jams

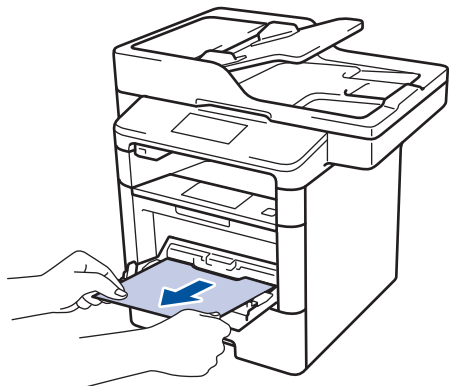
Always remove the remaining paper from the paper tray and straighten the stack when you are adding new paper. This helps prevent multiple sheets of paper from feeding through the machine at one time and prevents paper jams.

- [Paper is Jammed in the MP tray](#)
- [Paper is Jammed in the Paper Tray](#)
- [Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine](#)
- [Paper is Jammed inside the Machine](#)
- [Paper is Jammed in the 2-sided Tray](#)

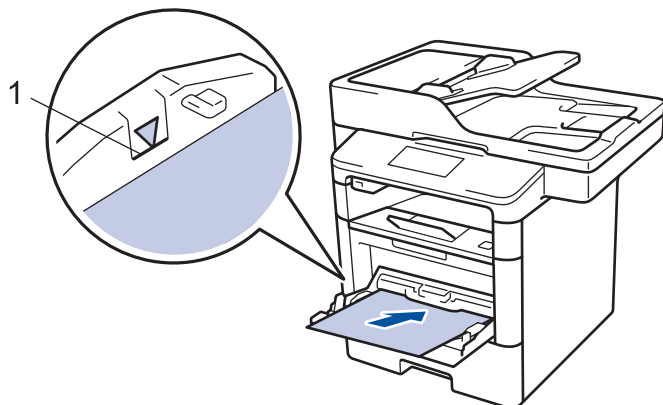
Paper is Jammed in the MP tray

If the machine's control panel indicates that there is a jam in the machine's MP tray, follow these steps:

1. Remove the paper from the MP tray.
2. Remove any jammed paper from in and around the MP tray.



3. Fan the paper stack, and then put it back in the MP tray.
4. Reload paper in the MP tray and make sure the paper stays under the maximum paper height guides (1) on both sides of the tray.



5. Press [Retry] to resume printing.

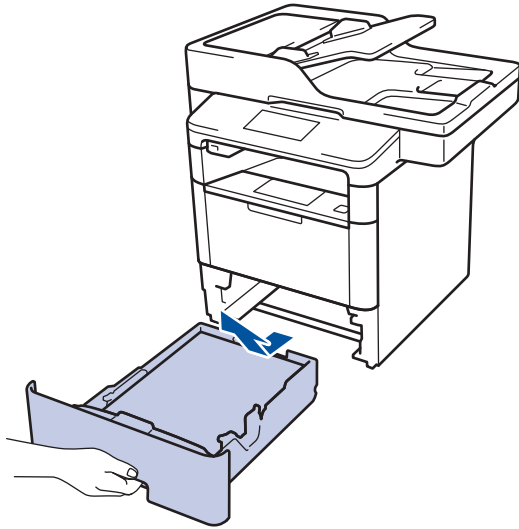
✓ Related Information

- [Paper Jams](#)

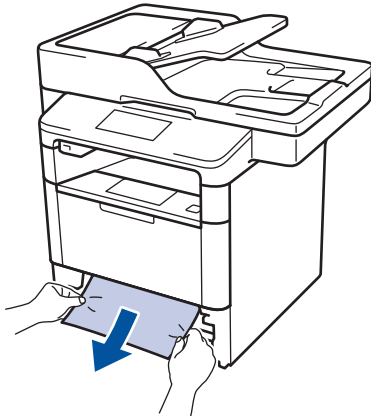
Paper is Jammed in the Paper Tray


If the machine's control panel indicates that there is a jam in the paper tray, follow these steps:

1. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.

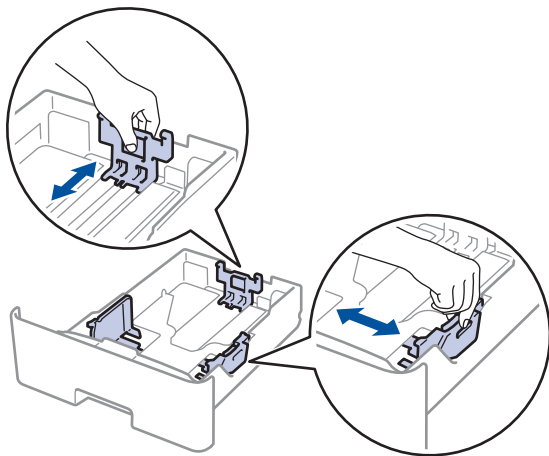


2. Slowly pull out the jammed paper.

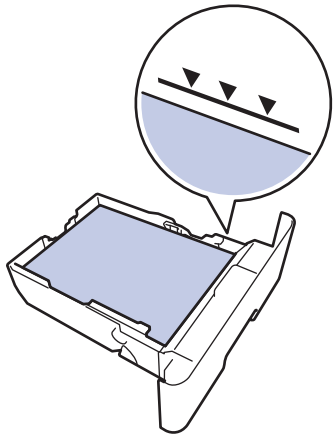


 Pulling the jammed paper downward using both hands allows you to remove the paper more easily.

3. Fan the stack of paper to prevent further jams, and slide the paper guides to fit the paper size.



4. Make sure the paper is below the maximum paper mark (▼▼▼).



5. Put the paper tray firmly back in the machine.



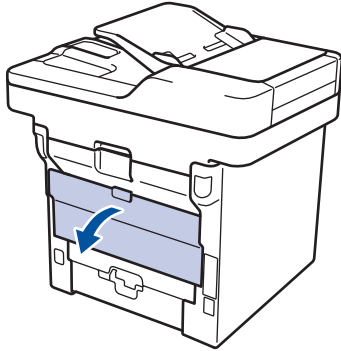
Related Information

- [Paper Jams](#)
-

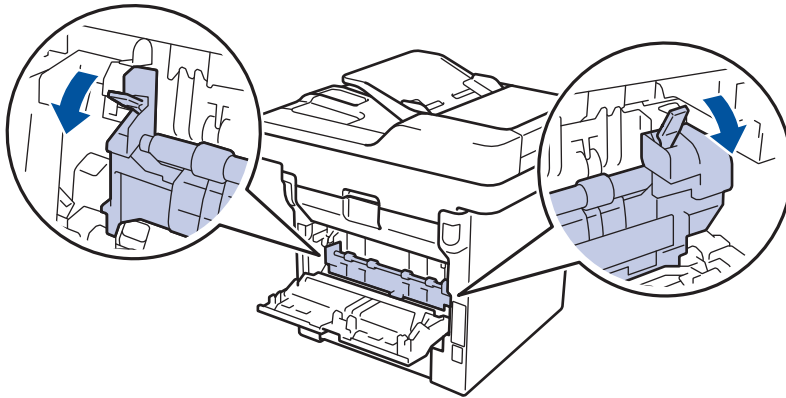
Paper is Jammed in the Back of the Machine

If the machine's control panel indicates that there is a jam in the back (Rear) of the machine, follow these steps:

1. Leave the machine turned on for 10 minutes for the internal fan to cool the extremely hot parts inside the machine.
2. Open the back cover.



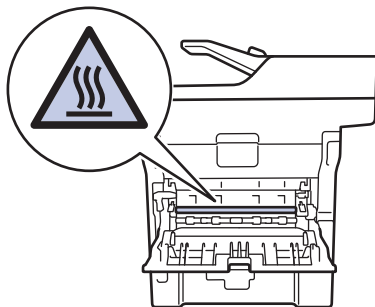
3. Pull the levers at the left and right sides toward you to release the fuser cover.



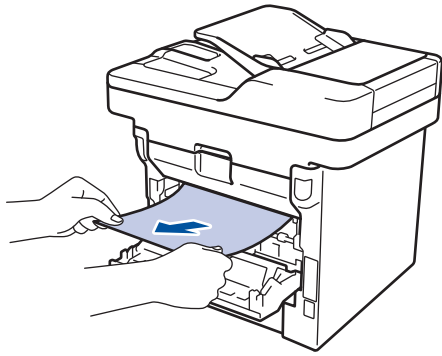
WARNING

HOT SURFACE

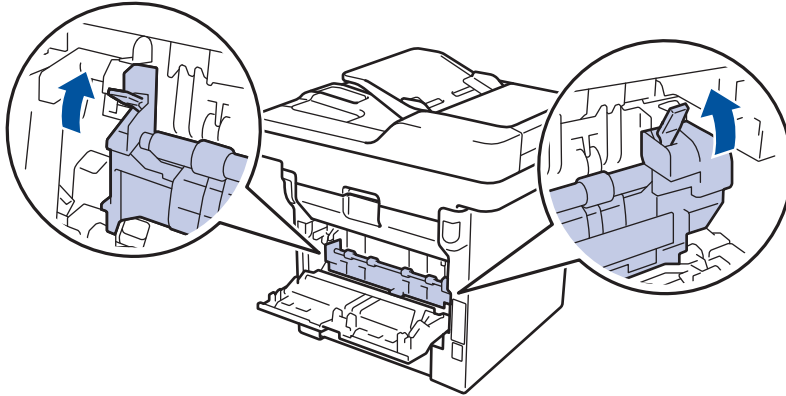
The machine's internal parts will be extremely hot. Wait for the machine to cool down before touching them.



4. Use both hands to gently pull the jammed paper out of the fuser unit.



5. Close the fuser cover.



6. Close the back cover until it locks in the closed position.



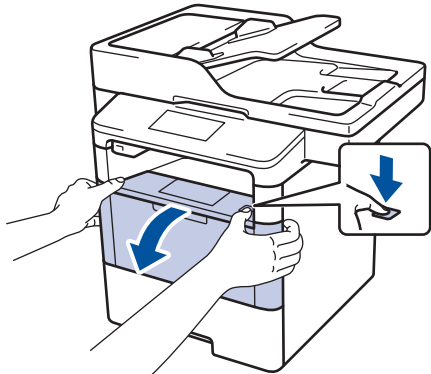
Related Information

- [Paper Jams](#)

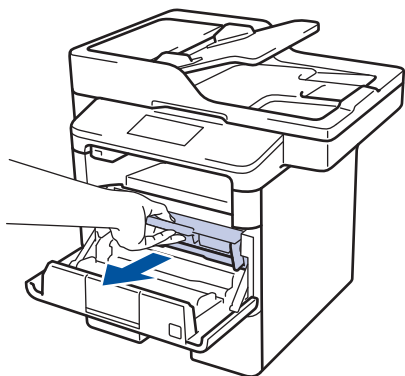
Paper is Jammed inside the Machine

If the machine's control panel indicates that there is a jam inside the machine, follow these steps:

1. Leave the machine turned on for 10 minutes for the internal fan to cool the extremely hot parts inside the machine.
2. Open the front cover.



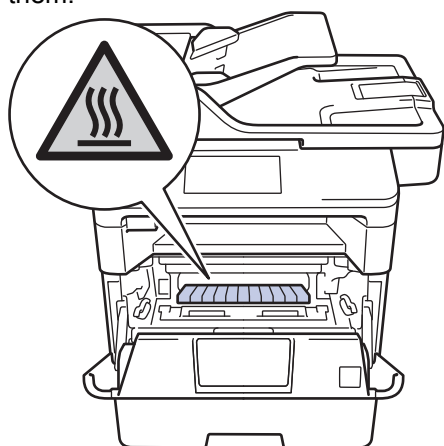
3. Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly.



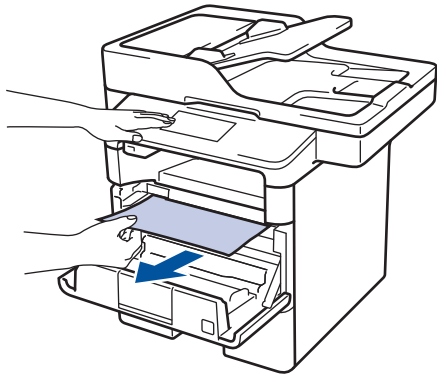
WARNING

HOT SURFACE

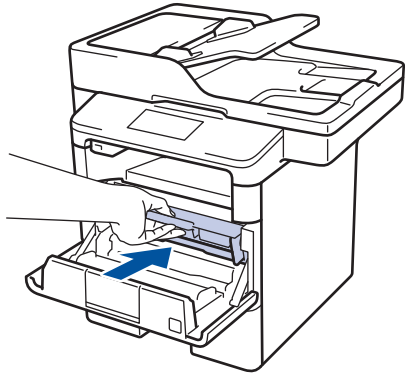
The machine's internal parts will be extremely hot. Wait for the machine to cool down before touching them.



4. Pull out the jammed paper slowly.



5. Install the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly into the machine.



6. Close the front cover.



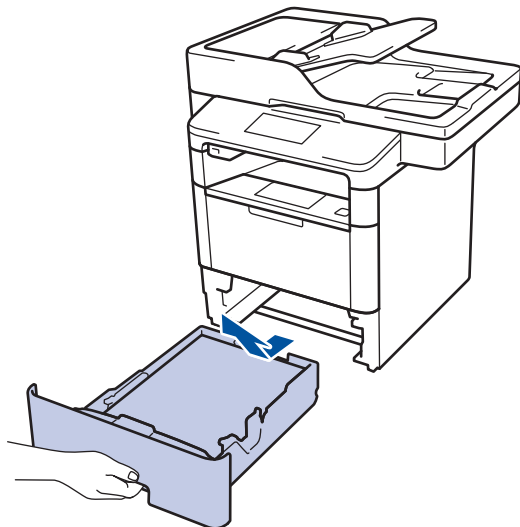
Related Information

- [Paper Jams](#)

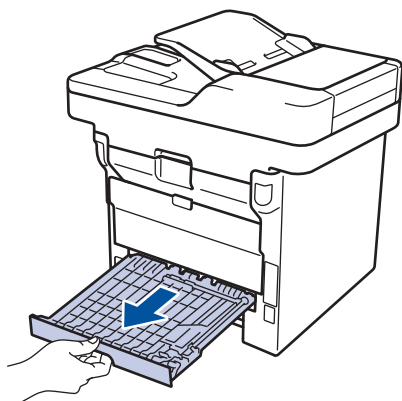
Paper is Jammed in the 2-sided Tray

If the machine's control panel indicates that there is a jam in the 2-sided paper tray, follow these steps:

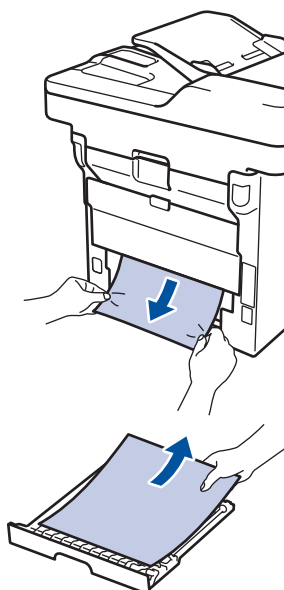
1. Leave the machine turned on for 10 minutes for the internal fan to cool the extremely hot parts inside the machine.
2. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.



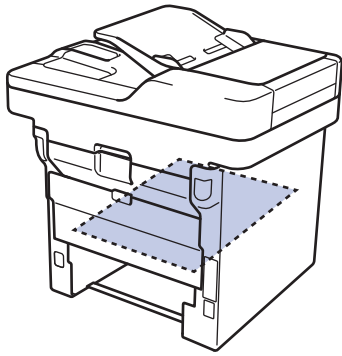
3. At the back of the machine, pull the 2-sided tray completely out of the machine.



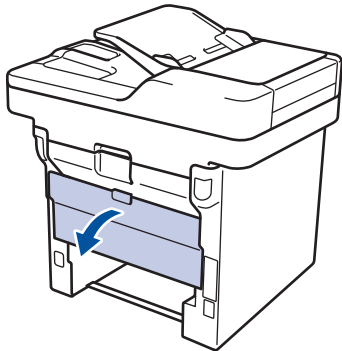
4. Pull the jammed paper out of the machine or out of the 2-sided tray.



-
5. Remove paper that may have jammed under the machine due to static electricity.



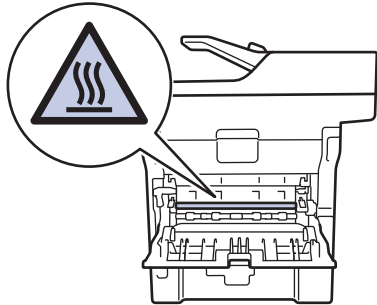
6. If paper is not caught inside the 2-sided tray, open the back cover.



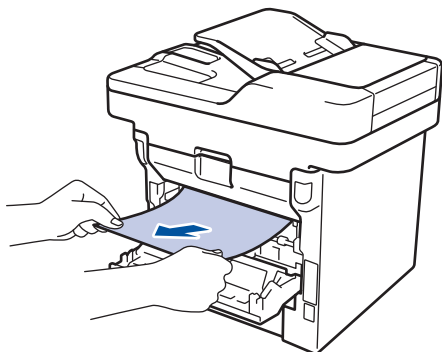
⚠ WARNING

HOT SURFACE

The machine's internal parts will be extremely hot. Wait for the machine to cool down before touching them.



-
7. Use both hands to gently pull the jammed paper out of the back of the machine.



8. Close the back cover until it locks in the closed position.
9. Put the 2-sided tray firmly back in the rear of the machine.
10. Put the paper tray firmly back in the front of the machine.




Related Information

- [Paper Jams](#)

Printing Problems

Difficulties	Suggestions
No printout	<p>Check that the correct printer driver has been installed and selected.</p> <p>Check to see if the machine's control panel displays an error status.</p> <p>Check that the machine is online:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Windows Server 2008 <p>Click /Start > Control Panel > Hardware and Sound > Printers. Right-click KONICA MINOLTA XXXX (where XXXX is your model name). Make sure Use Printer Online is not listed. If it is listed, click this option to set the driver Online.</p> Windows7 and Windows Server 2008 R2 <p>Click /Start > Devices and Printers . Right-click KONICA MINOLTA XXXX (where XXXX is your model name) and click See what's printing. Click Printer in the menu bar. Make sure Use Printer Offline is not selected.</p> Windows 8.1 and Windows Server 2012 <p>Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click Settings > Control Panel. In the Hardware and Sound group, click View devices and printers. Right-click the KONICA MINOLTA XXXX (where XXXX is your model name). Click See what's printing. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver. Click Printer in the menu bar and make sure that Use Printer Offline is not selected.</p> Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016 <p>Click  > Windows System > Control Panel. In the Hardware and Sound group, click View devices and printers. Right-click the KONICA MINOLTA XXXX (where XXXX is your model name). Click See what's printing. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver. Click Printer in the menu bar and make sure Use Printer Offline is not selected.</p> Windows Server 2012 R2 and Windows Server 2019 <p>Click Control Panel on the Start screen. In the Hardware group, click View devices and printers. Right-click the KONICA MINOLTA XXXX (where XXXX is your model name). Click See what's printing. If printer driver options appear, select your printer driver. Click Printer in the menu bar and make sure Use Printer Offline is not selected.</p> <p>Check the machine is not in Power Off mode.</p> <p>If the machine is in Power Off mode, press  on the control panel, and then send the print data again.</p>
The machine is not printing or has stopped printing.	<p>Press .</p> <p>The machine will cancel the print job and clear it from the machine's memory. The printout may be incomplete. Send the print data again.</p>

Difficulties	Suggestions
The machine prints unexpectedly or it prints garbage. The headers or footers appear when the document displays on the screen but they do not show up when it is printed.	There is an unprintable area on the top and bottom of the page. Adjust the top and bottom margins in your document to allow for this.
	Press  .
	Check the settings in your application to make sure they are set up to work with your machine.
	Confirm that the printer driver is selected in your application's Print window.
The machine prints the first couple of pages correctly, then some pages have missing text.	Check the settings in your application to make sure they are set up to work with your machine.
	Your computer is not recognising the full signal of the machine's input buffer. Make sure you connected the interface cable correctly.
The machine does not print on both sides of the paper even though the printer driver setting is 2-sided and the machine supports automatic 2-sided printing.	Check the paper size setting in the printer driver. You must select A4 paper that is 60 to 105 g/m ² .
Print speed is too slow.	Try changing the printer driver setting. The highest resolution needs longer data processing, sending and printing time.
The machine does not feed paper.	If there is paper in the paper tray, make sure it is straight. If the paper is curled, straighten it. Sometimes it is helpful to remove the paper, turn the stack over and put it back in the paper tray.
	Reduce the amount of paper in the paper tray, and then try again.
	Make sure MP Tray is not selected for Paper Source in the printer driver.
	Clean the paper pick-up rollers.
The machine does not feed paper from the MP tray.	Fan the paper well and put it back in the MP tray firmly.
	Make sure MP Tray is selected as Paper Source in the printer driver.
The machine does not feed envelopes.	Load envelopes in the MP tray. Your application must be set to print the envelope size you are using. This is usually done in the Page Setup or Document Setup menu of your application.



Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)

Related Topics:

- [Unscannable and Unprintable Areas](#)
- [Cancel a Print Job](#)
- [Load and Print Using the Paper Tray](#)
- [Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers](#)
- [Load and Print Using the Multi-purpose Tray \(MP Tray\)](#)



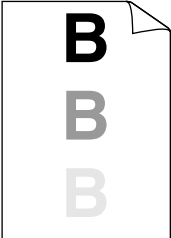
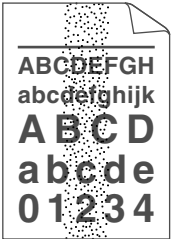
Improve the Print Quality


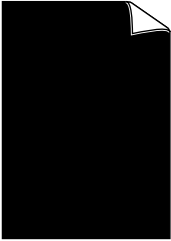
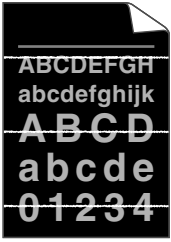


If you have a print quality problem, print a test page first. If the printout looks good, the problem is probably not the machine. Check the interface cable connections and try printing a different document. If the printout or test page printed from the machine has a quality problem, check the examples of poor print quality in the table and follow the recommendations.

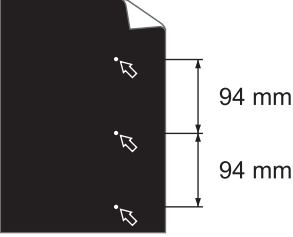
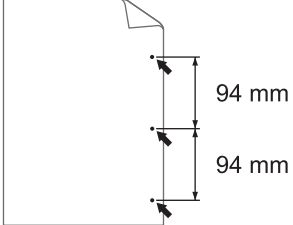
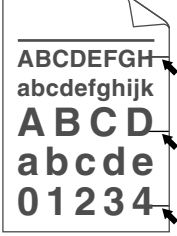
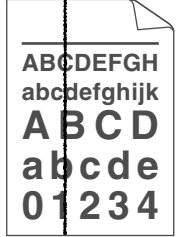
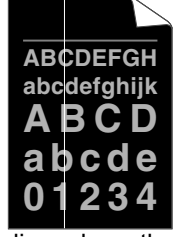
IMPORTANT



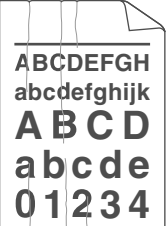
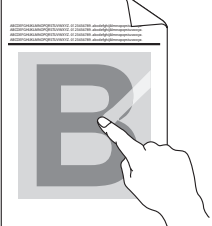

Using non-genuine supplies may affect the print quality, hardware performance, and machine reliability.

1. To get the best print quality, we suggest using recommended print media. Make sure you use paper that meets our specifications.
2. Check that the toner cartridge and imaging unit are installed correctly.

Examples of poor print quality	Recommendation
 <p>ABCDEF GH abcde fghijk A B C D a b c d e 0 1 2 3 4</p> <p>Faint</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the machine indicates Replace Toner status, install a new toner cartridge. • Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as humidity, high temperatures, and so on, may cause this print fault. • Clean the imaging unit. • Clean the corona wire on the imaging unit. • Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge. • Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.
 <p>ABCDEF GH abcde fghijk A B C D a b c d e 0 1 2 3 4</p> <p>Grey background</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as high temperatures and high humidity can increase the amount of background shading. • Clean the imaging unit. • Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge. • Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.
 <p>B B B</p> <p>Ghost</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as low humidity and low temperatures may cause this print quality problem. • Select the appropriate media type in the printer driver. • Clean the imaging unit. • Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit. • Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge. • The fuser unit may be contaminated. Contact customer support.
 <p>ABCDEF GH abcde fghijk A B C D a b c d e 0 1 2 3 4</p> <p>Toner specks</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure the media type setting in the driver matches the type of paper you are using. • Clean the imaging unit. • The toner cartridge may be damaged. Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge. • The imaging unit may be damaged. Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit. • The fuser unit may be contaminated. Contact customer support.

Examples of poor print quality	Recommendation
 <p>Hollow print</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Thick Paper mode in the printer driver or use thinner paper than you are currently using. • Select the appropriate media type in the menu setting. • Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as high humidity can cause hollow print. • The imaging unit may be damaged. Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.
 <p>All black</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean the corona wire inside the imaging unit. • The imaging unit may be damaged. Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.
 <p>White lines across the page</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select the appropriate media type in the printer driver. • Select the appropriate media type in the menu setting. • The problem may disappear by itself. Print multiple blank pages to clear this problem, especially if the machine has not been used for a long time. • Clean the imaging unit. • The imaging unit may be damaged. Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.
 <p>Lines across the page</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean the imaging unit. • The imaging unit may be damaged. Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.
 <p>White lines, bands or ribbing across the page</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the machine's environment. Conditions such as high humidity and high temperatures may cause this print quality problem. • Clean the imaging unit. • If the problem is not solved after printing a few pages, replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.

Examples of poor print quality	Recommendation
 <p>White Spots on black text and graphics at 94 mm intervals</p>  <p>Black spots at 94 mm intervals</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make 10-15 copies of a blank, white sheet of paper. If the problem is not solved after printing the blank pages, the imaging unit may have foreign material, such as glue from a label, stuck on the drum. Clean the imaging unit. <i>See Related Information: Clean the Imaging Unit.</i> • The imaging unit may be damaged. Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.
 <p>Black toner marks across the page</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you use label sheets for laser printers, the glue from the sheets may sometimes stick to the drum surface. Clean the imaging unit. <i>See Related Information: Clean the Imaging Unit.</i> • If you used paper that has clips or staples, the imaging unit may be damaged. • If the unpacked imaging unit is in direct sunlight (or room light for long periods of time), the unit may be damaged. • Clean the imaging unit. • The toner cartridge may be damaged. Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge. • The imaging unit may be damaged. Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.
 <p>Black lines down the page Printed pages have toner stains down the page</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Clean the corona wire inside the imaging unit by sliding the tab. Make sure that the tab on the imaging unit is in the Home position. • The toner cartridge may be damaged. Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge. • The imaging unit may be damaged. Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit. • The fuser unit may be contaminated. Contact customer support.
 <p>White lines down the page</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure foreign material such as a torn piece of paper, sticky notes or dust is not inside the machine and around the toner cartridge and imaging unit. • The toner cartridge may be damaged. Replace the toner cartridge with a new toner cartridge. • The imaging unit may be damaged. Replace the imaging unit with a new imaging unit.

Examples of poor print quality	Recommendation
 <p>Image skewed</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set the document correctly in the ADF or on the scanner glass if the skew only occurs when making copies. • Make sure the paper or other print media is loaded correctly in the paper tray and the guides are not too tight or too loose against the paper stack. • Set the paper guides correctly. • The paper tray may be too full. • Check the paper type and quality. • Check for loose objects such as torn paper inside the machine. • If the problem only occurs during automatic 2-sided printing, check for torn paper in the 2-sided tray. Verify the 2-sided tray is inserted completely and the back cover is closed completely.
 <p>Curled or wavy</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the paper type and quality. High temperatures and high humidity will cause paper to curl. • If you do not use the machine often, the paper may have been in the paper tray too long. Turn over the stack of paper in the paper tray. Also, fan the paper stack, and then rotate the paper 180° in the paper tray. • Open the back cover (face up output tray) to let the printed paper exit onto the face up output tray. • Choose Reduce Paper Curl mode in the printer driver when you do not use our recommended print media.
 <p>Wrinkles or creases</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure paper is loaded correctly. • Check the paper type and quality. • Turn over the stack of paper in the tray or rotate the paper 180° in the input tray.
 <p>Poor fixing</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure the media type setting in the driver matches the type of paper you are using. • Choose Improve Toner Fixing mode in the printer driver. <p>If this selection does not provide enough improvement, change the printer driver setting in Media Type to a thick setting. If you are printing an envelope, choose Env. Thick in the media type setting.</p>
 <p>Envelope creases</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure envelopes are printed with the back cover (face up output tray) opened. • Make sure envelopes are fed only from the MP tray.



Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)

Related Topics:

- [Test Print](#)
 - [Clean the Imaging Unit](#)
-

Telephone and Fax Problems

Telephone Line or Connections

Difficulties	Suggestions
Dialling does not work. (No dial tone)	Check all line cord connections. Make sure the telephone line cord is plugged into the telephone wall socket and the LINE socket of the machine. If you subscribe to DSL or VoIP services, contact your service provider for connection instructions.
	(Available only for some countries.) Change the Tone/Pulse setting.
	If an external phone is connected to the machine, send a manual fax by lifting the handset of the external telephone and dialling the number using the external telephone. Wait to hear the fax receiving tones before sending fax.
	If there is no dial tone, connect a known working telephone and telephone line cord to the socket. Then lift the external telephone's handset and listen for a dial tone. If there is still no dial tone, ask your telephone company to check the line and/or wall socket.
The machine does not answer when called.	Make sure the machine is in the correct receive mode for your setup. Check for a dial tone. If possible, call your machine to hear it answer. If there is still no answer, check that the telephone line cord is plugged into the telephone wall socket and the LINE socket of the machine. If there is no ringing when you call your machine, ask your telephone company to check the line.

Handling Incoming Calls

Difficulties	Suggestions
Sending a Fax Call to the machine.	If you answered on an extension or external telephone, press your Remote Activation Code (the factory setting is *51). If you answered on the external telephone, press the Start button to receive the fax. When your machine answers, hang up.
Custom features on a single line.	If you have Call Waiting, Voice Mail, an answering machine, an alarm system or other custom feature on a single telephone line with your machine, it may create a problem sending or receiving faxes.

Receiving Faxes

Difficulties	Suggestions
Cannot receive a fax.	Check all line cord connections. Make sure the telephone line cord is plugged into the telephone wall socket and the LINE socket of the machine. If you subscribe to DSL or VoIP services, contact your service provider for connection instructions. If you are using a VoIP system, try changing the VoIP setting to <i>Basic (for VoIP)</i> . This will lower modem speed and turn off Error Correction Mode (ECM).
	Make sure the machine is in the correct Receive Mode. This is determined by the external devices and telephone subscriber services you have on the same line as this machine. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you have a dedicated fax line and want your machine to automatically answer all incoming faxes, you should select Fax only mode. If your machine shares a line with an external answering machine, you should select the External TAD mode. In External TAD mode, your machine will receive incoming faxes automatically and voice callers will be able to leave a message on your answering machine. If your machine shares a line with other telephones and you want it to automatically answer all incoming faxes, you should select the Fax/Tel mode. In Fax/Tel mode, your machine will receive faxes automatically and produce a pseudo/double-ring to alert you to answer voice calls. If you do not want your machine to answer any incoming faxes automatically, you should select the Manual mode. In Manual mode, you must answer every incoming call and activate the machine to receive faxes.


Difficulties	Suggestions
Cannot receive a fax.	Another device or service at your location may be answering the call before your machine answers. To test this, lower the Ring Delay setting: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the Receive Mode is set to Fax Only or Fax/Tel, reduce the Ring Delay to one ring. <i>See Related Information: Set the Number of Rings Before the Machine Answers (Ring Delay).</i> If the Receive Mode is set to External TAD, reduce the number of rings programmed on your answering machine to two. If the Receive Mode is set to Manual, DO NOT adjust the Ring Delay setting.
	Have someone send you a test fax: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If you received the test fax successfully, your machine is operating correctly. Remember to reset your Ring Delay or answering machine setting back to your original setting. If receiving problems recur after resetting the Ring Delay, then a person, device, or subscriber service is answering the fax call before the machine has a chance to answer. If you were not able to receive the fax, then another device or subscriber service may be interfering with your fax reception or there may be a problem with your fax line.
	If you are using a telephone answering machine (External TAD mode) on the same line as this machine, make sure your answering machine is set up correctly. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Set your answering machine to answer in one or two rings. Record the outgoing message on your answering machine. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Record five seconds of silence at the beginning of your outgoing message. Limit your speaking to 20 seconds. End your outgoing message with your Remote Activation Code for people sending manual faxes. For example: "After the beep, leave a message or press *51 and Start to send a fax." Set your answering machine to answer calls. Set your machine's Receive Mode to External TAD. <i>See Related Information: Choose the Correct Receive Mode.</i>
	Make sure your machine's Fax Detect feature is turned On. Fax Detect is a feature that allows you to receive a fax even if you answered the call on an external or extension telephone.
	If you often get transmission errors due to possible interference on the telephone line or if you are using a VoIP system, try changing the Compatibility setting to <i>Basic(for VoIP)</i> .
	Contact your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock Settings.

Sending Faxes

Difficulties	Suggestions
Cannot send a fax.	Check all line cord connections. Make sure the telephone line cord is plugged into the telephone wall socket and the LINE socket of the machine. If you subscribe to DSL or VoIP services, contact your service provider for connection instructions.
	Make sure you pressed Fax and the machine is in Fax mode.
	Print the Transmission Verification Report and check for an error.
	Contact your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock Settings.
	Ask the other party to check that the receiving machine has paper.
Poor sending quality.	Try changing your resolution to Fine or S.Fine. Make a copy to check your machine's scanner operation. If the copy quality is poor, clean the scanner.
Transmission Verification Report says RESULT:ERROR.	There is probably temporary noise or static on the line. Try sending the fax again. If you are sending a PC-Fax message and get RESULT:ERROR on the Transmission Verification Report, your machine may be out of memory. To free up extra memory, you can turn off Fax Storage, print fax messages in memory or cancel a delayed fax. If the problem continues, ask the telephone company to check your telephone line.
	If you often get transmission errors due to possible interference on the telephone line or if you are using a VoIP system, try changing the Compatibility setting to Basic(for VoIP).

Difficulties	Suggestions
Sent faxes are blank.	Make sure you are loading the document correctly. When using the ADF, the document should be face up. When using the scanner glass, the document should be face down.
Vertical black lines when sending.	Black vertical lines on faxes you send are typically caused by dirt or correction fluid on the glass strip. Clean the glass strip.

Printing received faxes

Difficulties	Suggestions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Condensed print Horizontal streaks Top and bottom sentences are cut off Missing lines 	<p>This is usually caused by a poor telephone connection. Make a copy; if your copy looks good, you probably had a bad connection, with static or interference on the telephone line. Ask the other party to send the fax again.</p>
Vertical black lines when receiving	<p>The corona wire for printing may be dirty. Clean the corona wire in the imaging unit.</p> <p>The sender's scanner may be dirty. Ask the sender to make a copy to see if the problem is with the sending machine. Try receiving from another fax machine.</p>
Received faxes appear as split or blank pages.	<p>Left and right margins are cut off or a single page is printed on two pages.</p> <p>Turn on Auto Reduction.</p>



Related Information



- [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Set Dial Tone Detection](#)
 - [Set Telephone Line Compatibility for Interference and VoIP Systems](#)

Related Topics:

- [Clean the Scanner](#)
- [Set the Number of Rings Before the Machine Answers \(Ring Delay\)](#)
- [Choose the Correct Receive Mode](#)

Set Dial Tone Detection

Setting the Dial Tone to [Detection] will shorten the Dial Tone detect pause.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Dial Tone].
2. Press [Detection] or [No Detection]
3. Press .



Related Information



- [Telephone and Fax Problems](#)
-

Set Telephone Line Compatibility for Interference and VoIP Systems

Problems sending and receiving faxes due to possible interference on the telephone line may be solved by reducing the modem speed to minimise errors in fax transmission. If you are using a Voice over IP (VoIP) service, we recommend changing the compatibility to Basic (for VoIP).



- VoIP is a type of phone system that uses an Internet connection, rather than a traditional phone line.
- Telephone providers frequently bundle VoIP together with Internet and cable services.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Compatibility].
2. Press the option you want.
 - Select [High] to set the modem speed to 33600 bps.
 - Select [Normal] to set the modem speed to 14400 bps.
 - Select [Basic (for VoIP)] to reduce the modem speed to 9600 bps and turn off Error Correction Mode (ECM). Unless interference is a recurring problem on your telephone line, you may prefer to use this option only when needed.
3. Press .



Related Information

- [Telephone and Fax Problems](#)

Network Problems

- [Error Messages](#)
- [Where Can I Find My Machine's Network Settings?](#)
- [I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration](#)
- [My Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)

Error Messages

Your machine will display an error message if an error occurs. The most common error messages are shown in the table.

Error Messages	Cause	Action
The maximum number of devices are already connected using Wi-Fi Direct.	Two mobile devices are already connected to the Wi-Fi Direct network when this machine is the Group Owner (G/O).	After the current connection between your machine and another mobile device has shut down, try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again. You can confirm the connection status by printing the Network Configuration Report.
Authentication Error, contact your administrator.	Your authentication setting for the Store Print Log to Network feature is not correct.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure the Username and Password in Authentication Setting are correct. If the username is part of a domain, enter the username in one of the following styles: user@domain or domain\user. Make sure the time of the log file server matches the time from the SNTP server, or the Date&Time settings. Make sure the SNTP time server settings are configured correctly so the time matches the time used for authentication by Kerberos or NTLMv2. If there is no SNTP server, make sure the Date&Time and Time Zone settings are set correctly using Web Based Management or the control panel so the machine matches the time being used by the server providing the authentication.
Check User ID and Password.	The Kerberos Authentication error.	Make sure you have entered a correct user name and a password for the Kerberos server. For more information on the Kerberos server settings, contact your network administrator.
	The date, time and time zone settings of this machine are not correct.	Confirm your machine's date, time and time zone settings.
	The DNS server configuration is not correct.	Contact your network administrator for the information on the DNS server settings.
	This machine cannot connect to the Kerberos server.	Contact your network administrator for the information on the Kerberos server settings.
Connection Error	Other devices are trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network at the same time.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure there are no other devices trying to connect to the Wi-Fi Direct network, and then try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again.
Connection Failed	This machine and your mobile device cannot communicate during the Wi-Fi Direct network configuration.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move the mobile device closer to your machine. Move your machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area. If you are using the PIN Method of WPS, make sure you have entered the correct PIN.
File Access Error, contact your administrator.	This machine cannot access the destination folder for the Store Print Log to Network feature.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure the stored directory name is correct. Make sure the stored directory is write-enabled. Make sure the file is not locked.
	In Web Based Management, you have selected the Cancel Print option in the Error Detection Setting of Store Print Log to Network .	Wait for about 120 seconds until this message disappears from the LCD.
No Device	When configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, this machine	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure your machine and mobile device are in the Wi-Fi Direct mode. Move the mobile device closer to your machine.

Error Messages	Cause	Action
	cannot find your mobile device.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Move your machine and the mobile device to an obstruction-free area. • If you are manually configuring the Wi-Fi Direct network, make sure you have entered the correct password. • If your mobile device has a configuration page for how to obtain an IP address, make sure the IP address of your mobile device has been configured via DHCP.
Server Timeout, contact your administrator.	This machine cannot connect to the server for the Store Print Log to Network feature.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure your server address is correct. • Make sure your server is connected to the network. • Make sure the machine is connected to the network.
Server Timeout	This machine cannot connect to the LDAP server.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure your server address is correct. • Make sure your server is connected to the network. • Make sure the machine is connected to the network.
	This machine cannot connect to the Active Directory server.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure your server address is correct. • Make sure your server is connected to the network. • Make sure the machine is connected to the network.
Wrong Date&Time, contact your administrator.	This machine does not obtain the time from the SNTP time server or you have not configured the Date&Time for the machine.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure the settings to access the SNTP time server are configured correctly in Web Based Management. • Confirm the Date&Time settings of your machine are correct in Web Based Management.
Internal Error	This machine's LDAP protocol is disabled.	Confirm your authentication method, and then enable the necessary protocol setting in the Web Based Management.
	This machine's CIFS protocol is disabled.	



Related Information

- [Network Problems](#)

Where Can I Find My Machine's Network Settings?

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)
- [Change Machine Settings from Your Computer](#)

I Cannot Complete the Wireless Network Setup Configuration

Turn your wireless router off and back on. Then try to configure the wireless settings again. If you are unable to resolve the problem, follow the instructions below:

Investigate the problem using the WLAN Report.

Cause	Action	Interface
Your security settings (SSID/ Network Key) are not correct.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Confirm the security settings using the Wireless Setup Helper utility. • Select and confirm that you are using the correct security settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - See the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router for information on how to find the security settings. - The manufacturer's name or model number of the wireless LAN access point/router may be used as the default security settings. - Consult with the access point/router manufacturer, your Internet provider, or network administrator. • For definitions of SSID and Network Key, see the entries SSID, Network Key and Channels in the Glossary. 	Wireless
Your machine's MAC address is not allowed.	Confirm that this machine's MAC Address is allowed in the filter. You can find the MAC Address on your machine's control panel.	Wireless
Your wireless LAN access point/router is in stealth mode (not broadcasting the SSID).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter the correct SSID name or Network Key manually. • Check the SSID name or the Network Key in the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router and reconfigure the wireless network setup. 	Wireless
Your security settings (SSID/ password) are not correct.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Confirm the SSID and password. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - When you are configuring the network manually, the SSID and password are displayed on your machine. If your mobile device supports the manual configuration, the SSID and password will be displayed on your mobile device's screen. • For the definition of SSID, see the Glossary. 	Wi-Fi Direct
You are using Android™ 4.0.	If your mobile device disconnects (approximately six minutes after using Wi-Fi Direct), try the one-push configuration using WPS (recommended) and set this machine as a G/O.	Wi-Fi Direct
Your machine is placed too far from your mobile device.	Move your machine within about 3.3 feet (1 metre) of the mobile device when you configure the Wi-Fi Direct network settings.	Wi-Fi Direct
There are some obstructions (walls or furniture, for example) between your machine and the mobile device.	Move your machine to an obstruction-free area.	Wi-Fi Direct
There is a wireless computer, Bluetooth-supported device, microwave oven, or digital cordless phone near this machine or the mobile device.	Move other devices away from this machine or the mobile device.	Wi-Fi Direct
If you have checked and tried all of the above, but still cannot complete the Wi-Fi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Turn your machine off and back on. Then try to configure the Wi-Fi Direct settings again. 	Wi-Fi Direct

Cause	Action	Interface
Direct configuration, do the following:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If you are using your machine as a client, confirm how many devices are allowed in the current Wi-Fi Direct network, and then check how many devices are connected.	




Related Information


- [Network Problems](#)

Related Topics:

- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast](#)
 - [Use Wi-Fi Direct®](#)
-

My Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network

Cause	Action	Interface
Your security software blocks your machine's access to the network. (The Network scanning feature does not work.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (Windows) Configure the third-party Security/Firewall Software to allow Network scanning. To add port 54925 for Network scanning, type the information below: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - In Name: Type any description, for example NetScan. - In Port number: Type 54925. - In Protocol: UDP is selected. See the instruction manual that came with your third-party Security/Firewall Software or contact the software manufacturer. 	Wired/Wireless
Your security software blocks your machine's access to the network. (The network PC-Fax Receive feature does not work.) (Windows)	<p>Set the third-party Security/Firewall Software to allow PC-FAX Rx. To add port 54926 for Network PC-FAX Rx, type the information below:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In Name: Type any description, for example PC-FAX Rx. • In Port number: Type 54926. • In Protocol: UDP is selected. <p>See the instruction manual that came with your third-party Security/Firewall Software or contact the software manufacturer.</p>	Wired/Wireless
Your security software blocks your machine's access to the network.	<p>Some security software might block access without showing a security alert dialog box even after successful installation.</p> <p>To allow access, see the instructions for your security software or ask the software manufacturer.</p>	Wired/Wireless
Your machine was not assigned an available IP address.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Confirm the IP address and the Subnet Mask. Verify that both the IP addresses and Subnet Masks of your computer and this machine are correct and located on the same network. For more information about how to verify the IP address and the Subnet Mask, ask your network administrator. • (Windows) Confirm the IP address and the Subnet Mask using the Network Connection Repair Tool. 	Wired/Wireless
The failed print job is still in your computer's print queue.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the failed print job is still in your computer's print queue, delete it. • Otherwise, double-click the printer icon in the following folder and cancel all documents: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - (Windows 7) Click  (Start) > Devices and Printers > Printers and Faxes. - (Windows 8.1) Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click Settings > Control Panel. In the Hardware and Sound group, click View devices and printers > Printers. - (Windows 10 and Windows Server 2016) 	Wired/Wireless

Cause	Action	Interface
	<p>Click  > Windows System > Control Panel. In the Hardware and Sound group, click View devices and printers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - (Windows Server 2008) <p>Click Start > Control Panel > Printers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - (Windows Server 2012) <p>Move your mouse to the lower right corner of your desktop. When the menu bar appears, click Settings > Control Panel. In the Hardware group, click View devices and printers > Printers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - (Windows Server 2012 R2 and Windows Server 2019) <p>Click Control Panel on the Start screen. In the Hardware group, click View devices and printers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - (Mac) <p>Click System Preferences > Printers & Scanners.</p>	
Your machine is not connected to the wireless network.	Print the WLAN Report to check the error code on the printed report.	Wireless

If you have checked and tried all of the above, but your machine still cannot print and scan, uninstall the software and drivers and reinstall them.



Related Information

- [Network Problems](#)

Related Topics:

- [Print the WLAN Report](#)
- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
- [I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly](#)

I Want to Check that My Network Devices are Working Correctly

Check	Action	Interface
Check that your machine, access point/router, or network hub is turned on.	<p>Check the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The power cord is connected correctly and this machine is turned on. The access point/router or hub is turned on and its link button is blinking. All protective packaging has been removed from the machine. The toner cartridge and imaging unit are installed correctly. The front and back covers are fully closed. Paper is inserted correctly in the paper tray. (For wired networks) A network cable is securely connected to this machine and to the router or hub. 	Wired/Wireless
Check the Link Status in the Network Configuration Report.	Print the Network Configuration Report and check that Ethernet Link Status or Wireless Link Status is Link OK .	Wired/Wireless
Check that you can "ping" this machine from your computer.	<p>Ping this machine from your computer using the IP address or the node name in the Windows command prompt or Mac Terminal application: ping <ipaddress> or <nodename>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Successful: Your machine is working correctly and connected to the same network as your computer. Unsuccessful: Your machine is not connected to the same network as your computer. <p>(Windows) Ask the network administrator to fix the IP address and the subnet mask.</p> <p>(Mac) Confirm that the IP address and the Subnet Mask are set correctly.</p>	Wired/Wireless
Check that your machine is connected to the wireless network.	Print the WLAN Report to check the error code on the printed report.	Wireless

If you have checked and tried all of the above but you are still having problems, see the instructions supplied with your wireless LAN access point/router to find the SSID and the Network Key information and set them correctly.




Related Information

- [Network Problems](#)

Related Topics:

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)
- [Print the WLAN Report](#)
- [Wireless LAN Report Error Codes](#)
- [My Machine Cannot Print, Scan, or PC-FAX Receive over the Network](#)

Other Problems

Difficulties	Suggestions
The machine will not turn on.	<p>Adverse conditions on the power connection (such as lightning or a power surge) may have triggered the machine's internal safety mechanisms. Unplug the power cord. Wait for ten minutes, then plug in the power cord and press  to turn on the machine.</p> <p>If the problem is not solved and you are using a power breaker, disconnect it to make sure it is not the problem. Plug the machine's power cord directly into a different known working wall electrical socket. If there is still no power, try a different power cable.</p>
The software cannot be installed.	<p>(Windows)</p> <p>If the Security Software warning appears on the computer screen during the installation, change the Security Software settings to permit the other program to run.</p> <p>(Mac)</p> <p>If you are using a firewall function of anti-spyware or antivirus security software, temporarily disable it and then install the software.</p>

Copying difficulties

Difficulties	Suggestions
Cannot make a copy.	<p>Make sure you pressed Copy and the machine is in Copy mode.</p> <p>Contact your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock Settings.</p>
Vertical black line appears in copies.	Black vertical lines on copies are typically caused by dirt or correction fluid on the glass strip, or the corona wire is dirty. Clean the glass strip and scanner glass and the white bar and white plastic above them.
Copies are blank.	Make sure you are loading the document correctly.

Scanning difficulties

Difficulties	Suggestions
TWAIN or WIA errors appear when starting to scan. (Windows)	Make sure the TWAIN or WIA driver is selected as the primary source in your scanning application.
ICA errors appear when starting to scan. (Mac)	You can also scan documents using the ICA Scanner Driver.
OCR does not work.	Try increasing the scanning resolution.
Cannot scan.	Contact your administrator to check your Secure Function Lock Settings.

Software difficulties

Difficulties	Suggestions
Cannot install software or print.	<p>(Windows)</p> <p>Run the install program again. This program will repair and reinstall the software.</p>



Related Information


- [Troubleshooting](#)

Related Topics:

- [Clean the Scanner](#)
-

Check the Machine Information

Follow these instructions to check your machine's serial number and firmware version.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Machine Info.].
2. Press one of the following options:

Option	Description
Serial No.	Check your machine's serial number.
Firmware Version	Check your machine's firmware version.
Page Counter	Check the number of total pages the machine has printed.
Parts Life	Check the percentage of the supplies' life that remains available.



3. Press .




Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)

Reset Your Machine

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Reset].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the type of reset functions, and then press the reset function you want to use.
3. [Machine will reboot after resetting. Press [OK] for 2 seconds to confirm.] appears. Press [OK] for two seconds to confirm.
The machine will restart.
4. Press .



You can also reset the Network settings by pressing  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Network] > [Network Reset].



Related Information

- [Troubleshooting](#)
 - [Reset Functions Overview](#)

Reset Functions Overview

The following reset functions are available:



Unplug the interface cable before you choose Network Settings Reset function, All Settings Reset function or Factory Reset function.

1. Machine Reset

Reset all the machine's settings that you have changed, such as Date and Time and Ring Delay.

The Address Book, fax reports, and Call history will remain.

2. Network Settings Reset

Reset the print server back to its default factory settings (includes Password and IP Address information).

3. Address Book and Fax Settings Reset

This function resets the following settings:

- Address Book
(Addresses and Groups)
- Programmed fax jobs in the memory
(Delayed Fax)
- Station ID
(name and number)
- Coverpage Message
- Fax receive settings
(Remote Access Code, Fax Storage, Fax Forwarding, and PC-Fax Receive (Windows only))
- Report
(Transmission Verification Report / Tel Index List / Fax Journal)
- Setting Lock password

4. All Settings Reset

Reset all the machine's settings back to the settings that were set at the factory.

All Settings Reset takes less time than Factory Reset.

5. Factory Reset

Use the Settings Reset function to reset all machine's settings to the settings originally set at the factory.

Factory Reset takes more time than All Settings Reset.

The machine strongly recommends you perform this operation when you dispose of the machine.



Unplug the interface cable before you choose Network Settings Reset function, All Settings Reset function or Factory Reset function.



Related Information

- [Reset Your Machine](#)

Routine Maintenance

- [Replace Supplies](#)
- [Clean the Machine](#)
- [Check the Remaining Life of Parts](#)
- [Replace Periodic Maintenance Parts](#)

Replace Supplies

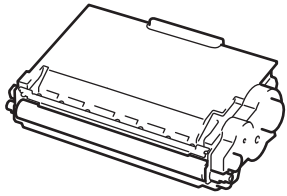
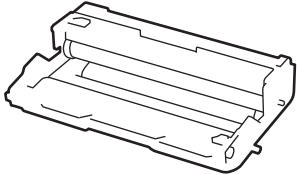
You must replace supplies when the machine indicates that the life of the supply is over.

Using non-genuine supplies may affect the print quality, hardware performance, and machine reliability.



- The toner cartridge and imaging unit are two separate supplies. Make sure both are installed as an assembly.

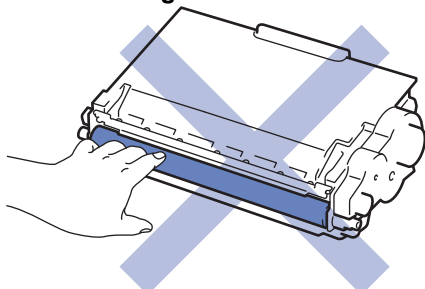
This table lists the messages to replace supplies when they reach their end of life. To avoid any inconvenience, you may want to buy spare supplies to keep as replacements before the machine stops printing.

Indication	Supply
Toner Low	Toner cartridge 
Replace Toner	
Drum !	Imaging unit 
Drum End Soon	
Replace Drum	

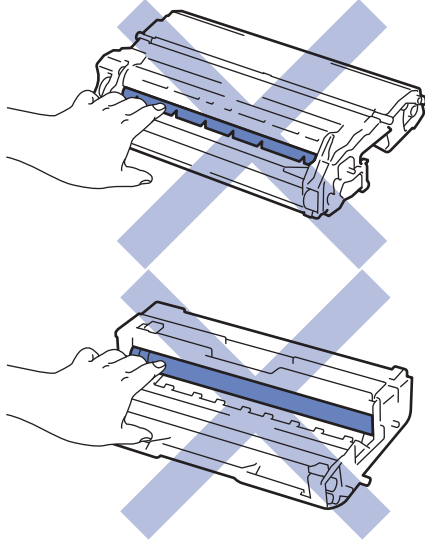
NOTE

- Be sure to seal up the used supplies tightly in a bag so that toner powder does not spill out of the cartridge.
- Discard used consumable items according to local regulations, keeping it separate from domestic waste. If you have questions, call your local waste disposal office.
- We recommend placing used supplies on a piece of paper to prevent accidentally spilling or scattering the material inside.
- If you use paper that is not a direct equivalent for the recommended print media, the life of supplies and machine parts may be reduced.
- The projected life for each of the toner cartridges is based on ISO/IEC 19752. Frequency of replacement will vary depending on the print volume, percentage of coverage, types of media used, and powering on/off the machine.
- Frequency of replacing supplies except toner cartridges will vary depending on the print volume, types of media used, and powering on/off the machine.
- Handle the toner cartridge carefully. If toner scatters on your hands or clothes, immediately wipe or wash it off with cold water.
- To avoid print quality problems, DO NOT touch the shaded parts shown in the illustrations.

Toner cartridge



Imaging unit



Related Information

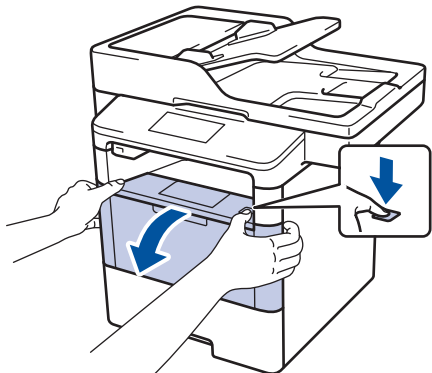
- Routine Maintenance
 - Replace the Toner Cartridge
 - Replace the Imaging Unit
 - Reset the Drum Counter

Related Topics:

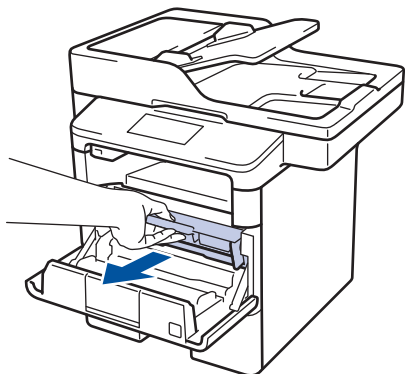
- Error and Maintenance Messages
-

Replace the Toner Cartridge

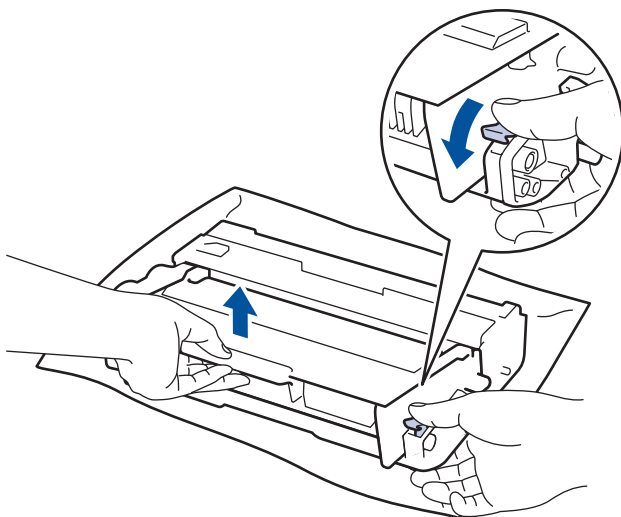
1. Make sure the machine is turned on.
2. Open the front cover.



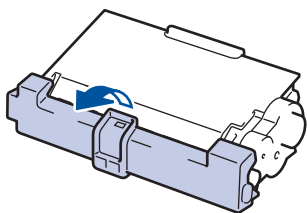
3. Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly from the machine.



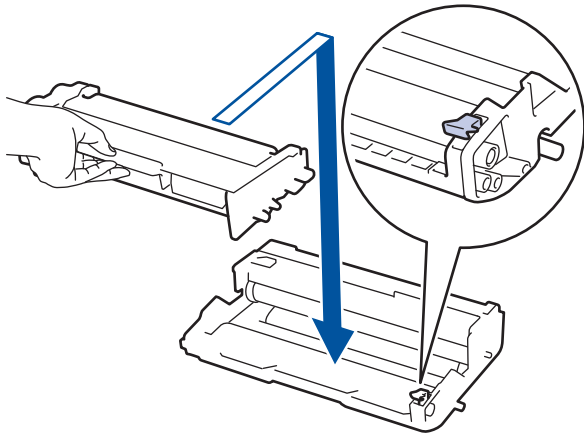
4. Push down the lock lever and take the toner cartridge out of the imaging unit.




5. Unpack the new toner cartridge.
6. Remove the protective cover.

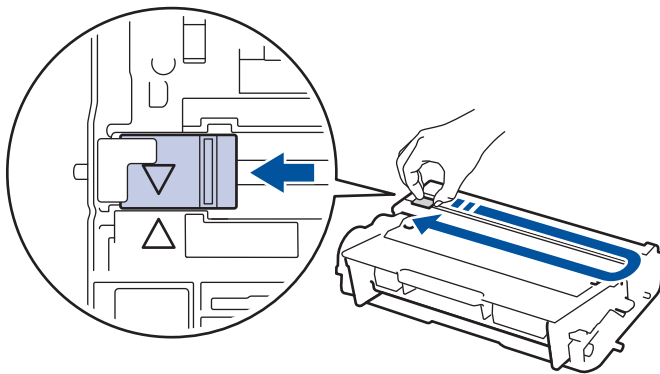



7. Put the new toner cartridge firmly into the imaging unit until you hear it lock into place.



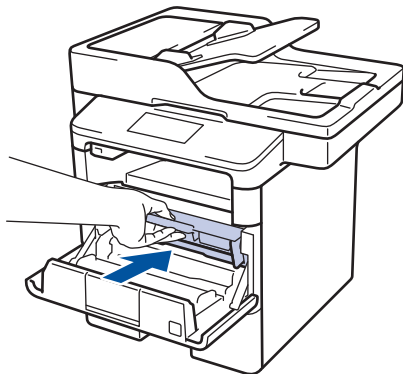
 Make sure you put the toner cartridge in correctly or it may separate from the imaging unit.

8. Clean the corona wire inside the imaging unit by gently sliding the tab from left to right and right to left several times.



 Be sure to return the tab to the Home position (▲). The arrow on the tab must be aligned with the arrow on the imaging unit. If it is not, printed pages may have a vertical stripe.

9. Install the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly back into the machine.



10. Close the front cover of the machine.



-
- After replacing a toner cartridge, DO NOT turn off the machine or open the front cover until the machine's display returns to Ready Mode.
 - The toner cartridge that comes with your machine is a Inbox toner cartridge.
 - It is a good idea to keep a new toner cartridge ready for use when you see the Toner Low warning.
 - To ensure high quality printing, we recommend using only original toner cartridges. When you want to buy toner cartridges, contact customer support.
 - DO NOT unpack the new toner cartridge until you are ready to install it.
 - If a toner cartridge is left unpacked for a long time, the toner life will be shortened.
 - The machine strongly recommends you DO NOT refill the toner cartridge provided with your machine. We also strongly recommend you continue to use only original replacement toner cartridges. Use or attempted use of third party toner and/or cartridges in this machine may cause damage to the machine and/or may result in unsatisfactory print quality. Our limited warranty coverage does not apply to any problem that is caused by the use of third party toner and/or cartridges. To protect your investment and obtain premium performance from this machine, we strongly recommend the use of original Supplies.
-

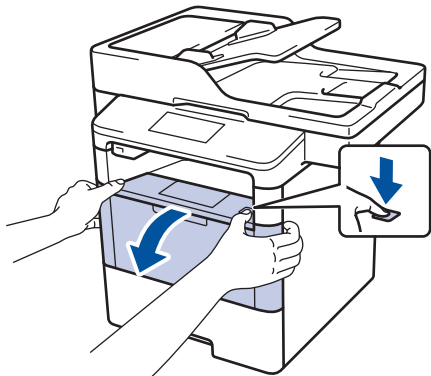


Related Information

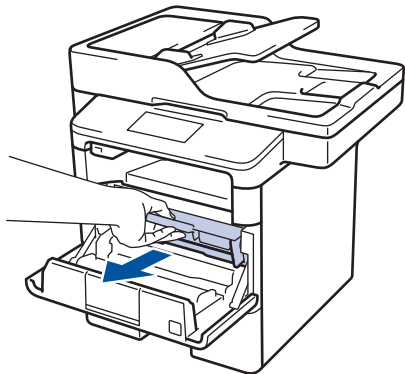
- [Replace Supplies](#)
-

Replace the Imaging Unit

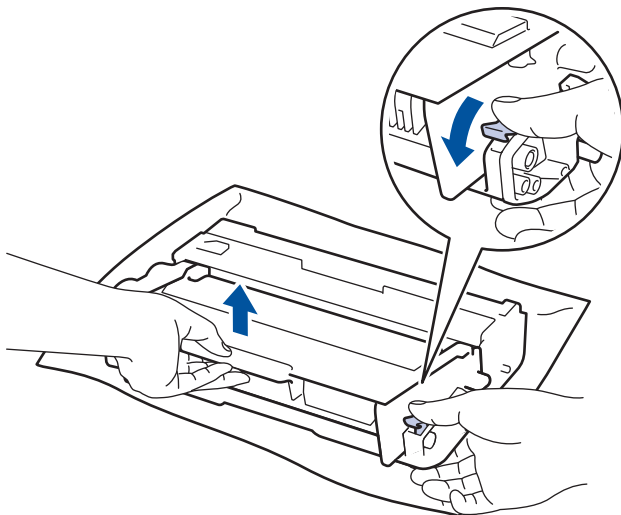
1. Make sure the machine is turned on.
2. Open the front cover.



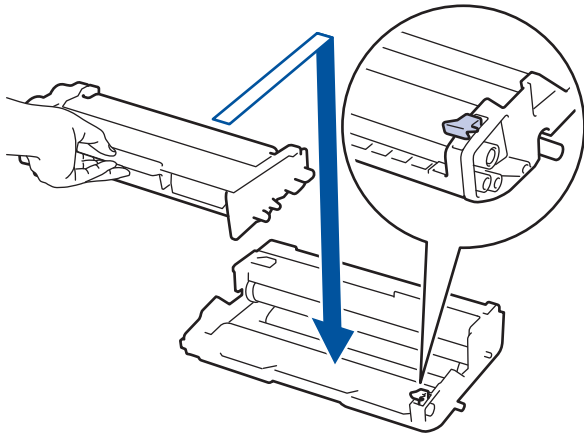
3. Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly from the machine.



4. Push down the lock lever and take the toner cartridge out of the imaging unit.

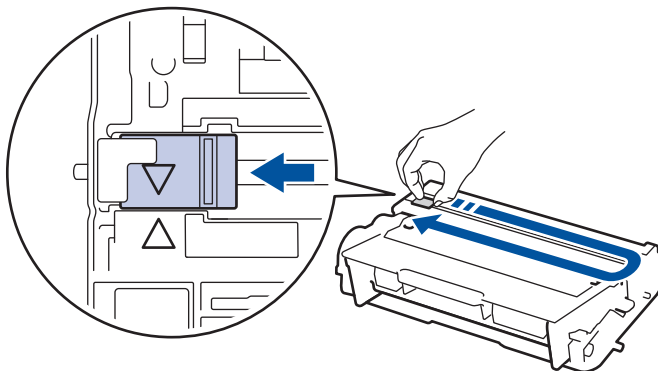


5. Unpack the new imaging unit.
6. Put the toner cartridge firmly into the new imaging unit until you hear it lock into place.



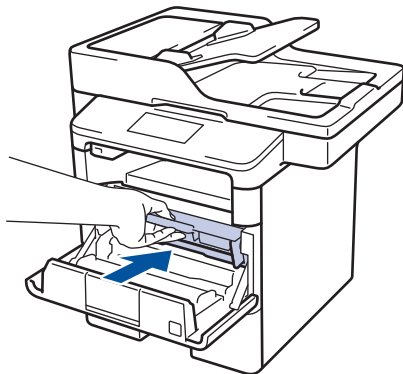
Make sure you put the toner cartridge in correctly or it may separate from the imaging unit.

7. Clean the corona wire inside the imaging unit by gently sliding the tab from left to right and right to left several times.



Be sure to return the tab to the Home position (▲). The arrow on the tab must be aligned with the arrow on the imaging unit. If it is not, printed pages may have a vertical stripe.

8. Install the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly back into the machine.



9. Close the front cover of the machine.

NOTE

- If an unpacked imaging unit is placed in direct sunlight (or room light for long periods of time), the unit may be damaged.
- For best performance, use only original toner.
- The machine should be used only in a clean, dust-free environment with adequate ventilation.

Printing with a non-genuine imaging unit may reduce not only the print quality but also the quality and life of the machine itself. Warranty coverage does not apply to problems caused by the use of a non-genuine imaging unit.



Related Information

- [Replace Supplies](#)

Related Topics:



- [Reset the Drum Counter](#)
-

Reset the Drum Counter

When you replace the imaging unit with a new one, you must reset the drum counter by completing the following steps:

IMPORTANT

DO NOT reset the drum counter unless you are replacing the imaging unit.

1. Make sure the machine is turned on.
2. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Machine Info.] > [Parts Life].
3. Press and hold [Drum] until the touchscreen message changes.
4. Press [Yes].
5. Press .



Related Information

- [Replace Supplies](#)

Related Topics:

- [Replace the Imaging Unit](#)

Clean the Machine

Clean the outside and inside of the machine regularly with a dry, lint-free cloth.

When you replace the toner cartridge or the imaging unit, make sure you clean the inside of the machine. If printed pages are stained with toner, clean the inside of the machine with a dry, lint-free cloth.

WARNING

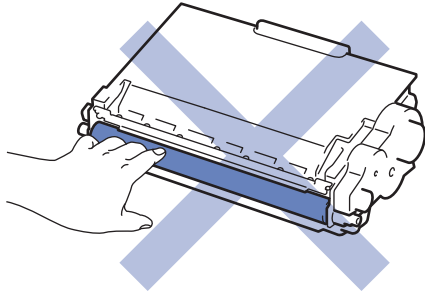
- DO NOT use flammable substances, any type of spray, or an organic solvent/liquid containing alcohol or ammonia to clean the inside or outside of the product. Doing so could cause a fire. Instead, use only a dry, lint-free cloth.



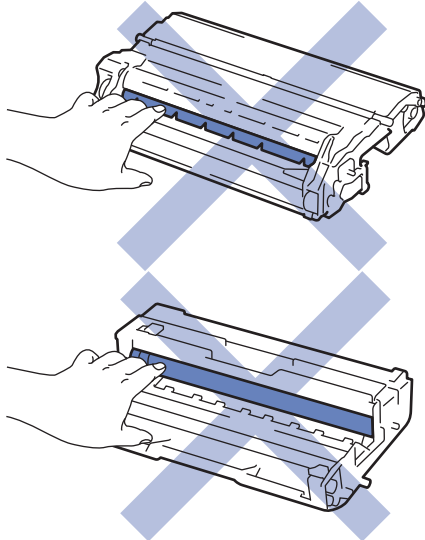
IMPORTANT

- DO NOT use isopropyl alcohol to remove dirt from the control panel. It may crack the panel.
- To avoid print quality problems, DO NOT touch the shaded parts shown in the illustrations.

Toner cartridge



Imaging unit




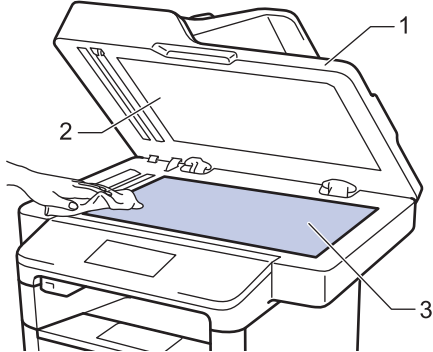
Related Information

- [Routine Maintenance](#)
 - [Clean the Scanner](#)
 - [Clean the Touchscreen LCD](#)

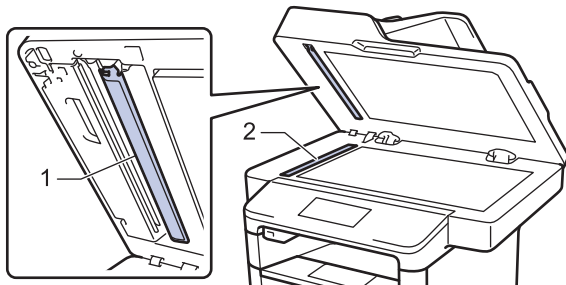
-
- Clean the Corona Wire
 - Clean the Imaging Unit
 - Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers
-

Clean the Scanner

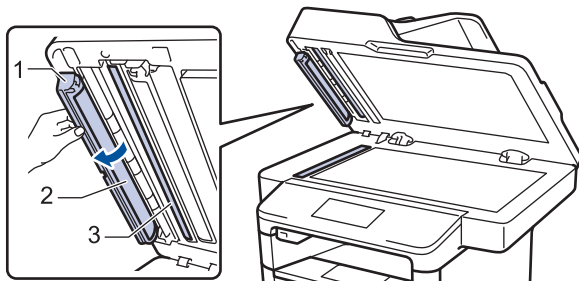
1. Press and hold  to turn the machine off.
2. Lift the document cover (1). Clean the white plastic surface (2) and scanner glass (3) underneath it with a soft lint-free cloth moistened with water.




3. In the ADF unit, clean the white bar (1) and the scanner glass strip (2) underneath it with a soft lint-free cloth moistened with water.



4. Open the scanner glass cover (1), and then clean the other white bar (2) and scanner glass strip (3) (supported models only).



5. Close the document cover.
6. Press  to turn the machine on.

Related Information

- [Clean the Machine](#)


Related Topics:

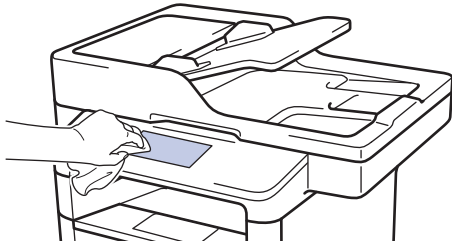
- [Other Problems](#)
- [Telephone and Fax Problems](#)


Clean the Touchscreen LCD

IMPORTANT

DO NOT use any type of liquid cleaners (including ethanol).

1. Press and hold  to turn the machine off.
2. Clean the touchscreen with a dry, soft lint-free cloth.



3. Press  to turn the machine on.



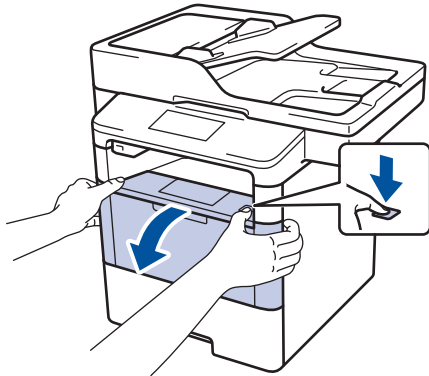
Related Information

- [Clean the Machine](#)

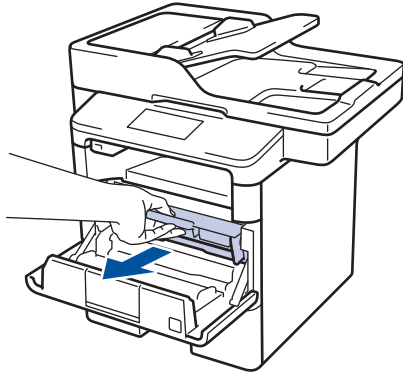
Clean the Corona Wire

If you have print quality problems or the control panel displays [Drum !] status, clean the corona wire.

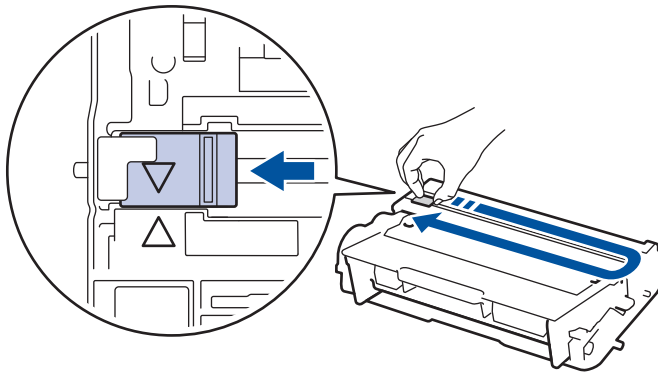
1. Open the front cover.



2. Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly from the machine.

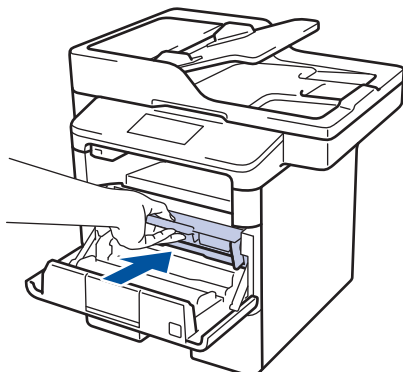


3. Clean the corona wire inside the imaging unit by gently sliding the tab from left to right and right to left several times.



Be sure to return the tab to the Home position (▲). The arrow on the tab must be aligned with the arrow on the imaging unit. If it is not, printed pages may have a vertical stripe.

4. Install the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly back into the machine.



5. Close the front cover of the machine.



Related Information




- [Clean the Machine](#)

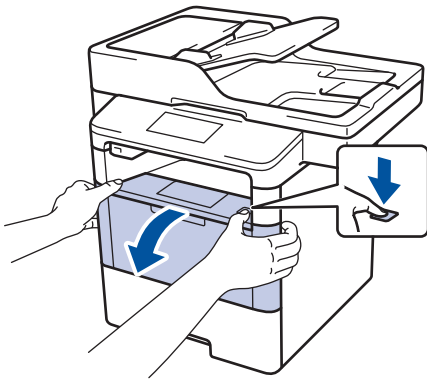
Related Topics:

- [Error and Maintenance Messages](#)
-

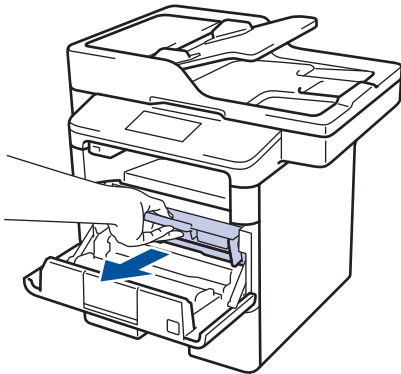
Clean the Imaging Unit

If your printout has dots or other repeating marks at 94 mm intervals, the drum may have foreign material, such as glue from a label, stuck on the drum surface.

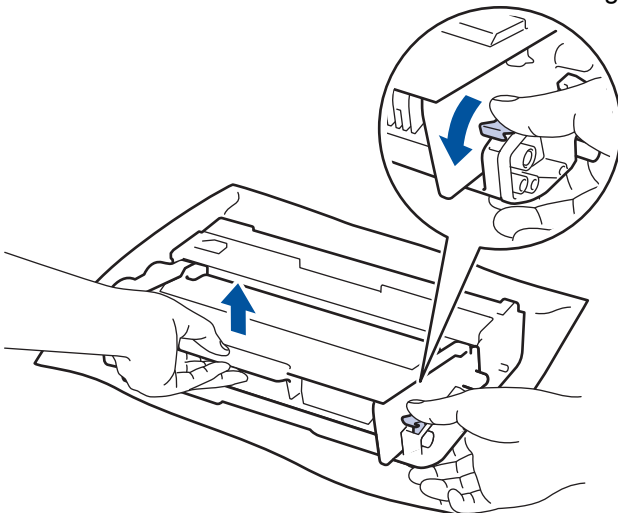
1. Make sure the machine is in Ready Mode.
2. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports] > [Drum Dot Print].
3. Press [Yes].
The machine prints the Drum Dot Check Sheet.
4. Press .
5. Press and hold  to turn the machine off.
6. Open the front cover.



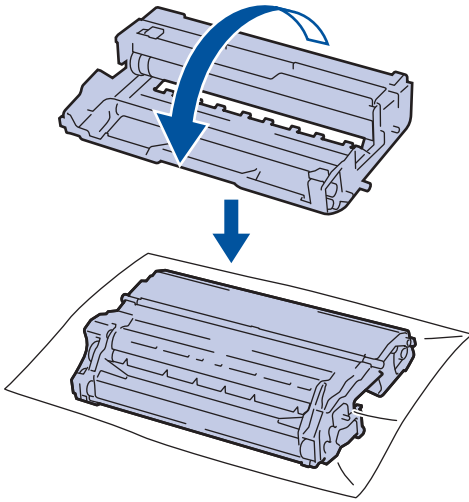
7. Remove the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly from the machine.



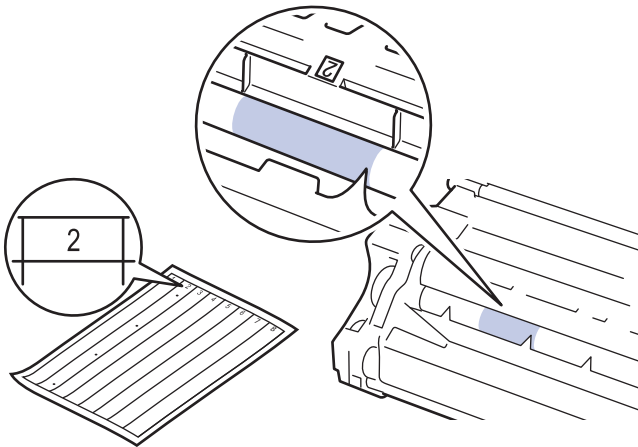
8. Push down the lock lever and take the toner cartridge out of the imaging unit.



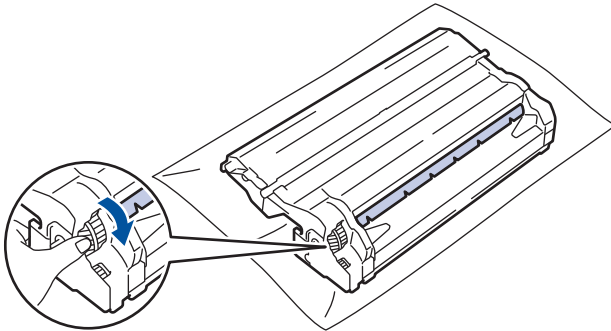
9. Turn the imaging unit as shown in the illustration. Make sure that the imaging unit gear is on the left side.



10. Use the numbered markers next to the drum roller to find the mark on the drum. For example, a dot in column 2 on the check sheet means that there is a mark in drum region “2”.

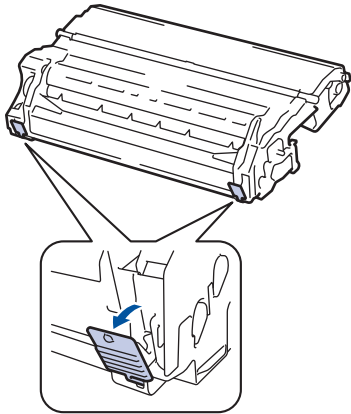


11. Turn the edge of the imaging unit toward you while looking at the drum surface to find the mark.

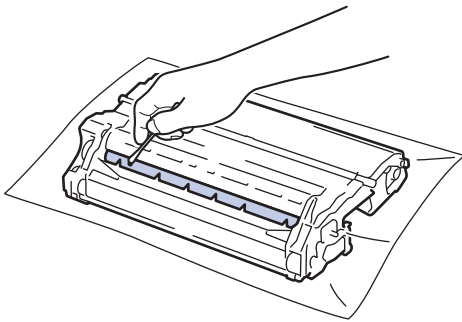




- To avoid print quality problems, DO NOT touch the surface of the imaging unit, only the edge.
- You can turn the imaging unit gear more easily by pulling down the black levers. When you have finished turning the gear, push the levers back to the original position.



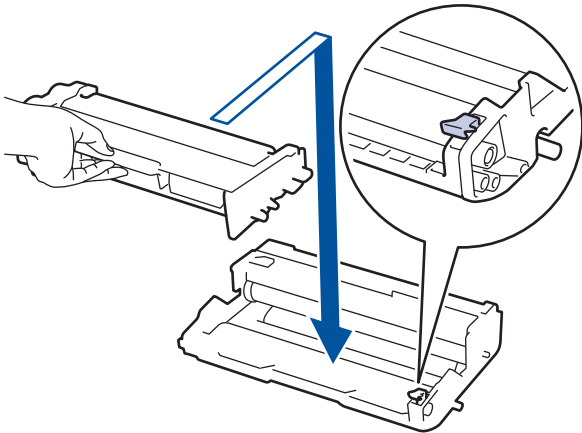
12. Wipe the surface of the drum gently with a dry cotton swab until the mark on the surface comes off.



NOTE

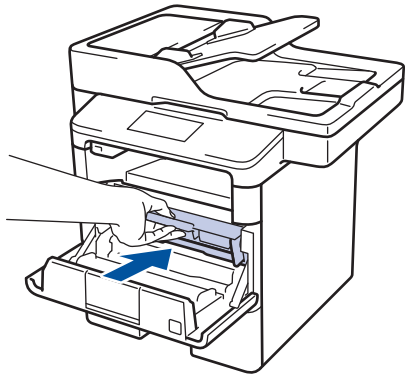
DO NOT clean the surface of the photosensitive drum with a sharp object or any liquids.

13. Put the toner cartridge firmly into the imaging unit until you hear it lock into place.




Make sure you put the toner cartridge in correctly or it may separate from the imaging unit.

14. Install the toner cartridge and imaging unit assembly back into the machine.



15. Close the front cover of the machine.

16. Press  to turn the machine on.



Related Information

- [Clean the Machine](#)


Related Topics:

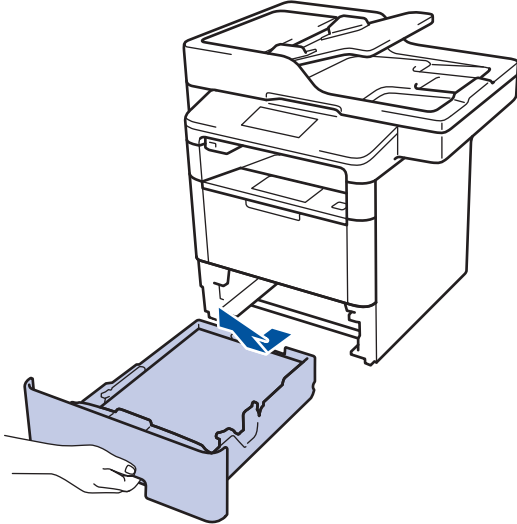
- [Improve the Print Quality](#)
-

Clean the Paper Pick-up Rollers

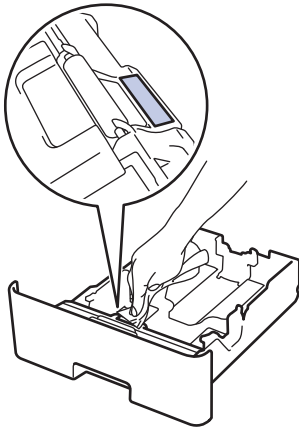
Cleaning the paper pick-up rollers periodically may prevent paper jams by ensuring that paper feeds properly.

If you have paper feed problems, clean the pick-up rollers as follows:

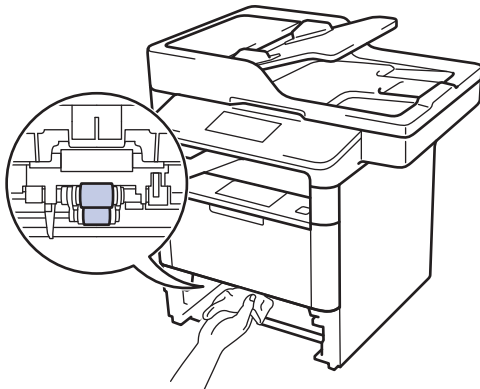
1. Press and hold  to turn the machine off.
2. Pull the paper tray completely out of the machine.




3. If paper is loaded or something is stuck inside in the paper tray, remove it.
4. Tightly wring out a lint-free cloth soaked in lukewarm water, and then wipe the separator pad on the paper tray to remove dust.



5. Wipe the two pick-up rollers inside the machine to remove dust.



6. Reload the paper and put the paper tray firmly back in the machine.
7. Press  to turn the machine on.





Related Information

- [Clean the Machine](#)


Related Topics:

- [Printing Problems](#)
-

Check the Remaining Life of Parts

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Machine Info.] > [Parts Life].
2. Press the machine part you want to check.
The LCD displays the approximate remaining part life.
3. Press .



To display the approximate remaining life of the toner cartridge, press  on the LCD.



Related Information

- [Routine Maintenance](#)

Replace Periodic Maintenance Parts

Replace the following parts regularly to maintain print quality.

Contact customer support when the following message appears on the LCD:

LCD Message	Description
Replace Fuser	Replace the Fuser Unit.
Replace Laser	Replace the Laser Unit.
Replace PF Kit 1	Replace the Paper Feeding Kit for the Paper Tray.
Replace PF Kit 2 ¹	Replace the Paper Feeding Kit for the Optional Tray(s).
Replace PF Kit 3 ¹	Replace the Paper Feeding Kit for the Optional Tray(s).
Replace PF Kit MP	Replace the Paper Feeding Kit for the Multi-purpose Tray.

¹ If you use the Optional Tray(s) with your machine, this message will appear on the LCD. When the machine has multiple Optional Trays, the machine displays messages using numbers corresponding to each Optional Tray.



Related Information

- [Routine Maintenance](#)

Machine Settings

Customise settings and features, create shortcuts, and work with options displayed on the machine's LCD to make your machine a more efficient work tool.

- [Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel](#)
- [Change Machine Settings from Your Computer](#)

Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel

- [In the Event of Power Failure \(Memory Storage\)](#)
- [General Settings](#)
- [Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut](#)
- [Print Reports](#)
- [Settings and Features Tables](#)

In the Event of Power Failure (Memory Storage)

Your menu settings are stored permanently, and in the event of a power failure will not be lost. Temporary settings (for example, Contrast, Overseas Mode) will be lost.

- During a power failure, the machine will retain the date and time and programmed fax timer jobs (for example: Delayed Fax) for approximately 60 hours. Other fax jobs in the machine's memory will not be lost.





Related Information

- [Change Machine Settings from the Control Panel](#)
-

General Settings

- [Adjust the Machine's Volume](#)
- [Change for Daylight Saving Time Automatically](#)
- [Set Sleep Mode Countdown](#)
- [About Deep Sleep Mode](#)
- [Set Auto Power Off Mode](#)
- [Set the Date and Time](#)
- [Set the Time Zone](#)
- [Adjust the LCD Backlight Brightness](#)
- [Change How Long the LCD Backlight Stays On](#)
- [Set Your Station ID](#)
- [Set Tone or Pulse Dialling Mode](#)
- [Reduce Toner Consumption](#)
- [Prevent Dialling a Wrong Number \(Dial Restriction\)](#)
- [Reduce Printing Noise](#)
- [Change the Language on the LCD](#)

Adjust the Machine's Volume

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Volume].
2. Press one of the following options:
(The options will vary depending on your machine.)
 - [Ring]
Adjust the ring volume.
 - [Beep]
Adjust the volume of the beep you hear when you press a button, make a mistake, or after you send or receive a fax.
 - [Speaker]
Adjust the speaker volume.
3. Select the [Off], [Low], [Med] or [High] option, and then press the option you want.
4. Press .





Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Change for Daylight Saving Time Automatically

You can program the machine to change automatically for Daylight Saving Time.

It will reset itself forward one hour in the spring, and backward one hour in the autumn. Make sure you have set the correct date and time in the Date & Time setting.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Date & Time] > [Auto Daylight].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .





Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Set Sleep Mode Countdown

The Sleep Mode (or Power Save Mode) setting can reduce power consumption. When the machine is in Sleep Mode, it acts as though it is turned off. The machine will wake up and start printing when it receives a print job or a fax. Use these instructions to set a time delay (countdown) before the machine enters Sleep Mode.

- You can choose how long the machine must be idle before it goes into Sleep Mode.
- The timer will restart if any operation is carried out on the machine, such as receiving a print job.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Ecology] > [Sleep Time].
2. Enter the length of time (maximum 50 minutes) the machine will remain idle before entering Sleep Mode, and then press [OK].
3. Press .





Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

About Deep Sleep Mode

If the machine is in Sleep Mode and does not receive any jobs for certain length of time, the machine will automatically enter Deep Sleep Mode. The length of time is based on your specific model and settings.

Deep Sleep Mode uses less power than Sleep Mode.

Applicable Models	Machine's LCD in Deep Sleep Mode	Conditions That Will Wake the Machine
All models	The LCD backlight turns off and  blinks.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">The machine receives a job.Someone presses  or the touchscreen LCD.






Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Set Auto Power Off Mode

If the machine is in Deep Sleep Mode for certain length of time, based on your model and settings, the machine will go into Power Off Mode automatically. The machine does not go into Power Off Mode when the machine is connected to a network or has secure print data in the memory.

- To start printing, press  on the control panel and then send a print job.



1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Ecology] > [Auto Power Off].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the [Off], [1hour], [2hours], [4hours] or [8hours] option, and then press the option you want.
3. Press .



Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Set the Date and Time

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Date & Time] > [Date].
2. Enter the last two digits of the year using the LCD, and then press [OK].
3. Enter the two digits for the month using the LCD, and then press [OK].
4. Enter the two digits for the day using the LCD, and then press [OK].
5. Press [Time].
6. Enter the time (in 24-hour format) using the LCD, and then press [OK].
(For example: enter 19:45 for 7:45 PM.)
7. Press .





Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Set the Time Zone

Set the time zone for your location on the machine.



1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Date & Time] > [Time Zone].
2. Enter your time zone.
3. Press [OK].
4. Press .

Related Information

- [General Settings](#)
-

Adjust the LCD Backlight Brightness

If you are having difficulty reading the LCD, changing the brightness setting may help.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [LCD Settings] > [Backlight].
2. Press the [Light], [Med] or [Dark] option.
3. Press .





Related Information

- [General Settings](#)
-

Change How Long the LCD Backlight Stays On

Set how long the LCD backlight stays on.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [LCD Settings] > [Dim Timer].
2. Press the [Off], [10Secs], [20Secs] or [30Secs] option.
3. Press .




Related Information



- [General Settings](#)


Set Your Station ID

Set the machine to print your Station ID and the fax's date and time at the top of each fax you send.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Station ID] > [Fax].
2. Enter your fax number (up to 20 digits) using the LCD, and then press [OK].
3. Press [Tel].
4. Enter your telephone number (up to 20 digits) using the LCD, and then press [OK].
5. Press [Name].
6. Enter your name (up to 20 characters) using the LCD, and then press [OK].



- Press  to cycle between letters, numbers and special characters. (The characters available may differ depending on your country.)
- If you enter an incorrect character, press ◀ or ▶ to move the cursor to it and press . Press the correct character.
- To enter a space, press [Space] or ▶.
- For more detailed information, see *Related Information*.

7. Press .



Related Information

- [General Settings](#)



Related Topics:

- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)
- [Transfer Faxes to Another Fax Machine](#)
- [Transfer the Fax Journal Report to Another Fax Machine](#)

Set Tone or Pulse Dialling Mode

Your machine is set for a Tone dialling service. If you have a Pulse dialling (rotary) service, you must change the dialling mode.

This feature is not available in some countries.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Tone/Pulse].
2. Press [Tone] or [Pulse].
3. Press .





Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Reduce Toner Consumption

Using the Toner Save feature may reduce toner consumption. When Toner Save is set to on, the print on your documents appears lighter.

We DO NOT recommend using the Toner Save feature for printing photo or greyscale images.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Ecology] > [Toner Save].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .




Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Prevent Dialling a Wrong Number (Dial Restriction)

This feature prevents users from sending a fax or call to the wrong number by mistake. You can set the machine to restrict dialling when you use the dial pad, Address Book, Shortcuts and LDAP search.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Fax] > [Dial Restriction].
2. Press one of the following options:
 - [Dial Pad]
 - [Address Book]




If you combine Address Book numbers when dialling, the numbers will be recognised as dial pad input and will not be restricted.

- [Shortcuts]
 - [LDAP Server]
3. Press one of the following options:

Option	Description
Enter # Twice	The machine prompts you to re-enter the number, and then if you re-enter the same number correctly, the machine will start dialling. If you re-enter the wrong number, the LCD will display an error message.
On	The machine restricts all fax sending and outbound calls for that dialling method.
Off	The machine does not restrict the dialling method.



- The [Enter # Twice] setting will not work if you use an external phone before entering the number. You will not be asked to re-enter the number.
- If you choose [On] or [Enter # Twice], you cannot use the Broadcasting feature.

4. Press .





Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Reduce Printing Noise

The Quiet Mode setting can reduce printing noise. When Quiet Mode is turned on, the print speed becomes slower. The factory setting is off.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [General Setup] > [Ecology] > [Quiet Mode].
2. Press [On] or [Off].
3. Press .





Related Information

- [General Settings](#)

Change the Language on the LCD

Change the LCD language if needed.

This feature is not available in some countries.

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Initial Setup] > [Local Language].
2. Press your language.
3. Press .



Related Information

- [General Settings](#)
-

Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut

- [Add Shortcuts](#)
- [Change or Delete Shortcuts](#)



Add Shortcuts

You can add the Fax, Copy and Scan settings you use most frequently by saving them as your Shortcuts. Later you can press the Shortcut to apply these settings instead of manually re-entering them.



Some Shortcut menus are not available depending on your model.

These instructions describe how to add a Copy Shortcut. The steps for adding a Fax or Scan Shortcut are very similar.


1. Press  [Shortcuts].
2. Press a tab from [1] to [8].
3. Press  where you have not added a Shortcut.
4. Press ▲ or ▼ to display [Copy], and then press [Copy].
5. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the copy presets, and then press the copy preset you want.
6. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the available settings, and then press the setting you want to change.
7. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the available options for the setting, and then press the option you want.
Repeat these two steps until you have selected all the settings and options you want.
8. When you have finished changing settings, press [Save as Shortcut].
9. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected, and then press [OK].
10. Enter a name for the Shortcut using the LCD, and then press [OK].



Related Information

- [Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut](#)

Change or Delete Shortcuts

1. Press  [Shortcuts].
2. Press a tab from [1] to [8] to display the Shortcut you want to change.
3. Press the Shortcut you want to change.

The settings for the Shortcut you selected appear.



To delete the Shortcut or edit the name, press and hold the Shortcut until the options appear, and then follow the on-screen menus.

4. Press [Options].
5. Change the settings for the Shortcut if needed.
6. Press [OK] (if needed).
7. When finished, press [Save as Shortcut].
8. Read and confirm the displayed list of settings you have selected, and then press [OK].
9. Do one of the following:
 - To overwrite the Shortcut, press [Yes].
 - If you do not want to overwrite the Shortcut, press [No] to enter a new Shortcut name. Enter a new name using the LCD, and then press [OK].



To edit the name, hold down  to delete the current name.



Related Information

- [Save Your Favourite Settings as a Shortcut](#)

Print Reports

- [Reports](#)
- [Print a Report](#)

Reports

The following reports are available:

XMIT Verify

The XMIT Verify report prints a Transmission Verification Report of your last transmission.

Address Book

The Address Book report prints an alphabetical list of names and numbers stored in the Address Book memory.

Fax Journal

The Fax Journal prints a list of information about your last 200 incoming and outgoing faxes. (TX means Transmit, RX means Receive)

User Settings

The User Settings report prints a list of your current settings.

Printer Settings

The Printer Settings report prints a list of your current printer settings.

Network Configuration

The Network Configuration report prints a list of your current network settings.

Print File List

The Print File List prints a list of the fonts and print macros stored in the machine.

Drum Dot Print

The Drum Dot Print prints the drum dot sheet, which helps when it is time to clean the imaging unit.

WLAN Report



The WLAN Report prints the wireless LAN connectivity diagnosis.



Related Information

- [Print Reports](#)

Print a Report

1. Press  [Settings] > [All Settings] > [Print Reports].
2. Swipe up or down or press ▲ or ▼ to display the report you want to print, and then press it.
3. Do one of the following:
 - If you choose [XMIT Verify], do one of the following:
 - To view the Transmission Verification Report, press [View on LCD].
 - To print the Transmission Verification Report, press [Print Report].
 - If you choose other reports, go to next step.
4. Press [Yes].
5. Press .



Related Information

- [Print Reports](#)

Settings and Features Tables


The Settings tables will help you understand the menu selections and options that are found in the machine's programs.

- [Settings Tables](#)
- [Features Tables](#)

Settings Tables



[Settings]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
	Date & Time	Access the Date and Time setting menus.
Toner	Toner Life	View the approximate remaining toner life.
	Test Print	Print a test page.
Network	Wired LAN	Access the Wired LAN setting menus.
	WLAN (For wireless network models)	Access the WLAN setting menus.
Screen Settings	-	Access the default screen setting menus.
Wi-Fi Direct	-	Access the Wi-Fi Direct setting menus.
Fax Preview	-	View received faxes on the LCD.
Tray Setting	-	Access the tray setting menus.
All Settings	-	Configure the detailed settings.

[All Settings] > [General Setup]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Tray Setting	Paper Type	MP Tray	Select the paper type that matches the paper in the MP tray.
		Tray #1	Select the paper type that matches the paper in the standard paper tray.
		Tray #2 ¹	Select the paper type that matches the paper in the Optional Tray (Tray 2).
		Tray #3 ¹	Select the paper type that matches the paper in the Optional Tray (Tray 3).
	Paper Size	MP Tray	Select the size of paper you loaded in the MP tray.
		Tray #1	Select the size of paper you loaded in the standard paper tray.
		Tray #2 ¹	Select the size of paper you loaded in the Optional Tray (Tray 2).
		Tray #3 ¹	Select the size of paper you loaded in the Optional Tray (Tray 3).
	Paper Low Notice	Paper Low Notice	Select whether to display a message telling you that the paper tray is nearly empty.
		Notice Level	Select the minimum paper level that will trigger the message.
	Check Size	-	Select whether to display a message telling you to check that the size of the paper in the machine and the machine's Paper Size setting match.
	Tray Use: Copy	-	Select the tray to be used for Copy.
	Tray Use: Fax	-	Select the tray to be used for Fax.
	Tray Use: Print	-	Select the tray to be used for Print.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Tray Setting	Skip Tray ¹	-	Select a specific tray you do not want to use; if it is loaded with paper of the wrong size.
	Separator Tray ¹	-	Select the tray that contains the paper used as the separator paper, which is inserted between each print job.
Volume	Ring	-	Adjust the ring volume.
	Beep	-	Adjust the beeper volume.
	Speaker	-	Adjust the speaker volume.
LCD Settings	Backlight	-	Adjust the brightness of the LCD backlight.
	Dim Timer	-	Set how long the LCD backlight stays on after you go back to your Home screen.
Screen Settings	Home Screen	-	Set the default Home screen settings.
	Copy Screen	-	Set the default Copy screen settings.
	Scan Screen	-	Set the default Scan screen settings.
	Display Information	-	Select the default display value for the lower right of the home screen from Data & Time or IP address.
Ecology	Toner Save	-	Increase the page yield of the toner cartridge.
	Sleep Time	-	Set how much time will pass before the machine enters Power Saving Mode.
	Quiet Mode	-	Decrease printing noise.
	Auto Power Off	-	Set the number of hours that the machine will remain in Deep Sleep Mode before going into Power Off Mode.
Setting Lock	Set Password	-	Restrict unauthorised users from changing the machine's settings.
	Lock Off⇒On	-	
Delete Storage	Macro ID	Macro ID XX	Delete the registered Macro data.
	Font ID	Font ID XX	Delete the registered Font data.
	Format	-	Restore the Macro and Font data of your machine to the default settings.

¹ Available if the Optional Tray(s) is installed.

[All Settings] > [Shortcut Settings]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
(Select shortcut button)	Rename	Change the shortcut name.
	Edit	Change the shortcut settings.
	Delete	Delete the shortcut.

[All Settings] > [Fax]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Setup Receive	Receive Mode	-	Select the Receive Mode that best suits your needs.
	Ring Delay	-	Set the number of rings before the machine answers in Fax or Fax/Tel mode.
	F/T Ring Time	-	Set the length of the pseudo/double-ring time in Fax/Tel mode.
	Fax Preview	-	View received faxes on the LCD.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Setup Receive	Fax Detect	-	Receive fax messages automatically when you answer a call and hear fax tones.
	Remote Codes	Remote Codes	Answer calls at an extension or external telephone and use codes to turn the machine on or off. You can personalise the codes.
		Act.Code	
		Deact.Code	
	Auto Reduction	-	Reduce the size of incoming faxes.
	PC Fax Receive	On	Set the machine to send faxes to your computer.
		Off	You can turn on the Backup Print safety feature.
	Memory Receive	Off	-
Fax Forward		Set the machine to forward fax messages or to store incoming faxes in the memory (so you can retrieve them while you are away from your machine). If you select Fax Forward, you can turn on the Backup Print safety feature.	
Fax Storage		Store incoming faxes in the memory.	
Fax Rx Stamp	-	Print the received time and date on the top of received faxes.	
2-sided	-	Print received faxes on both sides of the paper.	
Setup Send	Batch TX	-	Combine delayed faxes to the same fax number at the same time of day into one transmission.
	Coverpage Setting	Print Sample	Print a sample of the fax cover page. You can fill in information and fax it with your document.
		Coverpage Note	Set up your own comments for the fax cover page.
	Auto Redial	-	Set the machine to redial the last fax number after five minutes if the fax did not go through because the line was busy.
Destination	-	Set the machine to display the destination information on the LCD during fax dialling.	
Report Setting	XMIT Report	-	Select the initial setup for the Transmission Verification Report.
	Journal Period	Journal Period	Set the interval for automatic printing of the Fax Journal.
		Time	If you select an option other than Off and Every 50 Faxes, you can set the time for the option.
Day	If you select Every 7 Days, you can set the day of the week.		
Print Document	-	-	Print received faxes stored in the machine's memory.
Remote Access	-	-	Set your own code for Remote Retrieval.
Dial Restriction	Dial Pad	-	Set the machine to restrict dialling when using the dial pad.
	Address Book	-	Set the machine to restrict the dialling when using the Address Book.
	Shortcuts	-	Set the machine to restrict the dialling when using a Shortcut.
	LDAP Server	-	Set the machine to restrict the dialling of LDAP server numbers.
Remaining Jobs	-	-	Check which scheduled jobs are in the machine's memory and cancel selected jobs.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Miscellaneous	BT Call Sign (U.K. only)	-	Use with BT Call Sign.

[All Settings] > [Printer]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Emulation	-	-	Select the emulation mode.
Print Options	Internal Font	PCL	Print a list of the machine's internal fonts.
		PS	
	Test Print	-	Print a test page.
2-sided	2-sided Print	-	Enable or disable 2-sided printing and choose long edge or short edge.
	Single Image	-	For a print job where the last page is a 1-sided image, select the 1-sided Feed option to reduce printing time. When you use Letterhead or Preprinted paper, you must select the 2-sided Feed option. If you select 1-sided Feed for Letterhead or Preprinted paper, the last page will be printed on the reverse side.
Auto Continue	-	-	Select this setting if you want the machine to clear paper size errors or media type errors, and use paper from other trays.
Tray Command	-	-	Select the correct version of HP LaserJet emulation.
Reset Printer	-	-	Restore the printer settings to the factory settings.

[All Settings] > [Network]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Wired LAN	TCP/IP	BOOT Method	IP Boot Tries	Select the BOOT method that best suits your needs.
		IP Address	-	Enter the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	-	Enter the Subnet mask.
		Gateway	-	Enter the Gateway address.
		Node Name	-	Enter the Node name. (up to 32 characters)
		WINS Configuration	-	Select the WINS configuration mode.
		WINS Server	Primary	Specify the IP address of the primary WINS server.
			Secondary	Specify the IP address of the secondary WINS server.
		DNS Server	Primary	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.
			Secondary	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.
		APIPA	-	Set the machine to allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically.
		IPv6	-	Turn the IPv6 protocol on or off.
	Ethernet	-	-	Select the Ethernet link mode.
Wired Status	-	-	View the current wired status.	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Wired LAN	MAC Address	-	-	View the machine's MAC address.
	Set to Default	-	-	Restore the wired network settings to the factory settings.
	Wired Enable	-	-	Turn the Wired LAN on or off manually.
WLAN	TCP/IP	BOOT Method	IP Boot Tries	Select the BOOT method that best suits your needs.
		IP Address	-	Enter the IP address.
		Subnet Mask	-	Enter the Subnet mask.
		Gateway	-	Enter the Gateway address.
		Node Name	-	Enter the Node name. (up to 32 characters)
		WINS Configuration	-	Select the WINS configuration mode.
		WINS Server	Primary	Specify the IP address of the primary WINS server.
			Secondary	Specify the IP address of the secondary WINS server.
		DNS Server	Primary	Specify the IP address of the primary DNS server.
			Secondary	Specify the IP address of the secondary DNS server.
	APIPA	-	Set the machine to allocate the IP address from the link-local address range automatically.	
	IPv6	-	Turn the IPv6 protocol on or off.	
	Setup Wizard	-	-	Configure the wireless network settings using the setup wizard.
	WLAN Assistant	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings using the Drivers & Utilities CD.
	WPS	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings using the one-button push method.
	WPS w/ PIN Code	-	-	Configure your wireless network settings using WPS with a PIN.
	WLAN Status	Status	-	View the current wireless network status.
		Signal	-	View the current wireless network signal strength.
		SSID	-	View the current SSID.
		Comm. Mode	-	View the current Communication Mode.
	MAC Address	-	-	View the machine's MAC address.
Set to Default	-	-	Restore the wireless network settings to the factory settings.	
WLAN Enable	-	-	Turns the wireless interface on or off.	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions	
Wi-Fi Direct	Push Button	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using the one-button push method.	
	PIN Code	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings using WPS with a PIN code.	
	Manual	-	-	Configure your Wi-Fi Direct network settings manually.	
	Group Owner	-	-	Set your machine as the Group Owner.	
	Device Information	Device Name	-	-	View your machine's device name.
		SSID	-	-	View the Group Owner's SSID. When the machine is not connected, the LCD displays Not Connected.
		IP Address	-	-	View your machine's current IP Address.
	Status Information	Status	-	-	View the current Wi-Fi Direct network status.
		Signal	-	-	View the current Wi-Fi Direct network signal strength. When your machine acts as Group Owner, the LCD always indicates a strong signal.
	I/F Enable	-	-	Turn the Wi-Fi Direct connection on or off.	
NFC (Available only for bizhub 5020i)	-	-	-	Turn the ID card reader function on or off.	
E-mail/IFAX	Mail Address	-	-	Enter the email address. (Up to 60 characters)	
	Setup Server	SMTP	Server	Enter the SMTP server name and address.	
			Port	Enter the SMTP port number.	
			Auth. for SMTP	Select the Security method for email notification.	
			SSL/TLS	Send or receive an email via an email server that requires secure SSL/TLS communication.	
			Verify Cert.	Verify the SMTP Server Certificate automatically.	
		POP3/IMAP4	Protocol	Select the protocol for receiving an email from the server.	
			Server	Enter the server name and address.	
			Port	Enter the port number.	
			Mailbox Name	Enter the mailbox name. (Up to 60 characters)	
			Mailbox Password	Enter the password to login to the server. (Up to 32 characters)	
	Select Folder	Select the specified folder in the mailbox using the IMAP4 protocol.			

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
E-mail/IFAX	Setup Server	POP3/IMAP4	SSL/TLS	Send or receive an email via an email server that requires secure SSL/TLS communication.
			Verify Cert.	Verify the SMTP Server Certificate automatically.
			APOP	Turn APOP on or off.
	Setup Mail RX	Auto Polling	Auto Polling	Check the server for new messages automatically.
			Poll Frequency	Set the interval for checking new messages on the server.
			Header	Select the contents of the email header to be printed.
			Del/Read Error Mail	The POP3 server deletes error emails automatically. The IMAP4 server deletes error emails automatically after you read them.
			Notification	Receive notification messages.
	Setup Mail TX	Sender Subject	-	View the subject.
		Size Limit	Size Limit Maximum Size (MB)	Limit the size of email documents.
		Notification	-	Send notification messages.
	Setup Relay	Relay Broadcast	-	Relay a document to another fax machine.
		Relay Domain	Relay XX	Register the Domain name.
Relay Report		-	Print the relay Broadcast Report.	
Manual Receive	-	-	Check the POP3 or IMAP4 server for new messages manually.	
Fax to Server	Fax to Server	-	-	Select the network connection type.
	Prefix	-	-	
	Suffix	-	-	
Security	IPsec	-	-	IPsec is an optional security feature of the IP protocol that provides authentication and encryption services. We recommend contacting your network administrator before changing this setting.
Network Reset	-	-	-	Restore all network settings back to the factory settings.

[All Settings] > [Print Reports]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
XMIT Verify	View on LCD	Display a Transmission Verification Report of your last transmission.
	Print Report	Print a Transmission Verification Report of your last transmission.
Address Book	-	Print a list of names and numbers stored in the Address Book.
Fax Journal	-	Print a list of information about your last 200 incoming and outgoing faxes. (TX means Transmit. RX means Receive.)

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
User Settings	-	Print a list of your settings.
Printer Settings	-	Print a list of your Printer settings.
Network Configuration	-	Print a list of your Network settings.
Print File List	-	Print a list of data saved in the machine's memory.
Drum Dot Print	-	Print the Drum Dot Check Sheet.
WLAN Report	-	Print the wireless LAN connection results.

[All Settings] > [Machine Info.]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
Serial No.	-	Check your machine's serial number.
Firmware Version	Main Version	Check your machine's firmware version.
	Sub1 Version	
Page Counter	Total	Check the number of the pages the machine has printed.
	Fax	
	Copy	
	Print	
	Other	
Parts Life ¹	Drum	Display the remaining life of the imaging unit.
	Fuser	Display the remaining life of the fuser unit.
	Laser Unit	Display the remaining life of the laser unit.
	PF Kit MP	Display the remaining life of the PF kit MP.
	PF Kit 1	Display the remaining life of the PF Kit 1.
	PF Kit 2 ²	Display the remaining life of the PF Kit 2.
	PF Kit 3 ²	Display the remaining life of the PF Kit 3.

¹ Life is approximate and may vary by type of use.

² Available if the Optional Tray(s) is installed.

[All Settings] > [Initial Setup]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
Date & Time	Date	Add the date and time on the screen and in the headings of the faxes you send.
	Time	
	Auto Daylight	Set the machine to change automatically for Daylight Saving Time.
	Time Zone	Set your time zone.
Station ID	Fax	Enter your name and fax number so it appears on each page you fax.
	Tel	
	Name	
Tone/Pulse	-	Select the dialling mode.
Dial Tone	-	Shorten the dial tone detect pause.
Phone Line Set	-	Select the telephone line type.
Compatibility	-	Adjust the equalisation for transmission difficulties.

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
		VoIP service providers offer fax support using various standards. If you regularly experience fax transmission errors, select Basic (for VoIP).
Reset	Machine Reset	Restore all the machine settings that you have changed, such as Date and Time.
	Network	Restore all network settings back to the factory settings.
	Address Book & Fax	Erase all stored phone numbers and fax settings.
	All Settings	Restore all the machine's settings back to the factory settings.
	Factory Reset	Restore all settings back to the factory settings.
Local Language (Available only for some countries)	-	Change your LCD language.



Related Information


- [Settings and Features Tables](#)

Features Tables

[Toner]

Level 1	Descriptions
Toner Life	View the approximate remaining toner life.
Test Print	Print a test page.

[Fax] (When Fax Preview is Off)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Redial(Pause)	-	-	-	Redial the last number called. When you are entering a fax or telephone number on the Touchpanel, Redial changes to Pause on the LCD. Press Pause when you need a delay while dialling numbers, such as access codes and credit card numbers. You can also store a pause when you set up addresses.
Tel(R)	-	-	-	Tel changes to R when PBX is selected as the telephone line type. You can use R to gain access to an outside line or to transfer a call to another extension when connected to a PBX.
Address Book	 (Search:)	-	-	Search within the Address Book.
	Edit	Add New Address	Name	Store Address Book numbers, set up Group numbers for Broadcasting, change and delete Address Book numbers.
			Address	
		Setup Groups	Name	
			Add/Delete	
Change	(Select Address)			
Delete	(Select Address)			
	(Select Address Book)	Apply	-	Start sending a fax using the Address Book.
Call History	Outgoing Call	(Select Outgoing Call)	Apply	Select a number from the Outgoing Call history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.
			Edit	
Fax Start	-	-	-	Send a fax.
Options	Fax Resolution	-	-	Set the resolution for outgoing faxes.
	2-sided Fax (For automatic 2-sided scanning models)	-	-	Set the 2-sided scanning format.
	Contrast	-	-	Adjust the contrast.
	Broadcasting	Add Number	Add Number	Send the same fax message to more than one fax number.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Options	Broadcasting	Add Number	Add from Address book	Send the same fax message to more than one fax number.
			Search in Address book	
	Delayed Fax	Delayed Fax	-	Set the time of day the delayed faxes will be sent.
		Set Time	-	
	Real Time TX	-	-	Send a fax without using the memory.
	Coverpage Setup	Coverpage Setup	-	Set the machine to automatically send a cover page that you have pre-programmed.
		Coverpage Note	-	
		Total Pages	-	
	Overseas Mode	-	-	Set to On if you have difficulty sending faxes overseas.
Glass Scan Size	-	-	Adjust the scan area of the scanner glass to the size of the document.	
Set New Default	-	-	Save your settings as the default.	
Factory Reset	-	-	Restore all settings back to the factory settings.	
Save as Shortcut	-	-	-	Save the current settings as a shortcut.



[Fax] (When Fax Preview is On)

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Sending Faxes	Redial(Pause)	-	-	Redial the last number called. When you are entering a fax or telephone number on the Touchpanel, Redial changes to Pause on the LCD. Press Pause when you need a delay while dialling numbers, such as access codes and credit card numbers. You can also store a pause when you set up addresses.
	Tel(R)	-	-	Tel changes to R when PBX is selected as the telephone line type. You can use R to gain access to an outside line or to transfer a call to another extension when connected to a PBX.
	Address Book	-	-	Select the address of the recipient from the address book.
	Call History	-	-	Select a number from the Outgoing Call history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.
	Fax Start	-	-	Send a fax.
	Options	-	-	Select your settings.
	Save as Shortcut	-	-	Save the current settings as a shortcut.
Received Faxes	Print/Delete	Print All (New Faxes)	-	Print the new received faxes.

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Received Faxes	Print/Delete	Print All (Old Faxes)	-	Print the old received faxes.
		Delete All (New Faxes)	-	Delete the new received faxes.
		Delete All (Old Faxes)	-	Delete the old received faxes.
Address Book	-	-	-	Select the address of the recipient from the address book.
Call History	-	-	-	Select a number from the Outgoing Call history and then send a fax to it, add it to the Address Book, or delete it.



[Copy]


Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Start	-	-	Make a monochrome or greyscale copy.
Quick Copy	Receipt	Start	Set the preset copy settings of Receipt.
		Quick Copy	
		Options	
	Normal	Start	Set the preset copy settings of Normal.
		Quick Copy	
		Options	
	2in1 (ID)	Start	Set the preset copy settings of 2in1(ID).
		Quick Copy	
		Options	
	2in1	Start	Set the preset copy settings of 2in1.
		Quick Copy	
		Options	
	2sided(1⇒2)	Start	Set the preset copy settings of 2-sided(1⇒2).
		Quick Copy	
		Options	
	2sided(2⇒2)	Start	Set the preset copy settings of 2-sided(2⇒2).
		Quick Copy	
		Options	
	Paper Save	Start	Set the preset copy settings of Paper Save.
		Quick Copy	
		Options	
Start	-	Start Copying.	
Options	-	Select your settings.	
Options	Quality	-	Select the Copy resolution for your document type.
	Enlarge/Reduce	100%	-
		Enlarge	-

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Options	Enlarge/Reduce	Reduce	Select a reduction ratio for the next copy.
		Auto	Adjusts the copy size to fit on the paper size you have set.
		Custom (25-400%)	Enter an enlargement or reduction ratio.
	Density	-	Adjust the density.
	Contrast	-	Adjust the contrast.
	Stack/Sort	-	Select to stack or sort multiple copies.
	Page Layout	-	Make N in 1 and 2 in 1 ID copies.
	2-sided Copy	Layout	Turn off or turn on 2-sided copying and select flip on long edge or flip on short edge.
	2-sided Copy Page Layout	-	Select a page layout option when you make 2-sided N in 1 copies from a 2-sided document.
	Tray Use	-	Select the tray that will be used.
Save as Shortcut	-	Save the current settings as a shortcut.	



[Scan]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
to OCR	Scan Actions	-	Convert your scanned document to an editable text file.
	(Select USB or PC)	Options	
		Save as Shortcut	
to File	Scan Actions	-	Scan documents and save them to a folder on your computer.
	(Select USB or PC)	Options	
		Save as Shortcut	
to Image	Scan Actions	-	Scan photos or graphics into your graphics applications.
	(Select USB or PC)	Options	
		Save as Shortcut	
to USB	Scan Actions	-	Scan documents to a USB Flash memory drive.
	Options	2-sided Scan (For automatic 2-sided scanning models)	
		Scan Type	
		Resolution	
		File Type	
		Document Size	
		File Name	
		File Name Style	
		File Size	
		Brightness	
		Contrast	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
to USB	Options	ADF Auto Deskew	Scan documents to a USB Flash memory drive.
		Skip Blank Page	
		Remove Background Colour	
		Set New Default	
		Factory Reset	
Save as Shortcut	-		
Start	-		
to E-mail	Scan Actions	-	Send a scanned document as an email attachment.
	(Select USB or PC)	Options	
		Save as Shortcut	
		Start	
to E-mail Server	Scan Actions	-	Scan a monochrome or a colour document to your email server.
	Cancel	-	
	Address Book	 (Search:)	
		Edit	
		(Select Address Book)	
	Manual	-	
	Next	Destinations	
		Options	
		Save as Shortcut	
		Start	
Destinations	(Select Address)		
to FTP/SFTP	Scan Actions	-	Send scanned data via FTP/SFTP.
	(Select Profile name)	Options	
		Save as Shortcut	
		Start	
to Network	Scan Actions	-	Send scanned data to a CIFS server on your local network or on the Internet.
	(Select Profile name)	Options	
		Save as Shortcut	
		Start	
to SharePoint	Scan Actions	-	Send scanned data via a SharePoint server.
	(Select Profile name)	Options	
		Save as Shortcut	
		Start	
WS Scan (Appears when you install a Web Services Scanner, which is displayed in your	Scan	-	Scan data using the Web Service protocol.
	Scan for E-mail	-	
	Scan for Fax	-	
	Scan for Print	-	

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
computer's Network explorer.)			Scan data using the Web Service protocol.

(Wi-Fi® Setup)

For wireless network models



After the Wi-Fi® is set up, you cannot change the settings from your Home screen. Change the settings for Wi-Fi® in the Settings screen.

Level 1	Descriptions
Setup Wizard	Configure the wireless network settings using the setup wizard.
WLAN Assistant	Configure your wireless network settings using the Drivers & Utilities CD.
WPS	Configure your wireless network settings using the one-button push method.

[Shortcuts]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions	
Add Shortcut	Copy	Receipt	-	Select the settings you want.	
		Normal	-		
		2in1 (ID)	-		
		2in1	-		
		2-sided (1⇒2)	-		
		2-sided (2⇒2)	-		
		Paper Save	-		
	Fax	-	-	Select the settings you want.	
	Scan	to File		(Select PC)	Scan a monochrome or a colour document to your computer.
		to OCR		(Select PC)	Convert your scanned document to an editable text file.
		to Image		(Select PC)	Scan a colour picture into your graphics application.
		to USB		Options	Scan documents to a USB Flash memory drive.
				Save as Shortcut	
		to E-mail		(Select PC)	Scan a monochrome or a colour document into your email application.
		to E-mail Server		Scan Actions	Scan a monochrome or a colour document to your email server.
				Address Book	
			Manual		
	Destinations				
to Network		(Select Profile name)	Send scanned data to a CIFS server on your local network or on the Internet.		
to FTP/SFTP		(Select Profile name)	Send scanned data via FTP/SFTP.		

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Descriptions
Add Shortcut	Scan	to SharePoint	(Select Profile name)	Send scanned data via a SharePoint server.
These lists appears when each Shortcut name is pressed for two seconds.	Rename	-	-	Change the shortcut name.
	Edit	-	-	Change the shortcut settings.
	Delete	-	-	Delete the shortcut.



[Secure Print]

Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Descriptions
Secure Print	(Select User)	(Select Secure Print Job)	You can print data saved in the machine's memory when you enter your four-digit password. Active only when the machine has secure print data.



[USB]

Level 1	Level 2	Descriptions
USB	Scan to USB	Scan documents to a USB Flash memory drive.
	Direct Print	Print the data directly from the USB flash drive.



[2 in 1 ID Copy]

Level 1	Descriptions
2 in 1 ID Copy	Copy both sides of an identification card onto one page.



Related Information

- [Settings and Features Tables](#)

Change Machine Settings from Your Computer

- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)
- [Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup](#)
- [Where Can I Find My Machine's Network Settings?](#)
- [Network Management Software and Utilities](#)

Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management

Web Based Management is a utility that uses a standard web browser to manage your machine using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS).

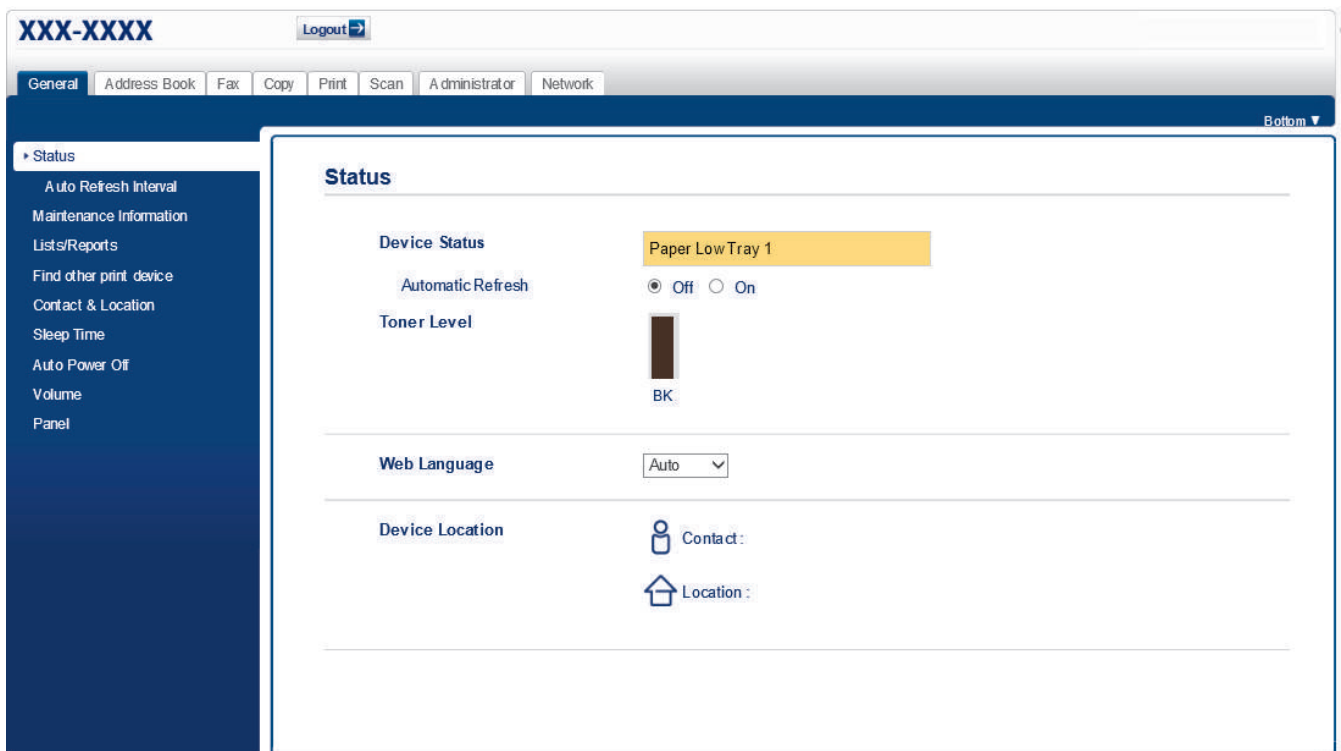
- [What is Web Based Management?](#)
- [Access Web Based Management](#)
- [Set a Login Password for Web Based Management](#)
- [Network Management Software and Utilities](#)

What is Web Based Management?

Web Based Management is a utility that uses a standard web browser to manage your machine using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS). Type your machine's IP address into your web browser to access and change your print server settings.



- We recommend Microsoft Internet Explorer 11/Microsoft Edge for Windows, and Safari 10/11 for Mac. Make sure that JavaScript and Cookies are always enabled in whichever browser you use. If you use different web browser, make sure it is compatible with HTTP 1.0 and HTTP 1.1.
- You must use the TCP/IP protocol on your network and have a valid IP address programmed into the print server and your computer.



- The actual screen may differ from the screen shown above.
- The following explanations are examples. The available functions vary according to the model.

General

Use this tab to confirm the current status of your machine and to change basic settings, such as the timer settings.

Address Book

Use this tab to edit your machine's address book.

Fax

Use this tab to confirm and change the fax settings and to change the Internet fax (I-Fax) settings.

Copy

Use this tab to confirm and change the copy settings.

Print

Use this tab to confirm and change the print settings.

Scan

Use this tab to confirm and change the scan settings and to create Scan to FTP and Scan to Network profiles.

Administrator

Use this tab to set the Web Based Management password, reset various settings, and configure the function settings that are mainly used by administrators. You can also use Secure Function Lock to restrict functions according to the user.

Network

Use this tab to change the network settings, enable or disable the network protocols, and configure the security and certificate settings.



Related Information

- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)
-

Access Web Based Management

- We recommend using the HTTPS security protocol when configuring settings using Web Based Management.
- When you use HTTPS for Web Based Management configuration, your browser will display a warning dialog box.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter

If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.

You can now change the print server settings.

If you change the protocol settings, you must restart the machine after clicking **Submit** to activate the configuration.



Related Information

- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Related Topics:

- [Print the Network Configuration Report](#)

Set a Login Password for Web Based Management

We recommend setting a login password to prevent unauthorised access to Web Based Management.

1. Start your web browser.
2. Type "http://machine's IP address" in your browser's address bar (where "machine's IP address" is the machine's IP address).

For example:

http://192.168.1.2



- If you are using a Domain Name System or enable a NetBIOS name, you can type another name, such as "SharedPrinter" instead of the IP address.

- For example:


http://SharedPrinter


If you enable a NetBIOS name, you can also use the node name.

- For example:

http://KMNxxxxxxxxxxxx

The NetBIOS name can be found in the Network Configuration Report.

3. Type a password if you have set one, and then click . The default password is initpass.
4. Click **Administrator**.
5. Type the password you want to use in the **Enter New Password** field (8 to 32 characters).
6. Retype the password in the **Confirm New Password** field.
7. Click **Submit**.

In the future, every time you access Web Based Management, type the password in the **Login** field, and then click .

After configuring the settings, log off by clicking .



Related Information

- [Change Machine Settings Using Web Based Management](#)

Change the Machine Settings Using Remote Setup


The Remote Setup program lets you configure many of your machine's settings from your computer. When you start Remote Setup, the settings on your machine will be downloaded to your computer and displayed on your screen. If you change the settings on your computer, you can upload them directly to the machine.

- [Remote Setup \(Windows\)](#)

Remote Setup (Windows)

- [Set Up This Machine from Your Computer \(Windows\)](#)
- [Set Up This Machine Using ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)
- [Set Up Your Machine's Address Book Using ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)

Set Up This Machine from Your Computer (Windows)

 If Secure Function Lock is set to On, you cannot use Remote Setup.


1. Do one of the following:

- (Windows 7)


Click  (Start) > All Programs > KONICA MINOLTA > KONICA MINOLTA Utilities.

Click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **Tools** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Remote Setup**.

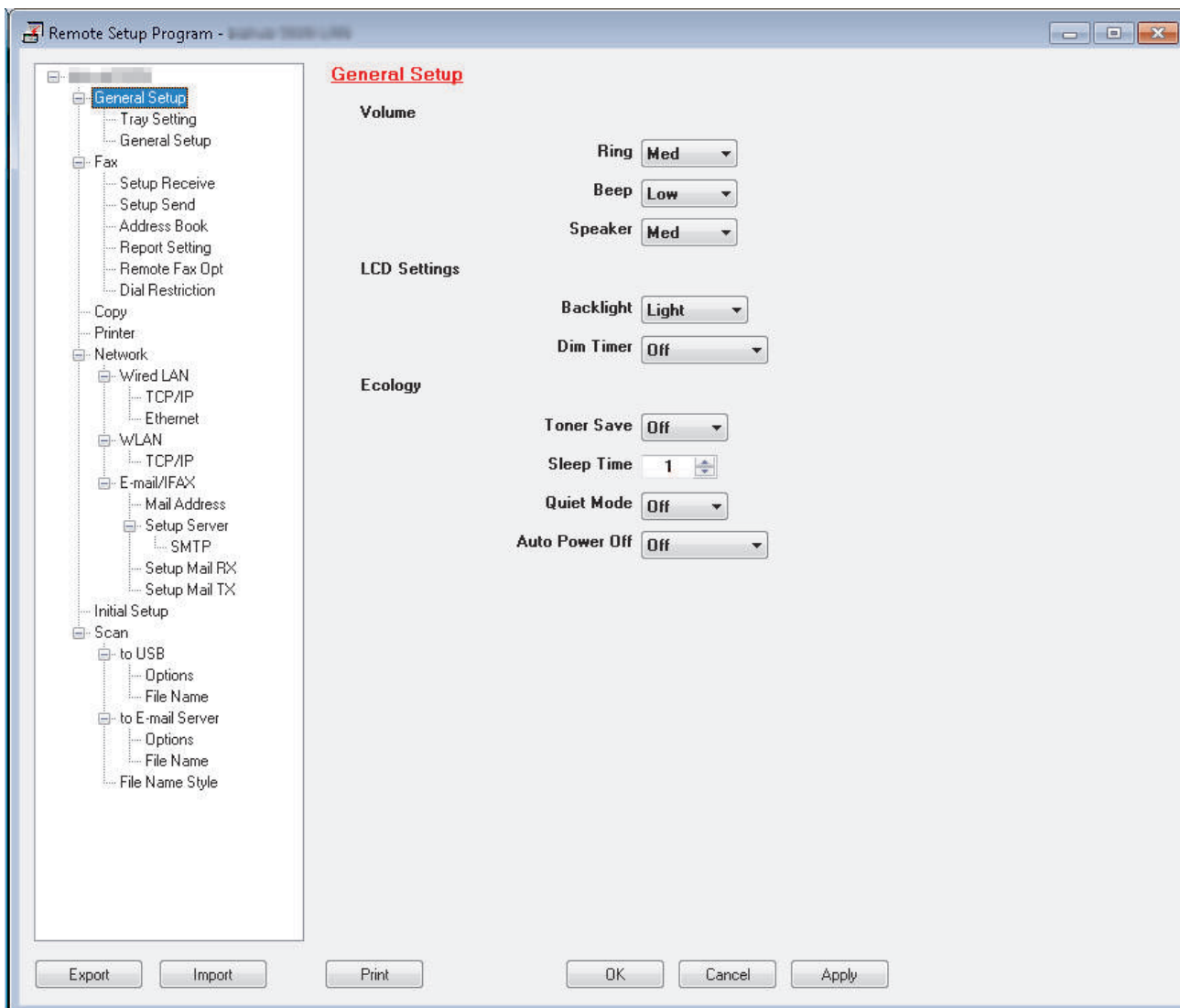
- (Windows 8.1 and Windows 10)

Launch  (KONICA MINOLTA Utilities), and then click the drop-down list and select your model name (if not already selected). Click **Tools** in the left navigation bar, and then click **Remote Setup**.

The Remote Setup Program window appears.

 When your machine is connected via a Network, type the password if required. The default password is initpass.

2. Configure the settings as needed.



Export

Click to save the current configuration settings to a file.



Click **Export** to save your address book or all settings for your machine.

Import

Click to import a file and read its settings.

Print

Click to print the selected items on the machine. You cannot print the data until it is uploaded to the machine. Click **Apply** to upload the new data to the machine, and then click **Print**.

OK

Click to start uploading data to the machine, and then exit the Remote Setup Program. If an error message appears, confirm that your data is correct, and then click **OK**.

Cancel

Click to exit the Remote Setup Program without uploading data to the machine.

Apply

Click to upload data to the machine without exiting the Remote Setup Program.

3. Click **OK**.

- If your computer is protected by a firewall and is unable to use Remote Setup, you may need to configure the firewall settings to allow communication through port numbers 137 and 161.
- If you are using Windows Firewall and you installed the software and drivers from the Drivers & Utilities CD, the necessary firewall settings have already been set.




Related Information

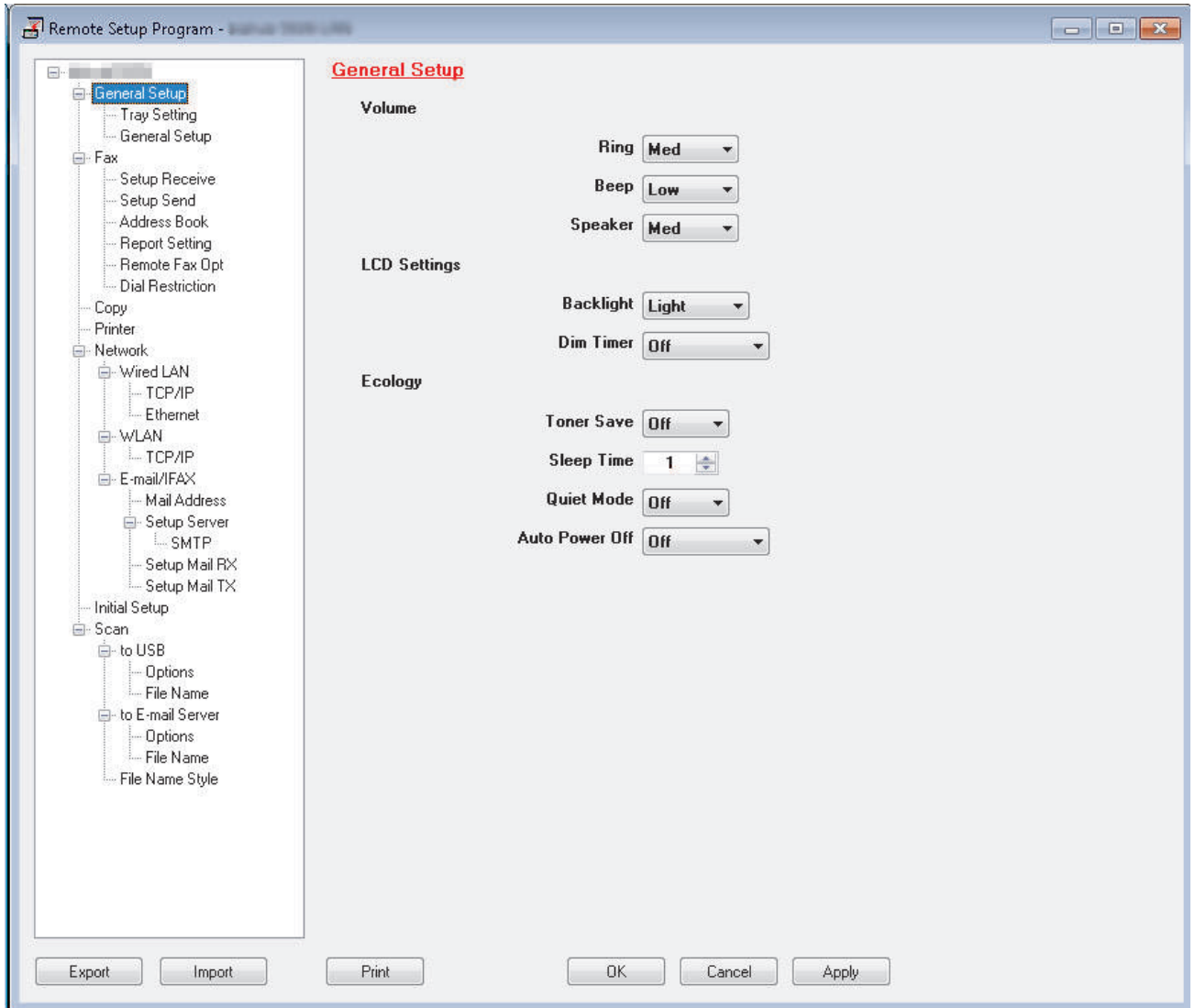
- [Remote Setup \(Windows\)](#)
-

Set Up This Machine Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)



If Secure Function Lock is set to On, you cannot use Remote Setup.

1. Click the  (ControlCenter4) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
2. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
3. Click the **Remote Setup** button.
4. Configure the settings as needed.



Export

Click to save the current configuration settings to a file.



Click **Export** to save your address book or all settings for your machine.

Import

Click to import a file and read its settings.

Print

Click to print the selected items on the machine. You cannot print the data until it is uploaded to the machine. Click **Apply** to upload the new data to the machine, and then click **Print**.

OK

Click to start uploading data to the machine, and then exit the Remote Setup Program. If an error message appears, confirm that your data is correct, and then click **OK**.

Cancel

Click to exit the Remote Setup Program without uploading data to the machine.

Apply

Click to upload data to the machine without exiting the Remote Setup Program.

5. Click **OK**.

- If your computer is protected by a firewall and is unable to use Remote Setup, you may need to configure the firewall settings to allow communication through port numbers 137 and 161.
- If you are using Windows Firewall and you installed the software and drivers from the Drivers & Utilities CD, the necessary firewall settings have already been set.

**Related Information**


- [ControlCenter4 \(Windows\)](#)
- [Remote Setup \(Windows\)](#)

Set Up Your Machine's Address Book Using ControlCenter4 (Windows)

Use Remote Setup through CC4 to add or change Address Book numbers on your computer.



If Secure Function Lock is set to On, you cannot use Remote Setup.

1. Click the  (**ControlCenter4**) icon in the task tray, and then click **Open**.
2. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
3. Click the **Address Book** button.
The **Address Book** opens in a Remote Setup window.
4. Add or update the Address Book information as needed.
5. Click **OK**.



When your machine is connected via a Network, type the password if required. The default password is `initpass`.



Related Information

- [Remote Setup \(Windows\)](#)

Appendix

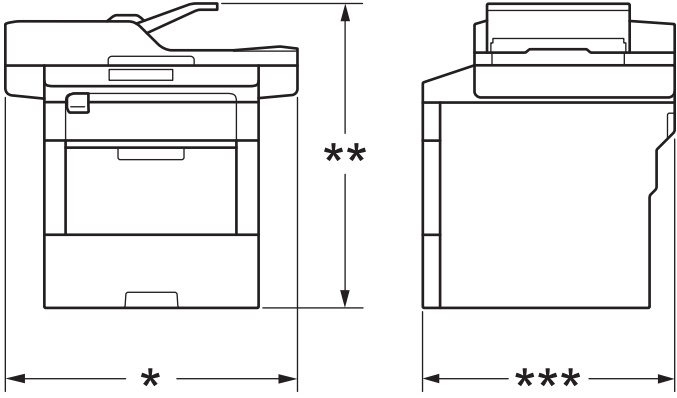
- [Specifications](#)
- [How to Enter Text on Your Machine](#)

Specifications

- >> General Specifications
- >> Document Size Specification
- >> Print Media Specifications
- >> Fax Specifications
- >> Copy Specification
- >> Scanner Specifications
- >> Printer Specifications
- >> Interfaces Specifications
- >> Direct Print Feature Specifications
- >> Computer Requirements Specifications

General Specifications

Printer Type		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Laser
Print Method		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Electrophotographic Laser Printer
Memory Capacity		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (bizhub 4020i) 256 MB • (bizhub 5020i) 1 GB
LCD (liquid crystal display)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (bizhub 4020i) 3.7 in. (93.4 mm) TFT Colour Touchscreen LCD • (bizhub 5020i) 4.85 in. (123.2 mm) TFT Colour Touchscreen LCD
Power Source		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 110 to 120 V AC 50/60Hz • 127 V AC 50/60Hz • 220 to 240 V AC 50/60Hz
Power Consumption (Average)	Peak	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (bizhub 4020i) 110 to 120 V: Approximately 1,248W 220 to 240 V: Approximately 1,344W • (bizhub 5020i) 110 to 120 V: Approximately 1,368 W 220 to 240 V: Approximately 1,344W
	Printing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (bizhub 4020i) 110 to 120 V: Approximately 630W 220 to 240 V: Approximately 645W • (bizhub 5020i) 110 to 120 V: Approximately 730W 220 to 240 V: Approximately 805W
	Copying	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (bizhub 4020i) 110 to 120 V: Approximately 630W 220 to 240 V: Approximately 645W • (bizhub 5020i) 110 to 120 V: Approximately 730W 220 to 240 V: Approximately 805W
	Ready	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 110 to 120 V: Approximately 36 W • 220 to 240 V: Approximately 34W
	Power Off ¹	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 110 to 120 V: Approximately 0.03W • 220 to 240 V: Approximately 0.04W

Dimensions			Unit: mm • (bizhub 4020i) * 435 ** 486 *** 427 • (bizhub 5020i) * 495 ** 518 *** 427
Weights (with supplies)		• (bizhub 4020i) 16.8 kg • (bizhub 5020i) 18.9 kg	
Noise Level	Sound Pressure	Printing	• (bizhub 4020i) 55 dB (A) • (bizhub 5020i) 57 dB (A)
		Ready	• 35 dB (A)
		Printing (Quiet Mode)	• (bizhub 4020i) 52 dB (A) • (bizhub 5020i) 53 dB (A)
	Sound Power	Copying	• (bizhub 4020i) 72.5 dB (A) • (bizhub 5020i) 73.7 dB (A)
		Ready	• 48 dB (A)
		Printing (Quiet Mode)	• 64.7 dB (A)
Temperature	Operating	• 10 to 32.5 °C	
	Storage	• 0 to 40 °C	
Humidity	Operating	• 10 to 80% (without condensation)	
	Storage	• 35 to 85% (without condensation)	
ADF (automatic document feeder)		• (bizhub 4020i) Up to 50 sheets • (bizhub 5020i) Up to 80 sheets	

¹ Power consumption varies slightly depending on the usage environment.

Document Size Specification

Document Size	ADF Width	• 146 to 218 mm
	ADF Length	• 150 to 357.6 mm
	Scanner Glass Width	• Maximum 215.9 mm
	Scanner Glass Length	• (bizhub 4020i) Maximum 300 mm

Document Size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (bizhub 5020i) Maximum 355.6 mm
----------------------	---

Print Media Specifications

Paper Input	Paper Tray (Standard)	Paper Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Plain Paper (75 to 105 g/m²), Letterhead, Coloured Paper, Thin Paper (60 to 75 g/m²), Recycled Paper, Thick Paper (105 to 120 g/m²)¹
		Paper Size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A4, Letter, A5, A5 (Long Edge), A6, Executive, Legal, Folio, Mexico Legal, India Legal, B5 (JIS)
		Paper Weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 60 to 120 g/m²
		Maximum Paper Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (bizhub 4020i) Up to 250 sheets of 80 g/m² Plain Paper (bizhub 5020i) Up to 520 sheets of 80 g/m² Plain Paper
	Multi-purpose tray (MP tray)	Paper Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Plain Paper (75 to 105 g/m²), Letterhead, Colored Paper, Thin Paper (60 to 75 g/m²), Thick Paper (105 to 120 g/m²), Thicker Paper (120 to 199 g/m²), Recycled Paper, Bond, Label, Envelope (64 to 90 g/m²), Env.Thin, Env.Thick
		Paper Size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Width: 69.8 to 216 mm Length: 127 to 355.6 mm
		Paper Weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 60 to 200 g/m²
		Maximum Paper Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Up to 50 sheets of 80 g/m² Plain Paper Envelope: 10 envelopes
	Paper Tray 2, 3 (Optional)²	Paper Type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Plain Paper (75 to 105 g/m²), Letterhead, Coloured Paper, Thin Paper (60 to 75 g/m²), Recycled Paper, Thick Paper (105 to 120 g/m²)¹
		Paper Size	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> A4, Letter, A5, Executive, Legal, Folio, Mexico Legal, India Legal, B5 (JIS)
		Paper Weight	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 60 to 120 g/m²
		Maximum Paper Capacity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (PF-P23) Up to 250 sheets of 80 g/m² Plain Paper (PF-P24) Up to 520 sheets of 80 g/m² Plain Paper
Paper Output³	Face Down Output Tray	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (bizhub 4020i) Up to 150 Sheets of 80 g/m² Plain Paper (face down delivery to the face down output paper tray) (bizhub 5020i) Up to 250 Sheets of 80 g/m² Plain Paper (face down delivery to the face down output paper tray) 	
	Face Up Output Tray	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (bizhub 4020i) One sheet (face up delivery to the face up output tray) (bizhub 5020i) Up to 10 sheets (face up delivery to the face up output tray) 	

2-sided	Automatic 2-sided Printing	Paper Type	• Plain Paper (75 to 105 g/m ²), Letterhead, Coloured Paper, Thin Paper (60 to 75 g/m ²), Recycled Paper
		Paper Size	• A4
		Paper Weight	• 60 to 105 g/m ²

- 1 Open the back cover (face up output tray) before printing to let the printed paper exit onto the face up output tray.
- 2 You can install up to two Lower Trays.
- 3 For labels, we recommend removing the printed sheets from the output paper tray immediately after they exit the machine to avoid the possibility of smudging.

Fax Specifications

Compatibility	• ITU-T Super Group 3	
Coding System	• MH / MR / MMR / JBIG	
Modem Speed	• 33,600 bps (with Automatic Fallback)	
2-sided Print Receiving	• Yes	
Automatic 2-sided Sending	• (bizhub 5020i) Yes (from ADF)	
Scanning Width	• Maximum 208 mm	
Printing Width	• Maximum 208 mm	
Greyscale	• 8bit / 256 levels	
Resolution	Horizontal	• 203 dpi
	Vertical	• Standard: 98 dpi • Fine: 196 dpi • Super fine: 392 dpi • Photo: 196 dpi
Address Book	• 300 Locations	
Groups	• Up to 20	
Broadcasting	• 350 Locations	
Automatic Redial	• 3 times at 5 minutes intervals	
Memory Transmission	• Up to 500 pages ¹	
Out of Paper Reception	• Up to 500 pages ¹	

- 1 'Pages' refers to the 'ITU-T Test Chart #1' (a typical business letter, Standard resolution, JBIG code). Specifications and printed materials are subject to change without prior notice.

Copy Specification

Copy Width	• Maximum 210 mm
Automatic 2-sided Copy	• (bizhub 5020i) Yes (from ADF)
Multiple Copies	• Sorts/Stacks up to 999 pages
Enlarge/Reduce	• 25 to 400% (in increments of 1%)
First Copy Out Time ¹	• (bizhub 4020i) Less than 9.2 seconds
	• (bizhub 5020i) Less than 9.5 seconds

- 1 From Ready Mode and standard tray

Scanner Specifications

Colour / Black	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yes / Yes
Resolution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Up to 1200 x 1200 dpi (from Scanner Glass) • Up to 600 x 600 dpi (from ADF)
Scanning Width	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Maximum 210 mm
Automatic 2-sided Scanning	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (bizhub 5020i) Yes (from ADF)

Printer Specifications

Automatic 2-sided Print	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Yes
Emulation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PCL6, PostScript 3, PDF version1.7
Resolution	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Up to 1200 x 1200 dpi
Print Speed ^{1 2}	1-sided print <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (bizhub 4020i) Up to 40 pages/minute (A4 size) Quiet Mode: Up to 25 pages/minute (A4 size) • (bizhub 5020i) Up to 50 pages/minute (A4 size) Quiet Mode: Up to 25 pages/minute (A4 size)
	2-sided Print <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (bizhub 4020i) Up to 20 sides/minute (Letter or A4 size) • (bizhub 5020i) Up to 24 sides/minute (Letter or A4 size)
First Print Time ³	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (bizhub 4020i) Less than 7.2 seconds • (bizhub 5020i) Less than 7.5 seconds

¹ The print speed may change depending on the type of document you print.

² Print speed may be slower when the machine is connected by wireless LAN.

³ From Ready mode and standard tray

Interfaces Specifications

USB ^{1 2}	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Hi-Speed USB 2.0 Use a USB 2.0 interface cable that is no more than 2.0 metres long.
LAN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (bizhub 4020i) 10Base-T / 100Base-TX³ • (bizhub 5020i) 10Base-T / 100Base-TX / 1000Base-T^{3 4}
Wireless LAN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IEEE 802.11b/g/n (Infrastructure/Ad-hoc Mode) IEEE 802.11g/n (Wi-Fi Direct™)
ID card	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • (bizhub 5020i) Yes

¹ Your machine has a USB 2.0 Hi-Speed interface. The machine can also be connected to a computer that has a USB 1.1 interface.

² Third party USB ports are not supported.

³ Use a straight-through Category 5 (or greater) twisted-pair cable.

⁴ If you connect the machine to a Gigabit network, use network devices and cables that comply with the 1000BASE-T specification.

Direct Print Feature Specifications

Compatibility	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> PDF version 1.7, JPEG, Exif+JPEG, PRN (created by your printer driver), TIFF (scanned by your models), XPS version 1.0
Interface	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> USB direct interface : Front x 1, Rear x 1 (bizhub 5020i)

Computer Requirements Specifications

Supported Operating Systems And Software Functions

Computer Platform & Operating System Version		PC Interface		Processor
		USB ¹	10Base-T / 100Base-TX / 1000Base-T ^{2 3} (Ethernet)	
Windows Operating System	Windows 7	Printing		32 bit (x86)(SP3) or 64 bit (x64)(SP2) processor
	Windows 8.1	PC Fax ⁴		
	Windows 10	Scanning		
	Windows Server 2008	N/A	Printing	32 bit (x86) or 64 bit (x64) processor
	Windows Server 2008 R2			64 bit (x64) processor
	Windows Server 2012			
	Windows Server 2012 R2			
	Windows Server 2016			
Windows Server 2019				
Mac Operating System	OS X v10.10.x OS X v10.11.x macOS v10.12.x macOS v10.13.x macOS v10.14.x			Printing Scanning

¹ Third party USB ports are not supported.

² bizhub 4020i support 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX

³ bizhub 5020i support 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX/1000BASE-T

⁴ PC-Fax supports black and white only.

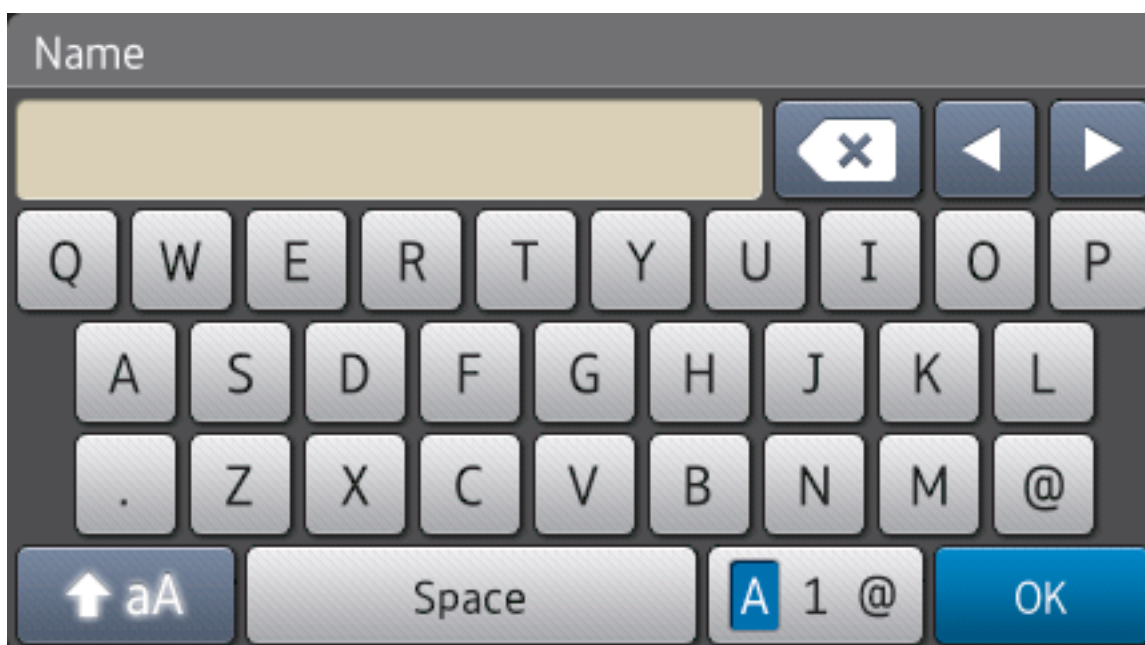
All trademarks, brand and product names are the property of their respective companies.



Related Information

- [Appendix](#)

How to Enter Text on Your Machine

- When you must enter text on your machine, a keyboard appears on the LCD.
- The characters that are available may differ depending on your country.
- The keyboard layout may differ depending on the operation you perform.






- Press  to cycle between letters, numbers and special characters.
- Press  to cycle between lowercase and uppercase letters.
- To move the cursor to the left or right, press ◀ or ▶.

Inserting spaces

- To enter a space, press [Space] or ▶.

Making corrections

- If you entered a character incorrectly and want to change it, press ◀ or ▶ to move the cursor to the incorrect character, and then press . Enter the correct character.
- To insert a character, press ◀ or ▶ to move the cursor to the correct place, and then enter the character.
- Press  for each character you want to erase, or press and hold  to erase all the characters.

✓ Related Information

- [Appendix](#)

Related Topics:

- [Send Scanned Data to an Email Server](#)
- [Upload Scanned Data to an FTP Server](#)
- [Set Your Station ID](#)
- [Store Fax Numbers](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using an Existing SSID](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network Using the Machine's Control Panel Setup Wizard](#)
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network in Ad-Hoc Mode Using a New SSID](#)

-
- [Configure Your Machine for a Wireless Network When the SSID Is Not Broadcast](#)
 - [Send an Internet Fax \(I-Fax\)](#)
 - [Forward Received Email and Fax Messages](#)
 - [Relay Broadcast from Your Machine](#)
-

Glossary

This is a comprehensive list of features and terms that appear in manuals. Availability of these features depends on the model you purchased.

A B C D E F G H I J L M N O P R S T U V W X

A

- [Active Directory Authentication](#)
- [Ad-Hoc Mode](#)
- [Address Book](#)
- [Address Book List](#)
- [ADF \(Automatic Document Feeder\)](#)
- [AES](#)
- [APIPA](#)
- [APOP](#)
- [ARP](#)
- [Authentication](#)
- [Auto Reduction](#)
- [Automatic Fax Transmission](#)
- [Automatic Redial](#)

B

- [Backup Print](#)
- [Beeper Volume](#)
- [BOOTP](#)
- [Broadcasting](#)
- [BT Call Sign](#)

C

- [CA](#)
- [CA Certificate](#)
- [Caller ID](#)
- [Cancel Job](#)
- [Certificate](#)
- [Channels](#)
- [CIFS](#)
- [CNG Tones](#)
- [Coding Method](#)
- [Communication Error \(or Comm. Error\)](#)
- [Compatibility Group](#)
- [Contrast](#)
- [CSR](#)
- [Custom Raw Port](#)

D

- [Delayed Fax](#)
- [Density](#)
- [DHCP](#)
- [Digital Signature](#)
- [Distinctive Ring](#)
- [DNS Client](#)
- [DNS Server](#)
- [Dual Access](#)

E

- [ECM \(Error Correction Mode\)](#)
- [Encryption](#)
- [Extension Telephone](#)
- [External Phone](#)

F

- [F/T Ring Time](#)
- [Fax Detect](#)
- [Fax Forwarding](#)
- [Fax Journal](#)
- [Fax Storage](#)
- [Fax Tones](#)
- [Fax/Tel](#)
- [Fine Resolution](#)
- [FTP](#)

G

- [Gateway](#)
- [Grey Scale](#)
- [Group Number](#)

H

- [HTTP \(Web Server\)](#)
- [HTTPS](#)

I

- [IEEE 802.1x](#)
- [Infrastructure Mode](#)

Home > Glossary

- [Internet Fax](#)
- [IP Address](#)
- [IPP](#)
- [IPPS](#)
- [IPsec](#)
- [IPv6](#)

J

- [Journal Period](#)

L

- [LEAP](#)
- [LLMNR](#)
- [LPD](#)
- [LPR](#)

M

- [MAC Address](#)
- [Manual Fax](#)
- [MDN](#)
- [mDNS](#)
- [Memory Receive](#)

N

- [NetBIOS Name Resolution](#)
- [Network Configuration Report](#)
- [Network Key](#)
- [Network PC-FAX](#)
- [Network Remote Setup](#)

- [Network Shared Printing](#)
- [Node Name](#)

O

- [Open System](#)
- [Out of Paper Reception](#)
- [Overseas Mode](#)

P

- [Paging](#)
- [Pause](#)
- [PEAP](#)
- [Peer-to-Peer](#)
- [Photo resolution \(Mono only\)](#)
- [Protocols](#)
- [Public Key Cryptosystem](#)
- [Pulse](#)

R

- [RARP](#)
- [Real Time Transmission](#)
- [Remaining Jobs](#)
- [Remote Access Code](#)
- [Remote Activation Code \(Fax/Tel Mode Only\)](#)
- [Remote Deactivation Code \(Fax/Tel Mode only\)](#)
- [Remote Retrieval Access](#)
- [Remote Setup](#)
- [Resolution](#)

- [Ring Delay](#)
- [Ring Volume](#)

S

- [Scan to Email Server](#)
- [Scanning](#)
- [Search](#)
- [Secure Function Lock 3.0](#)
- [Settings Tables](#)
- [Shared Key Cryptosystem](#)
- [SMTP Client](#)
- [SMTP over SSL](#)
- [SMTP-AUTH](#)
- [SNMP](#)
- [SNMPv3](#)
- [SNTP](#)
- [SSID](#)
- [SSL/TLS](#)
- [Standard resolution](#)
- [Station ID](#)
- [Store Print Log to Network](#)
- [Subnet Mask](#)
- [Super Fine resolution \(Mono only\)](#)

T

- [TAD \(Telephone Answering Device\)](#)
- [TCP/IP](#)

- [TELNET](#)
- [Temporary Settings](#)
- [TKIP](#)
- [Tone](#)
- [Transmission](#)
- [Transmission Verification Report](#)

U

- [User Settings List](#)

V

- [Vertical Pairing](#)

W

- [Web Based Management](#)
- [WEP](#)
- [Wi-Fi Direct®](#)
- [WINS](#)
- [WINS Server](#)
- [WLAN Report](#)
- [WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK Authentication Method](#)
- [WPS](#)

X

- [Xmit Report \(Transmission Verification Report\)](#)

Active Directory Authentication

Active Directory Authentication restricts the use of this machine. You cannot use your machine until you log on to the machine using a user ID and password.

Ad-Hoc Mode

The mode of operation in a wireless network, in which all devices (machines and computers) are connected without an access point/router.

Address Book

Names and numbers you have stored for easy dialling.

Address Book List

A listing of names and numbers stored in the Address Book memory, in alphabetical order.

ADF (Automatic Document Feeder)

The document can be placed in the ADF and scanned one page at a time automatically.

AES

Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) is the Wi-Fi®-authorised strong encryption standard.

APIPA

If you do not assign an IP address manually or automatically (using a DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP server), the Automatic Private IP Addressing (APIPA) protocol will automatically assign an IP address from the range 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255.

APOP

Authenticated Post Office Protocol (APOP) expands POP3 (the Internet receiving protocol) to include an authentication method that encrypts the password when the client receives email.

ARP

Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) performs mapping of an IP address to a MAC address in a TCP/IP network.

Authentication

Most wireless networks use some kind of security settings. These security settings define the authentication (how the device identifies itself to the network) and encryption (how the data is encrypted as it is sent on the network). If you do not correctly specify these options when you are configuring your wireless machine, it will not be able to connect to the wireless network. Therefore, care must be taken when configuring these options.

Authentication Methods for a Personal Wireless Network

A personal wireless network is a small network (such as a home wireless network) without IEEE 802.1x support.

- Open system

Wireless devices are allowed to access the network without any authentication.

- Shared key

A secret pre-determined key is shared by all devices that will access the wireless network. This machine uses the WEP key as the pre-determined key.

- WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK

Enables a Wi-Fi Protected Access® Pre-shared key (WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK), which enables this machine to associate with access points using TKIP for WPA-PSK or AES for WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK (WPA-Personal).

Authentication Methods for an Enterprise Wireless Network

An enterprise wireless network is a large network, for example using your machine in a business enterprise wireless network, with IEEE 802.1x support. If you configure your machine in an IEEE 802.1x supported wireless network, you can use the following authentication methods.

- LEAP
- EAP-FAST
- PEAP
- EAP-TTLS
- EAP-TLS



The authentication methods above use the user ID less than 64 characters and a password of less than 32 characters in length.

Auto Reduction

Reduces the size of incoming faxes.

Automatic Fax Transmission

Sending a fax without picking up the handset of the external telephone.

Automatic Redial

A feature that enables your machine to redial the last fax number after five minutes if the fax did not go through because the line was busy.

Backup Print

Your machine prints a copy of every fax that is received and stored in memory. This is a safety feature so you will not lose messages during a power failure.

Beeper Volume

Volume setting for the sound when you press a button or make an error.

BOOTP

The Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP) is a network protocol used by a network client to obtain an IP Address from a configuration server.



To use BOOTP, contact your network administrator.

Broadcasting

The ability to send the same fax message to more than one location.

BT Call Sign

A subscriber service purchased from the telephone company in the U.K. that gives you another phone number on an existing phone line. This machine uses the new number to simulate a dedicated fax line.

CA

A Certificate Authority (CA) is an entity that issues digital certificates (especially X.509 certificates) and vouches for the binding between the data items in a certificate.

CA Certificate

A CA Certificate is the certification that identifies the CA itself and owns its private key. A CA Certificate verifies a certificate issued by the CA.

Caller ID

A service purchased from the telephone company that lets you see the number (or name) of the party calling you.

Cancel Job

Cancels a programmed print job and clears it from the machine's memory.

Certificate

A Certificate is the information that binds together a public key with an identity. The certificate can be used to verify that a public key belongs to an individual. The format is defined by the X.509 standard.

Channels

Wireless networks use channels. Each wireless channel is on a different frequency. There are up to 14 different channels that can be used when using a wireless network. However, in many countries the number of channels available is restricted.

CIFS

The Common Internet File System (CIFS) is the standard way that computer users share files and printers in Windows.

CNG Tones

The special tones (beeps) sent by fax machines during automatic transmission to tell the receiving machine that a fax machine is calling.

Coding Method

Method of coding the information contained in the document. All fax machines must use a minimum standard of Modified Huffman (MH). Your machine is capable of greater compression methods, Modified Read (MR), Modified Modified Read (MMR) and JBIG, if the receiving machine has the same capability.

Communication Error (or Comm. Error)

An error during fax sending or receiving, usually caused by line noise or static.

Compatibility Group

The ability of one fax unit to communicate with another. Compatibility is assured between ITU-T Groups.

Contrast

Setting to compensate for dark or light documents, by making faxes or copies of dark documents lighter and light documents darker.

CSR

A Certificate Signing Request (CSR) is a message sent from an applicant to a Certificate Authority (CA) to apply for issue of a certificate. The CSR contains information identifying the applicant, the public key generated by the applicant and the digital signature of the applicant.

Custom Raw Port

Custom raw port is a commonly used printing protocol on a TCP/IP network that enables interactive data transmission. Default is Port 9100.

Delayed Fax

Sends your fax at a specified later time that day.

Density

Changing the Density makes the whole image lighter or darker.

DHCP

The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a network protocol that is used to configure network devices so that they can communicate on an IP Network.



To use DHCP, contact your network administrator.

Digital Signature

A Digital Signature is a value computed with a cryptographic algorithm and appended to a data object in such a way that any recipient of the data can use the signature to verify the data's origin and integrity.

Distinctive Ring

This feature is available only in the USA and Canada.

A subscriber service purchased from the telephone company that gives you another telephone number on an existing telephone line. This machine uses the new number to simulate a dedicated fax line.

DNS Client

The print server supports the Domain Name System (DNS) client feature. This feature allows the print server to communicate with other devices using its DNS name.

DNS Server

The Domain Name System (DNS) is a technology to manage the names of web sites and internet domains. A DNS server allows your computer to find its IP address automatically.

Dual Access

Your machine can scan outgoing faxes or scheduled jobs into memory at the same time it is sending a fax or receiving or printing an incoming fax.

ECM (Error Correction Mode)

Detects errors during fax transmission and resends the pages of the fax that had an error.

Encryption

Most wireless networks use some kind of security settings. These security settings define the authentication (how the device identifies itself to the network) and encryption (how the data is encrypted as it is sent on the network). If you do not correctly specify these options when you are configuring your wireless machine, it will not be able to connect to the wireless network. Therefore, care must be taken when configuring these options.

Encryption Methods for a Personal Wireless Network

A personal wireless network is a small network (such as a home wireless network) without IEEE 802.1x support.

- None

No encryption method is used.

- WEP
When using Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) the data is transmitted and received with a secured key.
- TKIP
Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) provides per-packet key mixing a message integrity check and rekeying mechanism.
- AES
Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) provides stronger data protection using a symmetric-key encryption.



- IEEE 802.11n does not support either WEP or TKIP as an encryption method.
- To connect to your wireless network using IEEE 802.11n, we recommend selecting AES.

Encryption Methods for an Enterprise Wireless Network

An enterprise wireless network is a large network, for example using your machine in a business enterprise wireless network, with IEEE 802.1x support. If you configure your machine in an IEEE 802.1x supported wireless network, you can use the following encryption methods.

- TKIP
- AES
- CKIP

The original key Integrity Protocol for LEAP by Cisco Systems, Inc.

Extension Telephone

A telephone on the fax number that is plugged into a separate wall socket.

External Phone

A TAD (telephone answering device) or telephone that is connected to your machine.

F/T Ring Time

The length of time that this machine pseudo/double-rings (when the Receive Mode setting is Fax/Tel) to notify you to pick up a voice call that it answered.

Fax Detect

Enables your machine to respond to CNG tones if you interrupt a fax call by answering it.

Fax Forwarding

Sends a fax received into the memory to another pre-programmed fax number.

Fax Journal

Lists information about the last 200 incoming and outgoing faxes. TX means Transmit. RX means Receive.

Fax Storage

You can store faxes in the memory.

Fax Tones

The signals sent by sending and receiving fax machines while communicating information.

Fax/Tel

You can receive faxes and telephone calls. Do not use this mode if you are using a telephone answering device (TAD).

Fine Resolution

Resolution is 203 × 196 dpi. It is used for small print and graphs.

FTP

The File Transfer Protocol (FTP) allows this machine to scan monochrome or colour documents directly to an FTP server located locally on your network or on the Internet.

Gateway

A gateway is a network point that acts as an entrance to another network and sends data transmitted via the network to an exact destination. The router knows where to direct data that arrives at the gateway. If a destination is located on an external network, the router transmits data to the external network. If your network communicates with other networks, you may need to configure the Gateway IP address. If you do not know the Gateway IP address, then contact your Network Administrator.

Grey Scale

The shades of grey available for copying and faxing photographs.

Group Number

A combination of Address Book numbers that are stored in Address Book for Broadcasting.

HTTP (Web Server)

Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) is used to transmit the data between a web server and a web browser. The print server is equipped with a built-in web server that allows you to monitor its status or change some of its configuration settings using a web browser.

HTTPS

HTTPS (HTTP over SSL/TLS) is the version of the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) that uses SSL/TLS so that web content is transferred and displayed securely.

IEEE 802.1x

IEEE 802.1x is a networking authentication standard used to connect to a wired or wireless LAN. It restricts connections which are not authentic and only users authenticated by a central authority are allowed to be connected.

Infrastructure Mode

The mode of operation in a wireless network, in which all devices (machines and computers) are connected via an access point/router.

Internet Fax

Internet Fax (I-Fax) allows you to send and receive fax documents using the Internet as the transport mechanism.

Before using this feature, configure the necessary machine's settings using the machine's control panel.

IP Address

An Internet Protocol (IP) address is a series of numbers that identifies each device connected to a network. An IP address consists of four numbers separated by dots. Each number is between 0 and 255.

Example: In a small network, you would normally change the final number.

192.168.1.1

192.168.1.2

192.168.1.3

How the IP address is assigned to your print server:

If you have a DHCP/BOOTP/RARP server in your network, the print server will automatically obtain its IP address from that server.



On smaller networks, the DHCP server may also be the Router.

If you do not have a DHCP/BOOTP/RARP server, the Automatic Private IP Addressing (APIPA) protocol will automatically assign an IP address from the range 169.254.1.0 to 169.254.254.255.

IPP

The Internet Printing Protocol (IPP Version 1.0) allows you to print documents directly to any accessible machine via the Internet.

IPPS

IPPS (Internet Printing Protocol) is the printing protocol that uses SSL. IPPS is used to send and receive printing data and manage printing devices.

IPsec

IPsec is an optional security feature of the IP protocol that provides authentication and encryption services.

IPv6

IPv6 is the next generation Internet protocol.

Journal Period

The pre-programmed time period between automatically printed Fax Journal Reports. You can print the Fax Journal on demand without interrupting the cycle.

LEAP

Lightweight Extensible Authentication Protocol (LEAP) is a proprietary EAP method developed by Cisco Systems, Inc. that uses a user ID and password for authentication. LEAP is used in wireless networks.

LLMNR

The Link-Local Multicast Name Resolution (LLMNR) protocol resolves the names of neighboring computers, if the network does not have a Domain Name System (DNS) server. The LLMNR Responder feature works in both the IPv4 or IPv6 environment when using Windows.

LPD

Line Printer Daemon (LPD or LPR) protocol is a commonly-used printing protocol on a TCP/IP network, mainly for UNIX[®]-based operating systems.

LPR

Line Printer Daemon (LPR or LPD) protocol is a commonly-used printing protocol on a TCP/IP network.

MAC Address

The MAC Address (Ethernet Address) is a unique number assigned for the machine's network interface.

Manual Fax

When you lift the handset of your external telephone so you can hear the receiving fax machine answer before you press Fax Start to begin transmission.

MDN

The Message Disposition Notification (MDN) field of the control panel menu requests the status of the Internet Fax/-mail message after delivery through the Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) transport system.

Once the message has arrived at the receiver, this data is used when the machine or user reads or prints the received Internet Fax or Email.

For example, if the message is opened for reading or is printed, the receiver sends back a notification to the original sending machine or user.



The receiver must support the MDN field to be able to send a notification report, otherwise the request will be ignored.

mDNS

Multicast DNS (mDNS) allows the print server to configure itself to work in an OS X Simple Network Configuration system automatically.

Memory Receive

Receives faxes into the machine's memory when the machine is out of paper.

NetBIOS Name Resolution

Network Basic Input/Output System (NetBIOS) name resolution enables you to obtain the IP address of the other device using its NetBIOS name during the network connection.

Network Configuration Report

The Network Configuration Report prints a report listing the current network configuration, including the network print server settings.

Network Key

The Network Key is a password, which is used when the data is encrypted or decrypted. The Network Key is also described as the Password, Security Key, or Encryption Key. The table shows the number of characters of the key to use for each setting.

Open system/Shared key with WEP

This key is a 64-bit or a 128-bit value that must be entered in an ASCII or hexadecimal format.

	ASCII	Hexadecimal
64 (40) bit	Uses five text characters. For example, "WSLAN" (case-sensitive).	Uses 10 digits of hexadecimal data. For example, "71f2234aba" (not case-sensitive).
128 (104) bit	Uses 13 text characters. For example, "Wirelesscomms" (case-sensitive).	Uses 26 digits of hexadecimal data. For example, "71f2234ab56cd709e5412aa2ba" (not case-sensitive).

WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK and TKIP or AES

Uses a Pre-Shared Key (PSK) that is eight or more characters in length, up to a maximum of 63 characters.

Network PC-FAX

Use Network PC-FAX to send a file from your computer as a fax. Windows users can also receive faxes via PC-FAX.

Network Remote Setup

The Remote Setup software allows you to configure network settings from a Windows computer.

Network Shared Printing

Network Shared Printing is a type of printing in a network shared environment. In a network shared environment, each computer sends data via a server or print server.

Node Name

The Node Name is a machine name on the network. This name is often referred to as a NetBIOS name; it will be the name that is registered by the WINS server on your network. We recommend the name "KMNxxxxxxxxxxx" for a wired network or "KMWxxxxxxxxxxx" for a wireless network (where "xxxxxxxxxxx" is your machine's MAC address / ethernet address.)

Open System

Open System is one of the network authentication methods. Under open system authentication, any wireless devices are allowed to access the network without requiring a WEP key.

Out of Paper Reception

Receives faxes into the machine's memory when the machine is out of paper.

Overseas Mode

Makes temporary changes to the fax tones to accommodate noise and static on overseas telephone lines.

Paging

This feature enables your machine to call your cell phone or pager when a fax is received into its memory.

Pause

Allows you to place a delay in the dialling sequence while you are dialling or while you are storing Address Book numbers. Press Pause on the LCD as many times as needed for longer pauses.

PEAP

Protected Extensible Authentication Protocol (PEAP) is a version of EAP method developed by Cisco Systems, Inc., Microsoft Corporation and RSA Security. PEAP creates an encrypted Secure Sockets Layer (SSL)/ Transport Layer Security (TLS) tunnel between a client and an authentication server, for sending a user ID and password. PEAP provides mutual authentication between the server and the client.

This machine supports the following inner authentications:

- PEAP/MS-CHAPv2
- PEAP/GTC

Peer-to-Peer

Peer-to-Peer is a type of printing in a peer-to-peer environment. In a peer-to-peer environment, each computer sends and receives data directly to and from each device. There is no central server controlling access or machine sharing.

Photo resolution (Mono only)

A resolution setting that uses varying shades of grey for the best representation of photographs.

Protocols

Protocols are the standardised sets of rules for transmitting data on a network. Protocols allow users to gain access to network-connected resources. The print server used on your machine supports the Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) protocol.

Public Key Cryptosystem

A Public Key Cryptosystem is a modern branch of cryptography in which the algorithms employ a pair of keys (a public key and a private key) and use a different component of the pair for different steps of the algorithm.

Pulse

This feature is not available in some countries.

A form of rotary dialling on a telephone line.

RARP

Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) finds the logical address for a machine that knows only its physical address.



To use RARP, contact your network administrator.

Real Time Transmission

When memory is full, you can send faxes in real time.

Remaining Jobs

You can check which programmed fax jobs are waiting in the memory and cancel the jobs individually.

Remote Access Code

Your own four-digit code (---*) that allows you to call and access your machine from a remote location.

Remote Activation Code (Fax/Tel Mode Only)

Press this code (*51) when you answer a fax call on an extension or external telephone.

Remote Deactivation Code (Fax/Tel Mode only)

When the machine answers a voice call, it pseudo/double-rings. You can pick up at an extension telephone by pressing this code (#51).

Remote Retrieval Access

The ability to access your machine remotely from a touch tone telephone.

Remote Setup

The Remote Setup program lets you configure many machine and network settings from a computer application. When you start this application, the settings on your machine will be downloaded automatically to your computer and displayed on your computer screen. If you change the settings, you can upload them directly to the machine.

Resolution

The number of vertical and horizontal lines per inch.

Ring Delay

The number of rings before the machine answers in Fax Only and Fax/Tel modes.

Ring Volume

Volume setting for the machine's ring.

Scan to Email Server

The Scan to Email Server feature lets you scan a monochrome or colour document and send it directly to an email address from the machine.

Scanning

The process of sending an electronic image of a paper document into your computer.

Search

An alphabetical electronic listing of stored Address Book and Group numbers.

Secure Function Lock 3.0

Secure Function Lock 3.0 increases security by restricting the use of functions.

Settings Tables

At-a-glance instructions that show all the settings and options that are available for setting up your machine.

Shared Key Cryptosystem

A Shared Key Cryptosystem is a branch of cryptography involving algorithms that use the same key for two different steps of the algorithm (such as encryption and decryption).

SMTP Client

Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) client is used to send emails via the Internet or Intranet.

SMTP over SSL

SMTP over SSL feature enables sending encrypted email using SSL.

SMTP-AUTH

SMTP Authentication (SMTP-AUTH) expands SMTP (the Internet email sending protocol) to include an authentication method that ensures the true identity of the sender is known.

SNMP

The Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) is used to manage network devices including computers, routers and network-ready machines.

SNMPv3

Simple Network Management Protocol version 3 (SNMPv3) provides user authentication and data encryption to manage network devices securely.

SNTP

The Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) is used to synchronize computer clocks on a TCP/IP network. You can configure the SNTP settings using Web Based Management.

SSID

Each wireless network has its own unique network name and it is technically referred to as a Service Set Identifier (SSID). The SSID is a 32-byte or less value and is assigned to the access point. The wireless network devices you want to associate to the wireless network should match the access point. The access point and wireless network devices regularly send wireless packets (referred to as beacons), which contain the SSID information. When your wireless network device receives a beacon, you can identify the wireless network that is close enough for the radio waves to reach your device.

SSL/TLS

Secure Socket Layer (SSL) or Transport Layer Security (TLS) is an effective method of protecting data that is sent over a local or wide area network. SSL/TLS works by encrypting data, such as a print job, sent over a network, so anyone trying to capture it will not be able to read it .

SSL/TLS can be configured on both wired and wireless networks and will work with other forms of security including WPA keys and firewalls.

Standard resolution

203 × 98 dpi (monochrome). 203 × 196 dpi (colour). It is used for regular sized text and the quickest transmission.

Station ID

The stored information that appears on the top of faxed pages. It includes the sender's name and fax number.

Store Print Log to Network

The Store Print Log to Network feature allows you to save the print log file from your machine to a network server using CIFS.

Subnet Mask

A subnet mask allows you to identify which part of an IP address is used as the network address and which part is used as the host address.

In the following example, the last segment of the IP address is known as the host address and the first three segments are the network address.

Example: Computer 1 can talk to Computer 2

- Computer 1
IP Address: 192.168.1.2
Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
- Computer 2
IP Address: 192.168.1.3
Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0



0 denotes that there is no limit to communication at this part of the address.

Super Fine resolution (Mono only)

203 × 392 dpi. Best for very small print and line art.

TAD (Telephone Answering Device)

You can connect an external TAD to your machine.

TCP/IP

Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) is the most popular set of protocols used for communication, such as Internet and email. This protocol can be used in almost all operating systems, including Windows, Windows Server, OS X and Linux®.

TELNET

The TELNET protocol allows you to control the remote network devices on a TCP/IP network from your computer.

Temporary Settings

You can choose certain options for each fax transmission and copy without changing the default settings.

TKIP

Temporal Key Integrity Protocol (TKIP) is one of the encryption methods adopted by WPA™ to be used in a wireless network. TKIP provides per-packet key mixing, a message integrity check and rekeying mechanism.

Tone

This feature is not available in some countries.

A form of dialling on the telephone line used for Touch Tone telephones.

Transmission

The process of sending faxes over the telephone lines from your machine to the receiving fax machine.

Transmission Verification Report

A report for each transmission, that shows its date, time and number.

User Settings List

A printed report that shows the current settings of the machine.

Vertical Pairing

Vertical Pairing is a technology for Windows that allows your Vertical Pairing-supported wireless machine to connect to your Infrastructure network using the PIN Method of Wi-Fi Protected Setup™ and the Web Services feature. It also enables printer driver installation from the printer icon in the **Add a device** screen.

Web Based Management

A standard Web Browser can be used to manage your machine using the Hyper Text Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or Hyper Text Transfer Protocol over Secure Socket Layer (HTTPS). You can perform the function listed or get the following information from a machine on your network using a web browser:

- Machine status information
- Change Fax configuration items, such as General Setup, Address Book settings and Remote Fax
- Change network settings, such as TCP/IP information
- Configure Gigabit Ethernet and Jumbo Frame
- Configure Secure Function Lock

Home > Glossary

- Configure Store Print Log to Network
- Configure Scan to FTP
- Configure Scan to Network
- Configure LDAP (available for certain models)
- Software version information of the machine and print server
- Change network and machine configuration details



In order to use Web Based Management, you must use the TCP/IP protocol on your network and have a valid IP address programmed into the print server and your computer.

WEP

Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) is one of the encryption methods used in a wireless network. When using WEP, the data is transmitted and received with a secure key.

Wi-Fi Direct[®]

Wi-Fi Direct is one of the wireless configuration methods developed by the Wi-Fi Alliance[®]. This type of connection is a Wi-Fi[®] standard that allows devices to connect with each other without a wireless access point, using secured method.

WINS

Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) is an information-providing service for NetBIOS name resolution. It consolidates an IP address and a NetBIOS name that is in the local network.

WINS Server

Windows Internet Name Service (WINS) Server maps IP addresses to computer names (NetBIOS names) in a Windows network.

WLAN Report

The WLAN Report prints your machine's wireless status report. If the wireless connection fails, check the error code on the printed report.

WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK Authentication Method

WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK authentication method enables a Wi-Fi Protected Access[®] Pre-shared key (WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK), which enables the wireless machine to associate with access points using TKIP for WPA-PSK or AES for WPA-PSK and WPA2-PSK (WPA-Personal).

WPS

Wi-Fi Protected Setup[™] (WPS) is a standard that allows the setup of secured wireless networks. WPS was created by the Wi-Fi Alliance[®] in 2007.

█ **Xmit Report (Transmission Verification Report)**

A listing for each transmission, that shows its date, time and number.

